

Nonlinear Waves

Bernard Deconinck

Department of Applied Mathematics, University of Washington,
Campus Box 352420, Seattle, WA, 98195, USA

September 27, 2022

Prolegomenon

These are the lecture notes for Amath 573: solitons and nonlinear waves. These notes are constantly changing, thus it is likely that they contain mistakes of all kinds, both innocent and unforgivable. Please point out these mistakes to me so they may be corrected for the benefit of your successors. If you think that a different phrasing of something would result in better understanding, please let me know.

These notes are copyrighted by the author and any distribution of them is forbidden without express written consent of the author and the University of Washington.

Contents

| | | |
|----------|--|-----------|
| 1 | Introduction | 1 |
| 1.1 | Non-integrable <i>vs.</i> integrable equations | 2 |
| 1.2 | About ordinary differential equations | 3 |
| 1.3 | Historically important problems | 5 |
| 1.3.1 | A Scotsman on a horse | 5 |
| 1.3.2 | The Fermi-Pasta-Ulam-Tsingou problem | 6 |
| 1.4 | Derivation of the KdV equation | 10 |
| 1.5 | Properties of the KdV equation | 12 |
| 1.6 | Balancing dispersion and steepening | 13 |
| 1.7 | A literature overview | 16 |
| 1.8 | Exercises | 18 |
| I | General considerations for nonlinear wave equations | 21 |
| 2 | Linear evolution equations | 23 |
| 2.1 | The dispersion relationship | 24 |
| 2.1.1 | Scalar, first-order evolution equations | 24 |
| 2.1.2 | The general vector case. | 26 |
| 2.1.3 | Higher-order scalar equations. | 28 |
| 2.1.4 | More general equations. | 28 |
| 2.2 | Consequences of the dispersion relationship | 28 |
| 2.3 | Asymptotics of the solution | 30 |
| 2.4 | The method of stationary phase | 32 |
| 2.5 | Pattern Formation | 36 |
| 2.6 | Exercises | 39 |
| 3 | Quasi-linear differential equations | 43 |
| 3.1 | The method of characteristics | 43 |
| 3.2 | Dissipation and dispersion | 50 |
| 3.3 | Rankine-Hugoniot conditions | 55 |

| | | |
|----------|--|-----------|
| 3.4 | Exercises | 58 |
| 4 | Multiple scale perturbation theory | 65 |
| 4.1 | Waves in shallow water: the KdV equation | 66 |
| 4.1.1 | Problem set-up | 66 |
| 4.1.2 | The linear dispersion relation | 67 |
| 4.1.3 | The principle of Maximal Balance | 69 |
| 4.1.4 | Nondimensionalization | 70 |
| 4.1.5 | Determining the dependence on z | 72 |
| 4.1.6 | The perturbation expansions and the slow time scales | 74 |
| 4.1.7 | Lowest-order results | 75 |
| 4.1.8 | Higher order results | 75 |
| 4.1.9 | Characteristic variables | 77 |
| 4.1.10 | The one-soliton solution | 78 |
| 4.2 | Slowly modulated waves: the NLS equation | 80 |
| 4.2.1 | Problem set-up | 80 |
| 4.2.2 | The linear dispersion relation and modulated wave packets. | 80 |
| 4.2.3 | The perturbation expansion and the slow time scales | 83 |
| 4.2.4 | Results at consecutive orders | 83 |
| 4.2.5 | Defocusing <i>vs.</i> focusing | 86 |
| 4.2.6 | The one-soliton solution | 88 |
| 4.3 | Exercises | 90 |
| 5 | Special solutions | 95 |
| 5.1 | Traveling wave solutions | 97 |
| 5.1.1 | The energy integral approach | 98 |
| 5.1.2 | Phase plane analysis | 101 |
| 5.1.3 | Explicit integration: soliton solutions | 107 |
| 5.2 | Similarity solutions | 113 |
| 5.2.1 | Scaling symmetries | 113 |
| 5.2.2 | Scaling reductions | 114 |
| 5.3 | Ansatz-based methods | 117 |
| 5.3.1 | The tanh method and its relatives | 118 |
| 5.3.2 | The Conte-Musette method | 124 |
| 5.4 | Symmetry solutions of differential equations | 134 |
| 5.4.1 | Transformation groups and their generators | 136 |
| 5.4.2 | Finding symmetries | 138 |
| 5.4.3 | Using symmetries | 152 |
| 5.5 | Numerical methods | 154 |
| 5.5.1 | The imaginary time-step method | 154 |
| 5.5.2 | Renormalization methods | 154 |

| | | |
|-----------|---|------------|
| 5.5.3 | Numerical continuation | 154 |
| 5.6 | Exercises | 154 |
| 6 | Hamiltonian systems | 161 |
| 6.1 | Finite-dimensional Hamiltonian systems | 161 |
| 6.1.1 | Definition of a finite-dimensional Hamiltonian system | 161 |
| 6.1.2 | Elementary properties of finite-dimensional Hamiltonian systems . . . | 162 |
| 6.1.3 | Darboux's theorem | 163 |
| 6.1.4 | Some examples | 164 |
| 6.1.5 | More properties of finite-dimensional Hamiltonian systems | 167 |
| 6.2 | Integrability of Hamiltonian systems | 169 |
| 6.2.1 | The Liouville-Arnol'd theorem | 170 |
| 6.2.2 | Example: the harmonic oscillator | 171 |
| 6.3 | The calculus of variations | 173 |
| 6.3.1 | The fundamental theorem of the calculus of variations | 173 |
| 6.3.2 | Examples | 177 |
| 6.4 | Infinite-dimensional Hamiltonian systems | 180 |
| 6.4.1 | Defining the Hamiltonian | 180 |
| 6.4.2 | Defining the Poisson bracket | 180 |
| 6.4.3 | Hamiltonian dynamics for partial differential equations | 181 |
| 6.5 | The KdV equation as a Hamiltonian system | 182 |
| 6.6 | The NLS equation as a Hamiltonian system | 184 |
| 6.7 | Exercises | 186 |
| 7 | Conserved quantities | 189 |
| 7.1 | Calculating conserved quantities using the scaling symmetry | 189 |
| 7.1.1 | Generalities | 189 |
| 7.1.2 | Using the scaling symmetry | 190 |
| 7.1.3 | Examples | 191 |
| 7.2 | An infinite number of conserved quantities | 195 |
| 7.3 | The KdV hierarchy | 199 |
| 7.4 | The stationary KdV hierarchy | 202 |
| 7.5 | Exercises | 204 |
| 8 | Stability | 207 |
| 8.1 | Exercises | 207 |
| II | Local and algebraic aspects of integrable equations | 209 |
| 9 | Special solutions of integrable equations | 211 |
| 9.1 | Backlund transformations | 211 |

| | | |
|------------|--|------------|
| 9.2 | Darboux transformations | 211 |
| 9.3 | Hirota's method | 214 |
| 9.4 | Exercises | 214 |
| 10 | Lax pairs | 215 |
| 10.1 | Definition | 215 |
| 10.1.1 | A Lax pair for the KdV equation | 216 |
| 10.1.2 | A Lax pair for the NLS equation | 218 |
| 10.2 | Consequences of the existence of a Lax pair | 218 |
| 10.2.1 | An infinite number of conserved quantities | 218 |
| 10.3 | Exercises | 221 |
| 11 | The Painlevé property | 223 |
| 11.1 | Solutions of linear ODEs | 223 |
| 11.2 | Solutions of nonlinear ODEs | 224 |
| 11.2.1 | First-order equations | 226 |
| 11.2.2 | The work of Kovaleskaya | 226 |
| 11.2.3 | Second-order equations | 228 |
| 11.3 | How does the Painlevé method work | 229 |
| 11.3.1 | Singularity analysis | 229 |
| 11.3.2 | Construction of the solution | 230 |
| 11.4 | The Painlevé property and soliton equations | 233 |
| 11.5 | Exercises | 240 |
| 12 | The prolongation method | 241 |
| 12.1 | Outline | 241 |
| 12.2 | Example: the KdV equation | 242 |
| 12.2.1 | Step 1. Choosing the dependence of X | 243 |
| 12.2.2 | Step 2. Determine the dependence of T | 243 |
| 12.2.3 | Step 3. Determine the explicit dependence of X and T | 243 |
| 12.2.4 | Step 4. The commutation table | 247 |
| 12.2.5 | Step 5. Wanted: a Lie algebra | 248 |
| 12.2.6 | Step 6. The closure conditions | 249 |
| 12.2.7 | Step 7. A representation for the algebra | 250 |
| 12.2.8 | Step 8. The Lax pair | 252 |
| III | Global aspects of integrable equations | 255 |
| 13 | The inverse scattering method | 257 |
| 13.1 | The big picture | 257 |
| 13.1.1 | A little bit of quantum mechanics | 257 |

| | | |
|-----------|---|------------|
| 13.1.2 | A preview of coming attractions | 259 |
| 13.2 | A scalar Lax pair for the KdV equation | 262 |
| 13.3 | The forward problem | 264 |
| 13.3.1 | Two bases of eigenfunctions | 264 |
| 13.3.2 | Scattering data | 266 |
| 13.3.3 | Jost functions | 267 |
| 13.3.4 | Example: the delta function potential | 268 |
| 13.4 | Time dependence of the scattering data | 271 |
| 13.4.1 | General strategy | 271 |
| 13.4.2 | Example: the delta function potential | 273 |
| 13.5 | The inverse problem | 274 |
| 13.5.1 | Scalar Riemann-Hilbert problems | 274 |
| 13.5.2 | The fundamental equation | 274 |
| 13.5.3 | The projection operators | 275 |
| 13.5.4 | An integral equation for $N(x, k)$ | 276 |
| 13.5.5 | Reconstructing $u(x, t)$ | 277 |
| 13.5.6 | The zeros of $a(k)$ | 280 |
| 13.5.7 | The delta function potential | 285 |
| 13.6 | Soliton solutions | 286 |
| 13.6.1 | The one-soliton solution | 286 |
| 13.6.2 | The n -soliton solution | 287 |
| 13.7 | The analyticity properties of the scattering data | 288 |
| 13.7.1 | The analyticity properties of $M(x, k)$ | 288 |
| 13.7.2 | The function space of initial conditions | 296 |
| 13.8 | Summary | 296 |
| 13.9 | Exercises | 297 |
| 14 | Finite-genus solutions | 299 |
| A | Elliptic functions | 301 |
| A.1 | Weierstrass elliptic functions | 302 |
| A.2 | Jacobi elliptic functions | 306 |
| A.3 | Relating Weierstrass' and Jacobi's elliptic functions | 309 |
| A.4 | Exercises | 310 |
| B | Riemann surfaces and theta functions | 313 |
| | Bibliography | 314 |

Chapter 1

Introduction

The topic of this book is the study of nonlinear dispersive wave equations. The emphasis throughout is on developing understanding of such equations through the use of constructive analytical methods. As such, we will not follow two other approaches to study nonlinear wave equations:

- Nonlinear waves: existence and uniqueness theory, *etc.* This approach usually involves lots of functional analysis. Evans [Eva10] and Tao [Tao06] are excellent recent references. The outcome of this approach usually does not provide solutions, or approximations of solutions. Rather, existence and uniqueness statements of, and estimates for solutions of the problem at hand are the goal. Different aspects of studying nonlinear wave equations require some amount of functional analysis, but we will minimize what we need, with constructive results always being the priority.
- Nonlinear waves: numerical methods. Some numerical methods will be discussed, and more will be used for examples. However, in general, we will emphasize analytical methods. Even analytical methods resulting in approximate answers (for instance using perturbation methods or asymptotics) often have the advantage over numerical methods in that they demonstrate explicit parameter dependence, and they result in answers that become better approximations when time, spatial variables and parameters are taken to their limit values, where standard numerical methods tend to lose accuracy. For instance, time-stepping methods error accumulates as time $\rightarrow \infty$, while asymptotic methods provide increasingly better approximations.

Both of the above are valid approaches for good courses on nonlinear waves. One could argue that our analytical approach and the functional analytic approach both serve as precursors for a thorough numerical study: existence and uniqueness results elucidate whether the question being asked is a reasonable one in the first place, while the analytical results provide benchmarks and checks for a numerical method. Indeed, the solution of many wave research problems requires more than what can be obtained using our analytical approaches, and

definitely more than what is gained from existence and uniqueness results. Indeed, often the models one ends up studying demand a hybrid approach: the methods we will study can contribute, but so can numerical methods and function-theoretic approaches.

Throughout the text, insights and intuition from dynamical systems are useful. Extending these to an infinite-dimensional setting requires care and often results in lots of cumbersome technicalities. We will use a heuristic approach with this, using the intuition as a guide, while realizing its value may be limited without doing extra work.

1.1 Non-integrable *vs.* integrable equations

The equations we will consider model physical or other applications in certain limits such as long- and short-wave regimes. These equations are typically referred to as nonlinear wave equations. Among nonlinear wave equations, some stand out: these equations are very special, because they can be solved analytically, in some sense. They are referred to as **integrable, solvable, or soliton equations**. They have many properties and large classes of exact solutions, the most remarkable of which are the solitons. Like any good definition, our definition of what is a soliton will evolve to accommodate our needs and incorporate knowledge as it is gained. For now it suffices to say:

Definition. *A soliton is a localized solution of an integrable equation which is robust with respect to all kinds of disturbances.*

Thus the concept of a soliton has some kind of stability statement built in. As stated above, we will change this definition to fit our needs as we go.

Other equations, although not integrable, are called near integrable when they reduce to an integrable equation as one or more parameters appearing in the equation assume special values. The study of such equations allows us to consider integrable equations that are perturbed by including extra physical effects such as dissipation, external potentials, *etc.* Near-integrable equations do not possess soliton solutions, but they often have solutions that behave in many ways like solitons. Such solutions are referred to as solitary waves.

Definition. *A solitary wave is a localized solution of a near-integrable equation.*

Note that we are not requiring that solitary waves are stable with respect to perturbations. This allows us to use the name “solitary wave” for more solutions than would otherwise be possible. It is clear from the above that our understanding of near-integrable systems derives from that of integrable systems. Therefore, we will spend a significant amount of time on integrable systems. Also, we will also limit ourselves almost exclusively to equations with one independent spatial variable.

Do the equations we are talking about model the application situation we are interested in? Not always, but sometimes they do. More often, they are close to a situation we are interested in. In either case they can tell us a lot about the situation we are trying to

understand. In this sense, one of the goals of this book is similar to that of an introductory course on ordinary differential equations [BD12, BDH11]: a student can come away with the deception that all ordinary differential equations can be solved explicitly, since exact solution techniques are emphasized throughout almost the entire course. Similarly, we over-emphasize exact solution methods here, not because they can often be used, but because they lead to a precise understanding of the dynamics of integrable equations. This dynamical behavior is qualitatively similar to that of near-integrable equations which are truly prevalent models for a great variety of applications.

I am confident that the reader agrees that although real problems involving ODEs require more advanced techniques (including computation) than those offered in a first course, missing out on the basic insights that are provided by these elementary methods would be a disservice to all who need ODEs. I think of the content of this book in the same way: no single research problem will yield to what is learned here, but the intuition gained from these analytical methods is crucial in the approach of all nonlinear wave problems.

The book emphasizes methods, not applications. Different fields of applications will be drawn upon as examples and for homework problems throughout. We will encounter many applications from fluid mechanics and surface water waves. Other application areas include nonlinear optics, Bose-Einstein condensates, mathematical biology, space and plasma physics.

1.2 About ordinary differential equations

Consider the autonomous ordinary differential equation (ODE)

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = f(x), \quad x(0) = x_0,$$

written as a first order system. Then $I(x)$ is a **conserved quantity** for this system if

$$\frac{d}{dt}I(x) = \nabla I(x) \cdot \frac{dx}{dt} = \nabla I(x) \cdot f(x) = 0.$$

If so, then $I(x) = I(x(0)) = I(x_0)$ is a constant, equal to its value at the initial time.

Example 1.1. *Let*

$$\begin{cases} x' = y \\ y' = -x \end{cases}.$$

Then $H = x^2 + y^2$ is a conserved quantity for this system. A generic two-dimensional system may move anywhere in the (x, y) -plane, but for this system the motion is constrained to circles:

$$H(x, y) = x^2 + y^2 = H(x_0, y_0).$$

In general, conserved quantities put constraints on the allowable motion of a system. The more conserved quantities a system has, the more constrained its motion is: each conserved quantity determines a hypersurface in the phase space of the system, and the motion is constrained to the intersection of all these surfaces. Integrable equations have a maximal number of conserved quantities: for autonomous ODEs this number is $N - 1$, where N is the dimension of the system. The one remaining degree of freedom allows for motion on one-dimensional subsets, *i.e.* curves, which corresponds to time evolution. For partial differential equations (PDEs) this implies an infinite number of conserved quantities. It should be noted that if we have found an infinite number of conserved quantities for a given PDE, it may be that we found all of them. Or maybe we are missing one, or two. Or half of them. This is an unpleasant problem that we will talk about but we will not solve it in this course. Note that all of these considerations about conserved quantities are far more important in three or more dimensions, since in two dimensions the Poincaré-Bendixson theorem [Wig03] imposes significant restrictions on the flow anyways.

Consider the “typical” situation in many particle systems in physics [Gol80]:

$$m_i x_i'' = F_i(x, x'),$$

where i denotes the i -th particle. The number of particles ranges from 10 or more (when studying the solar system, for instance) to 10^{23} (when studying gas or plasma dynamics). Typically there are only three conserved quantities:

- $M = \sum_i m_i = C_1$ (mass),
- $P = \sum_i m_i x_i' = C_2$ (momentum),
- $E = \frac{1}{2} \sum_i m_i (x_i')^2 + V(x) = C_3$ (energy),

where $V(x)$ denotes the total potential energy of the system (assuming the forces are conservative). The different statistical ensembles in statistical mechanics [Hua87] (micro-canonical, canonical, and grand-canonical) correspond to assuming which of M , P , and E are constant, and which are allowed to vary (not in time, but across different systems). A system for which *only* these three quantities are conserved is called **ergodic** (the mathematical definition is far more technical than this, but this will do for us). Poincaré (*e.g.*, see [BG97]) proved that for a generic N -particle system, these are the only conserved quantities. Thus, a generic N -particle system is ergodic.

This leads us to wonder **what we are doing**. Why are we wasting our time studying integrable or near-integrable systems? After all, such systems are clearly non-generic, so we are unlikely to encounter them in applications.

From this perspective, Poincaré’s result is rather discouraging. It was not until the work of Kolmogorov, Arnol’d, and Moser (KAM) ([Arn63, Kol79, Mos62], see also [Wig03]) that

looking at integrable equations became a sensible activity. One of the results coming out of KAM theory is that systems “near” an integrable system retain many of the features of that integrable system. It is true that systems near integrable systems may be ergodic when considered over long times, and they may exhibit chaos. But on shorter time scales, in large regions of phase space, the system behaves in many ways like an integrable system. For instance, the level surfaces of conserved quantities may be deformed, but they don’t necessarily fall completely apart. They still inhibit transport: they may not confine regions of phase space, but trajectories near them tend to stay near them for very long times. In that sense they are called sticky. Now, all of the results referred to above are for ODEs. Very few of these have been generalized to PDEs, but we will believe that they may so be generalized.

1.3 Two historically important problems in the development of integrable and near-integrable systems

Historically, the study of two seemingly distinct problems has advanced the study of nonlinear waves significantly. The first is the propagation of waves of permanent form in shallow water, following the famous observation by John Scott Russell recounted below. The second is one of the problems devised by Fermi, Pasta, Ulam and Tsingou, for one of the first electronic computers at the Los Alamos National Laboratory. These problems were subsequently shown to be mathematically intimately connected through the so-called Korteweg-de Vries equation.

1.3.1 A Scotsman on a horse

John Scott Russell was an engineer working on different aspects of wave propagation related to vessels on canals. In 1834, he was on horseback, following a horse-drawn boat on a canal near Edinburgh. His story has been recounted often, but it is too seminal not to include it here. In his own words [[Rus45](#)]:

“I was observing the motion of a boat which was rapidly drawn along a narrow channel by a pair of horses, when the boat suddenly stopped - not so the mass of water in the channel which it had put in motion; it accumulated round the prow of the vessel in a state of violent agitation, then suddenly leaving it behind, rolled forward with great velocity, assuming the form of a large solitary elevation, a rounded, smooth and well-defined heap of water, which continued its course along the channel apparently without change of form or diminution of speed. I followed it on horseback, and overtook it still rolling on at a rate of some eight or nine miles an hour, preserving its original figure some thirty feet long and a foot to a foot and a half in height. Its height gradually diminished, and after a chase of one or two miles I lost it in the windings of the channel. Such, in the month

of August 1834, was my first chance interview with that singular and beautiful phenomenon which I have called the Wave of Translation.”

After observing this “great wave of translation”, Russell started his research on this phenomenon, using various experimental facilities, including a 30ft tank, built in his back yard. His experiments are illustrated beautifully in [Rus45], through various meticulously drawn plates accompanying the paper¹, one of which is shown in Fig. 1.1. Russell’s results were at odds with beliefs commonly held at the time. Airy, and to a lesser extent, Stokes argued that a solitary wave of the type described by Russell could not propagate without change in form or speed. In essence, Airy’s arguments were based on linear ideas. As will be made clear later, Russell’s solitary wave is an inherently nonlinear phenomenon. Stokes’s results relied heavily on the use of periodic boundary conditions, which do not apply to the solitary wave. A good overview of this history is presented in [Bul88].

Boussinesq [Bou77] was the first to derive a model that leads to a mathematical description of Russell’s wave. This model was inherently nonlinear. In particular he wrote down a formula for the soliton solution. In 1895, Korteweg and de Vries [KdV95], wrote down the equation that now bears their name,

$$u_t = uu_x + u_{xxx},$$

(indices denote partial derivatives; the value of the coefficients in front of each term is arbitrary as we will see later) and calculated its stationary solutions. They gave explicit formulae for the soliton solution, as well as for the more general periodic traveling wave solutions. Their work, in greater detail than that of Boussinesq, explained the phenomena observed by Russell and discusses carefully the different assumptions which lead Airy and Stokes to their own conclusions. For instance, solitary waves of their equation that have higher amplitude travel faster than those that have lower amplitude. This implies that higher-amplitude waves that are initially trailing waves of lower amplitude will catch up with them, resulting in an interaction process. This process is nonlinear, since the KdV equation is nonlinear.

1.3.2 The Fermi-Pasta-Ulam-Tsingou problem

Question: what is the temperature of a metal?

To understand this question, we have to understand the concept of thermal equilibrium. In statistical mechanics, there is an unproven hypothesis that after a long time the energy of a system is spread equally among all modes, or across all degrees of freedom. This hypothesis is referred to as the equipartition of energy [Hua87].

¹It should be remarked that it took Russell 10 years to conduct his experiments and report on his findings. This is not a publication record that would impress university administrations nowadays!

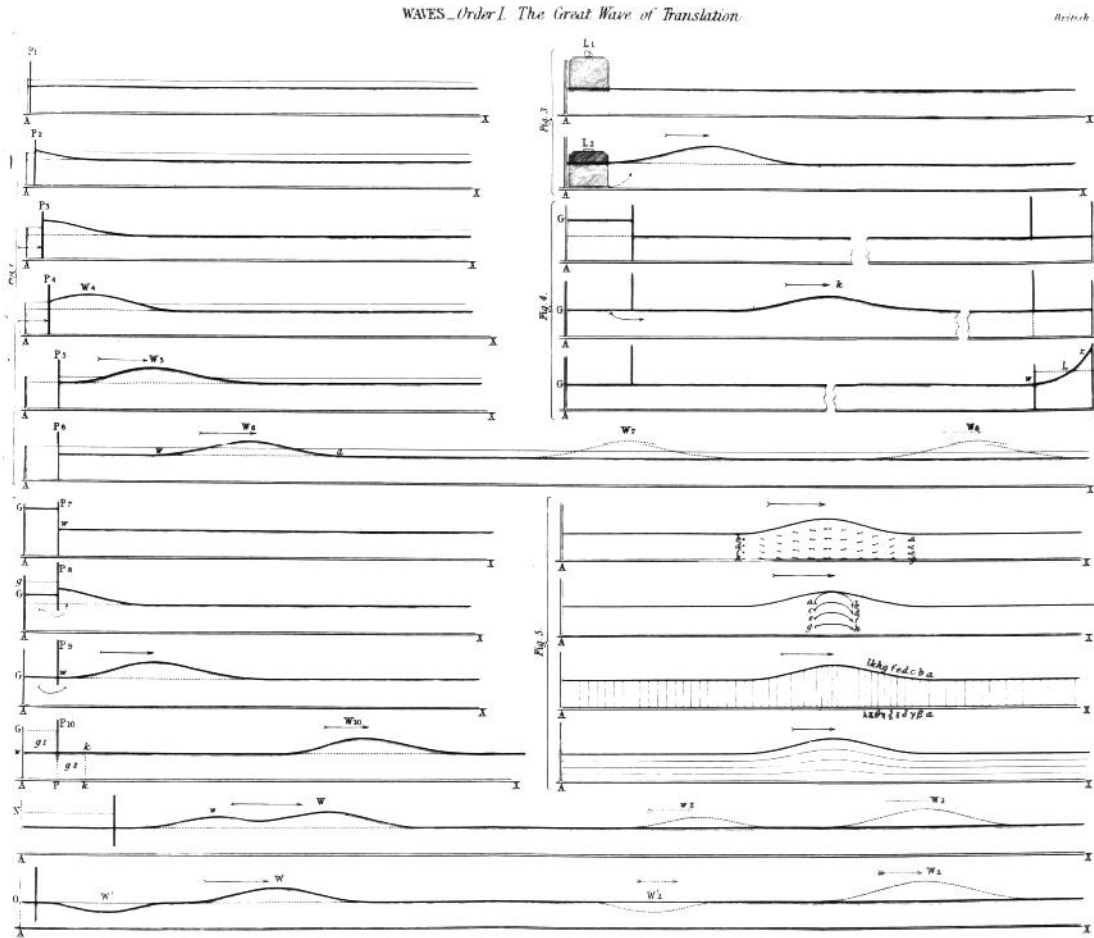


Figure 1.1: Illustrations from [Rus45] on the experimental creation of the “Wave of Translation” in a wave tank.

It was Fermi’s idea to test this hypothesis using one of the first computers at Los Alamos (Maniac I, 1955). The model Fermi, Pasta, Ulam, and Tsingou (FPUT, [FPU55]²) used was that of a one-dimensional chain of N particles of equal mass m , coupled together with nonlinear springs, see Fig. 1.2. This is not a good representation of the model required for the crystal structure of a metal, but it serves as a simple example of what is already a complicated phenomenon. Let y_n denote the displacement of the n -th particle from its equilibrium position. The equation of motion for y_n is

²See the acknowledgements of the FPU paper: Mary Tsingou’s contribution is clearly mentioned there, but she didn not participate in writing the technical report and she was not mentioned as a coauthor. See [Dau08] for more discussion on this issue.

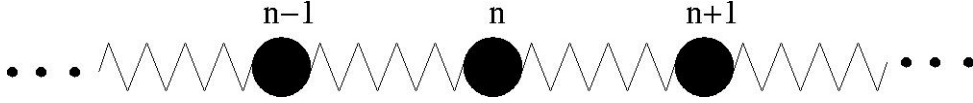


Figure 1.2: The setup of the FPUT problem

$$m \frac{d^2 y_n}{dt^2} = F_{n,\text{right}} - F_{n,\text{left}}, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots, N,$$

where N is assumed to be large (close to 10^{23} , say 64). There are two main hypotheses FPUT wanted to test:

- There is equipartition of energy over all modes,
- This equipartition happens independent of the initial conditions.

The case of linear springs

In this case

$$F_{n,\text{right}} = -k(y_n - y_{n+1}), \quad F_{n,\text{left}} = -k(y_{n-1} - y_n),$$

which is just Hooke's law [Gol80]. For $n = 1, \dots, N$ we have

$$\begin{aligned} m \frac{d^2 y_n}{dt^2} &= -k(y_n - y_{n+1}) + k(y_{n-1} - y_n) \\ &= k(y_{n+1} - 2y_n + y_{n-1}). \end{aligned}$$

Since these equations are linear with constant coefficients, we look for a solution of the form $y_n = A_n e^{\omega t}$. Substitution gives

$$m\omega^2 A_n = k(A_{n+1} - 2A_n + A_{n-1}).$$

Thus the allowed frequencies ω are determined by imposing that this equation has a nontrivial solution (in other words, there is a solution for which $A_n \neq 0$, for at least one n). This results in a determinant equated to zero. This equation is the dispersion relation for this problem. Once the frequencies are fixed this way, the amplitudes A_n may be determined by linear algebra and by using the initial conditions. In this case, it is clear that there is no equipartition of energy: the normal modes of the system correspond to the eigenvectors of our matrix equation. These are orthogonal (hence normal) to one another because our matrix is symmetric. Using this basis of normal modes, the original system of differential

equations is uncoupled, and it is clear that the energy in a normal mode does not impact any of the other modes, thus there is no equipartition of energy. Conceptually, this is most easily seen as follows: the solution of an N -dimensional linear system of differential equations $y' = My$ (here M is a square matrix of size $N \times N$) is given by a superposition of N linearly independent modes:

$$y = c_1 y^{(1)}(t) + c_2 y^{(2)}(t) + \dots + c_N y^{(N)}(t).$$

Suppose that the initial condition $y(0) = y^{(1)}(0)$ is given. Then the solution of the initial-value problem is $y(t) = y^{(1)}(t)$ and there is no way for the modes $y^{(k)}(t)$, $k = 2, \dots, N$ to ever be excited.

Thus equipartition of energy requires at least some amount of nonlinearity, to couple the modes.

The case of nonlinear springs

The simplest nonlinear term to include in the force law is of course quadratic. Thus we have

$$F_{n,\text{right}} = k(y_{n+1} - y_n) + \alpha k(y_{n+1} - y_n)^2, \quad F_{n,\text{left}} = k(y_n - y_{n-1}) + \alpha k(y_n - y_{n-1})^2.$$

FPUT solved the coupled ODEs

$$m \frac{d^2 y_n}{dt^2} = k [(y_{n+1} - 2y_n + y_{n-1}) + \alpha(y_{n+1} - y_n)^2 - \alpha(y_n - y_{n-1})^2] \quad (1.1)$$

numerically by running them on the Maniac I with $N = 64$. This was one of the very first instances of computational physics. It appears the problem cannot be done analytically any more: due to the nonlinearity all our linear algebra approaches from the linear case cease to work. Starting with all energy in one mode (for which they used a normal mode from the linear problem), they observed no equipartition of energy. Only about 5 of the 64 modes were ever excited. After some time, they noticed that approximately all energy was again in the initial mode. This process then repeats.

What is going on? How do we explain this?

Before we move on to what Kruskal and Zabusky did on this problem, it should be emphasized that the study of the FPUT problem remains an active area of research to this day, see for instance [\[Gal08\]](#).

1.4 The work of Zabusky and Kruskal: derivation of the KdV equation

Zabusky and Kruskal [ZK65] attempted to explain the FPUT observations. They added several assumptions to the FPUT model, in order to simplify it. These assumptions were consistent with the observations of FPUT. The first assumption was to consider only long waves, as only low modes were excited. Thus, Zabusky and Kruskal examined the limit case of long wavelength. In this limit, the different particles appear close together and a long wave does not vary that much between two neighboring particles. They had the idea of taking a continuum limit of the FPUT lattice, resulting in a partial differential equation. We have much more training to deal with PDEs than with lattices, so maybe this limit problem is simpler to deal with.

First, let

$$\begin{cases} x_n = nh, \\ y_n = y(x_n), \end{cases}$$

where h is the lattice spacing. Then

$$\begin{aligned} y_{n+1} &= y(x_{n+1}) = y(x_n + h) = y_n + hy_x(x_n) + \frac{h^2}{2}y_{xx}(x_n) + \frac{h^3}{6}y_{xxx} + \dots, \\ y_{n-1} &= y(x_{n-1}) = y(x_n - h) = y_n - hy_x(x_n) + \frac{h^2}{2}y_{xx}(x_n) - \frac{h^3}{6}y_{xxx} + \dots, \end{aligned}$$

and

$$y_{n+1} - 2y_n + y_{n-1} = h^2y_{xx}(x_n) + \frac{h^4}{12}y_{xxxx}(x_n) + \mathcal{O}(h^6).$$

Similarly, the nonlinear term gives

$$\begin{aligned} &\alpha[(y_{n+1} - y_n)^2 - (y_n - y_{n-1})^2] \\ &= \alpha(y_{n+1} - 2y_n + y_{n-1})(y_{n+1} - y_{n-1}) \\ &= \alpha \left(h^2y_{xx}(x_n) + \frac{h^4}{12}y_{xxxx}(x_n) + \dots \right) \left(2hy_x(x_n) + \frac{h^3}{3}y_{xxx}(x_n) + \dots \right) \\ &= 2\alpha h^3y_x(x_n)y_{xx}(x_n) + \mathcal{O}(\alpha h^5). \end{aligned}$$

The FPUT problem becomes

$$my_{tt} = k \left(h^2y_{xx} + \frac{h^4}{12}y_{xxxx} + 2\alpha h^3y_xy_{xx} + \mathcal{O}(\alpha h^5, h^6) \right),$$

where everything is evaluated at x_n . Thus

$$y_{tt} = \frac{kh^2}{m} \left(y_{xx} + \frac{h^2}{12} y_{xxxx} + 2\alpha h y_x y_{xx} + \mathcal{O}(\alpha h^3, h^4) \right). \quad (1.2)$$

The dominant terms of this PDE give

$$y_{tt} = \frac{kh^2}{m} y_{xx},$$

which is a wave equation with d'Alembert solution

$$y = f(x - vt) + g(x + vt), \quad (1.3)$$

where $v^2 = kh^2/m$. The first term $f(x - vt)$ represents a right-going wave, whereas the second term $g(x + vt)$ represents a left-going wave. Given that the terms we ignored are smaller than the ones we kept, we expect the solution of our original PDE (1.2) to be of the form (1.3), with small corrections.

Let us focus on the right-going wave. We put ourselves in a frame of reference moving along with the right-going wave, while introducing an additional variable to measure variations in this coordinate frame. Let

$$\begin{cases} X = x - vt = x - \sqrt{\frac{kh^2}{m}} t \\ T = \alpha h v t \end{cases}.$$

Note that T is a “slow” time: it takes a large change in t to achieve a small change in T , since both α (amount of nonlinearity) and h (lattice spacing) are supposed to be small. The above rules induce transformation rules on the derivatives:

$$\begin{cases} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial X}{\partial x} \frac{\partial}{\partial X} + \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \frac{\partial}{\partial T} = \frac{\partial}{\partial X} \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial X}{\partial t} \frac{\partial}{\partial X} + \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} \frac{\partial}{\partial T} = -v \frac{\partial}{\partial X} + \alpha h v \frac{\partial}{\partial T} \end{cases}.$$

The FPUT problem (1.2) in these new variables becomes

$$\begin{aligned} v^2 \left(\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial X^2} + \frac{h^2}{12} \frac{\partial^4 y}{\partial X^4} + 2\alpha h \frac{\partial y}{\partial X} \frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial X^2} \right) &= v^2 \left(-\frac{\partial}{\partial X} + \alpha h \frac{\partial}{\partial T} \right) \left(-\frac{\partial}{\partial X} + \alpha h \frac{\partial}{\partial T} \right) y \\ &= v^2 \left(-\frac{\partial}{\partial X} + \alpha h \frac{\partial}{\partial T} \right) \left(-\frac{\partial y}{\partial X} + \alpha h \frac{\partial y}{\partial T} \right) \\ &= v^2 \left(\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial X^2} - 2\alpha h \frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial X \partial T} + \alpha^2 h^2 \frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial T^2} \right). \end{aligned}$$

Simplifying this gives (the wave equation term drops out, as expected)

$$\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial T \partial X} + \frac{\partial y}{\partial X} \frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial X^2} + \frac{h}{24\alpha} \frac{\partial^4 y}{\partial X^4} - \frac{\alpha h}{2} \frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial T^2} = 0.$$

Remembering that both α and h are supposed to be small, we may ignore the last term, as being significantly smaller than the others. Further, defining $\delta^2 = h/(24\alpha)$ (for historical reasons; note that $h/(24\alpha)$ is not necessarily positive) and setting $\phi = \partial y / \partial X$ we obtain

$$\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial T} + \phi \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial X} + \delta^2 \frac{\partial^3 \phi}{\partial X^3} = 0,$$

the KdV equation³!

1.5 The work of Zabusky and Kruskal: properties of the KdV equation

The KdV equation was first written down by Boussinesq in 1877 [Bou71], but it is named after Korteweg and de Vries who derived the equation in 1895 [KdV95] in the same context as Boussinesq, that of long waves in shallow water in narrow canals. As already mentioned, Korteweg and de Vries discussed the stationary solutions of their equation. They noted the existence of a large class of solutions expressed in terms of elliptic functions, but also of the solitary wave solution. They found that this solution is expressed using hyperbolic functions:

$$\phi = 12\kappa^2 \delta^2 \operatorname{sech}^2 \kappa(x - 4\kappa^2 \delta^2 t + \varphi), \quad (1.4)$$

where κ and φ are free constants. This solution is shown in Fig. 1.3.

Zabusky and Kruskal [ZK65] solved the KdV equation numerically with periodic boundary conditions and initial condition $u(x, t = 0) = 10 \cos(\pi x)$, on $x \in [0, 2]$. The results of their numerics is displayed in Fig. 1.4. Their initial condition is given by the dotted line. They noticed the following:

1. First the solution starts to steepen, until it almost reaches a point of breaking (*i.e.*, a near-vertical tangent), shown in dashes.
2. Before the breaking occurs, wiggles occur past (*i.e.*, to the left) the shock-like part. These wiggles grow and separate from the front of the shock. They form solitary entities which travel at separate speeds. This is shown by the solid line.

³As mentioned above, the value of the particular coefficients is irrelevant: indeed by scaling the dependent variable $u(x, t)$ and the independent variables x and t , any value of the coefficients may be attained. In terms of the application where the equation is derived, the scaling of the variables simply means we are measuring quantities in different units.

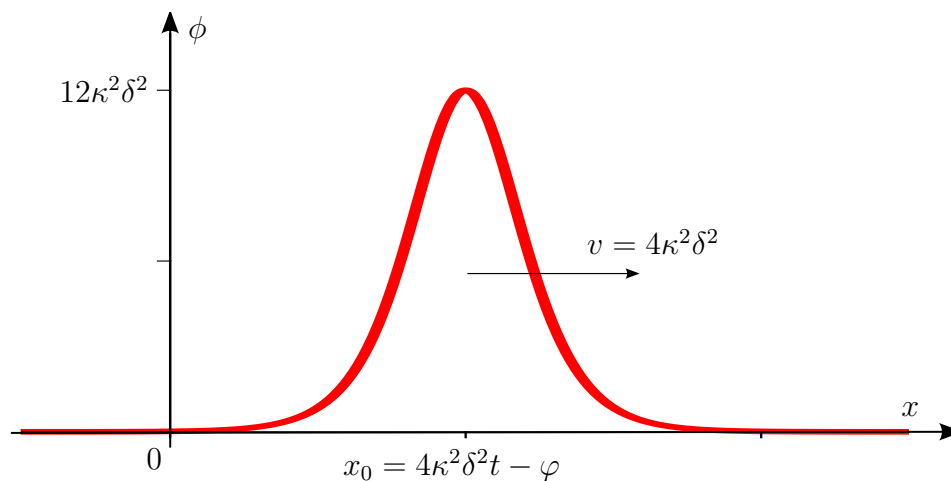


Figure 1.3: The soliton solution (1.4) of the KdV equation. The soliton moves to the right with constant speed $v = 4\kappa^2\delta^2$. It is centered at $x_0 = 4\kappa^2\delta^2t - \varphi$.

3. These solitary waves interact with each other, due to the periodic boundary conditions. This interaction is “clean”, meaning there is not much of a remnant of the interaction, apart from a shift in position of the two contributing solitary waves.

Zabusky and Kruskal found that each one of these solitary waves could be matched with the solitary wave solution (1.4) of the KdV equation, for different values of k (δ is fixed by the equation). Because these solitary waves interact in many ways like particles undergoing an elastic collision (*i.e.*, they keep their identity but they are in different positions after the collision), Zabusky and Kruskal gave them an elementary-particle-like name: **solitons**.

Assuming that the observations and conclusions of Zabusky and Kruskal were correct, this offers at least somewhat of a qualitative explanation of the FPUT problem observations: the initial condition gives rise to a certain number of solitons. Since these interact in what is an almost linear manner (they do not exchange energy, for instance), no more modes get excited than there are solitons created from the initial conditions. In the original FPUT experiment, this was about five or six. Also, since periodic boundary conditions are used, it does not take too long before all solitons are arranged so that they (up to a shift in x) recreate the initial condition. Clearly all of these arguments are very qualitative and require further justification, but they allow for a glimpse of what is actually going on.

1.6 Balancing dispersion and steepening

Let us analyze the KdV equation a little further. We will study the dynamics of small-amplitude and near-shock solutions in more detail in future chapters. Here we look at the effect the different terms of the KdV equation contribute to the dynamics.

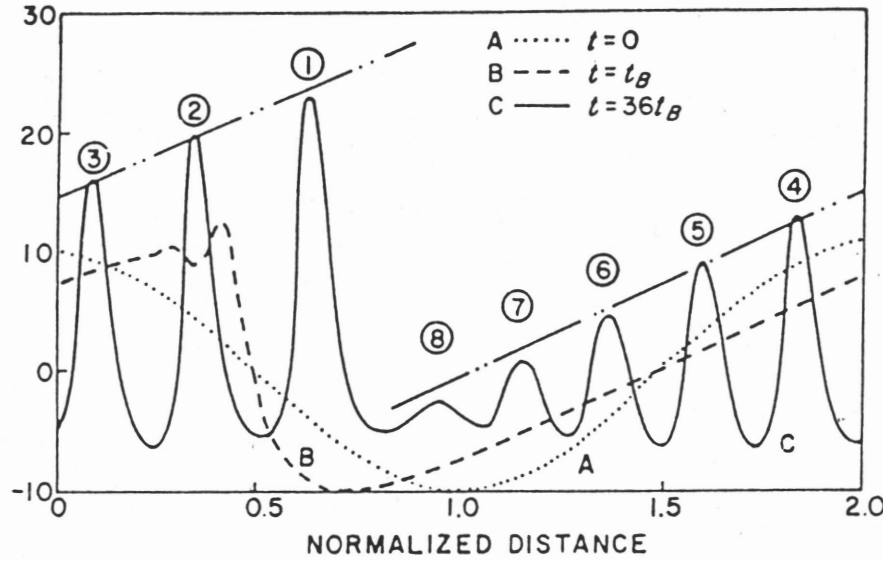


Figure 1.4: The numerical results of Kruskal and Zabusky (1965).

Solutions with small amplitude

For solutions with small amplitude, we might expect the term $\phi\phi_x$ to be smaller than the two others, and we may consider

$$\phi_T + \delta^2 \phi_{XXX} = 0. \quad (1.5)$$

This is the linear KdV equation. The last term is dispersive: it results in different wave numbers contributing to the solution to propagate with different speeds, see Chapter 2. On the whole line $-\infty < x < \infty$, this results in contributions from different wave numbers to separate in space. As a consequence, the solution tends to spread out, resulting in an overall decrease in the amplitude of the solution. If we are using a finite domain, this is not possible, as there is nowhere for the solution to spread out to. A typical time evolution for initial data specified on the whole line is displayed in Fig. 1.5.

Solutions with large amplitude, δ small

In the original numerical experiments of Zabusky and Kruskal [ZK65], $\delta^2 = 1/12$. For solutions with sufficiently large amplitude, if δ is small, we may neglect the dispersive term. Then we need to consider the equation

$$\phi_T + \phi\phi_X = 0. \quad (1.6)$$

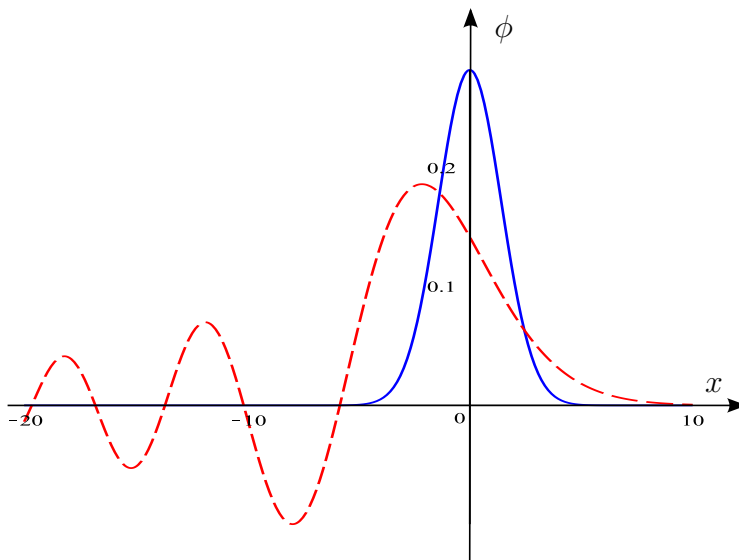


Figure 1.5: The effect of dispersion on Gaussian initial data. The solid blue line is a Gaussian initial condition. The dashed red line is the time evolution at $t = 5$ using the linear dispersive equation (1.5).

This is sometimes called Burgers' equation, or the dissipationless form of Burgers' equation (the full Burgers' equation is $\phi_T + \phi\phi_X = \nu\phi_{xx}$, where ν is the dissipation coefficient). Using the method of characteristics (Chapter 3), we may show that profiles that have fronts will steepen, *i.e.*, the fronts become more pronounced, as shown in Fig. 1.6. The method of characteristics allows us to say that the above equation is a first-order wave equation, or transport equation, but with variable velocity ϕ .

Thus for this equation, steep fronts get steeper and they eventually develop a shock. However, just before this shock is formed, the solution is very steep and therefore the dispersive term $\delta^2\phi_{XXX}$ will have an impact, even for small δ^2 . This term tends to smear out any solution, as we argued above. In the case of a steepening solution, it prevents the formation of a shock. Thus we may reach the following heuristic conclusion:

The KdV equation provides a balance between steepening and dispersion.

This conclusion is accurate for many integrable equations and provides some useful intuition about what makes these equations special. Equations such as the KdV equation typically incorporate many different effects and these all have to balance in particular ways to account for soliton formation. At this point it is fair to say that we have not solved the FPUT paradox at any level whatsoever, but at least we have connected the problem with another problem that appears to be special.

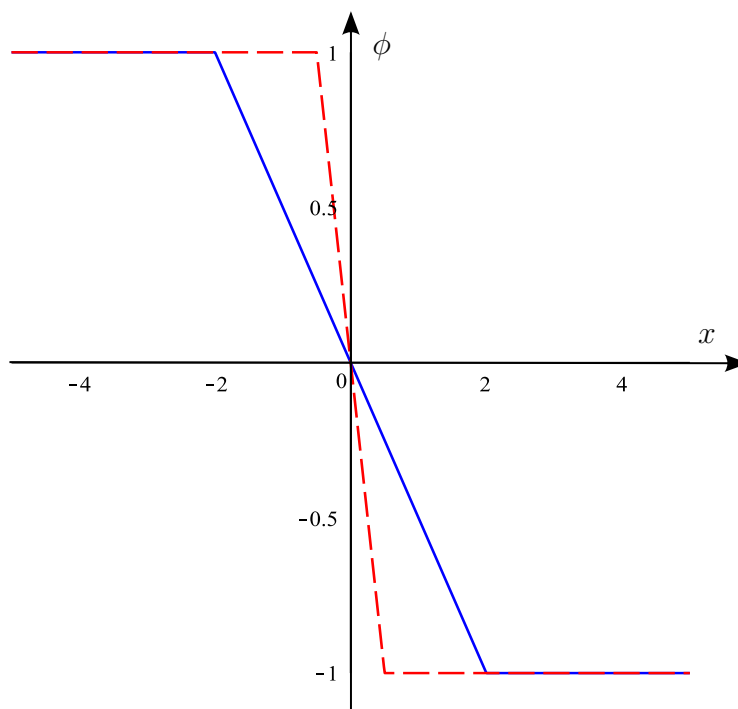


Figure 1.6: The effect of steepening on piecewise linear initial data. The solid blue line is the initial condition, the dashed red line shows the time evolution according to (1.6), approaching a shock.

1.7 An overview of current textbooks and research monographs

This section provides a limited and biased overview of books currently available that cover multiple aspects of nonlinear wave equations. Not included are works like [CM08] or [Olv93], which are limited to (usually more in-depth) coverage of one or a few aspects of nonlinear waves. Specific emphasis is on topics that are not or barely discussed in this text. The books are discussed in chronological order.

- **Whitham, *Linear and Nonlinear Waves* (1974) [Whi74].** This is the undisputed classic on analytic methods for hyperbolic systems (part I) and dispersive equations (part II). There is almost no coverage of integrable systems, the renaissance of which was just in its infancy in 1974. The book is missing more modern methods, but its treatment of the classical methods, including those created by the author, is excellent.
- **Ablowitz & Segur, *Solitons and the Inverse Scattering Transform* (1981) [AS81].** Written by two experts in the field of nonlinear waves, this re-

search monograph covers many aspects of integrable equations well. By now, some approaches are a bit dated, but the exposition remains excellent. Good introductions to differential-difference systems and pole dynamics. A recommended classic.

- ***Integrable Systems: Selected Papers* (1981) [Nov81]**. This is a collection of previously published translated papers outlining some Russian contributions to the field. The papers are mostly reviews. Although not easy reading, the individual papers are, almost without exception, classics.
- **Novikov, Manakov, Pitaevski, & Zakharov, *Theory of Solitons* (1984) [NMPZ84]**. Although suffering from poor typesetting, this is the best introduction to the many contributions of the Moscow school to soliton theory. It contains extensive material on the periodic problem. This material is somewhat dated now, but some of the topics treated are simply not found in any other book.
- **Newell, *Solitons in Mathematics and Physics* (1985) [New85]**. These are lecture notes from a CBMS conference, and it shows: the material is quite accessible, and the coverage is wide. This is a good book to start learning about integrable systems. Starting with applications, the author covers different solution techniques, ending with an introduction to the algebraic theory of integrable systems.
- **Drazin & Johnson, *Solitons: an Introduction* (1989) [DJ89]**. This is often referred to as the undergraduate introduction to soliton theory. To some extent this is accurate, and one could argue it is one of the few textbooks on this list, as opposed to the many research monographs. The exposition is easy to follow for most of the text, but I find the treatment of inverse scattering limited and confusing.
- **Fordy, *Soliton Theory: a Survey of Results* (1990) [For90]**. Not as much a book as a collection of review papers. I have always liked it. The quality of the individual papers is high, especially those in the second half of the book. There are excellent contributions on Hamiltonian systems, the periodic problem, Painlevé analysis and the prolongation method.
- **Infeld and Rowlands, *Nonlinear Waves, Solitons and Chaos* (First edition, 1990) [IR00]**. An excellent introduction to many techniques for nonlinear wave equations, not just integrable ones. The emphasis is more on the physics than the mathematics. The silly chapter on chaos is added for marketability, as the authors admit.
- **Ablowitz & Clarkson, *Solitons, Nonlinear Evolution Equations and Inverse Scattering* (1991) [AC91]**. In some ways a sequel to [AS81] with a more modern treatment on inverse scattering, including inverse scattering in more than one spatial dimension. Also included is an excellent introduction to Painlevé analysis.

- **Knobel, *An Introduction to the Mathematical Theory of Waves* (2000) [Kno00].** This is a delightful little book suitable for undergraduates. It introduces important wave phenomena, such as dispersion and breaking. Its focus is on the seminal wave equations, some of which are integrable. No specific techniques from integrability are used.
- **Dauxois & Peyrard, *Physics of Solitons* (2010) [DP10].** A newer text from a physics perspective. The mathematics is very loose here, but there are some excellent application examples, including interesting ones using the Sine-Gordon equation.
- **Yang, *Nonlinear Waves in Integrable and Nonintegrable Systems* (2010) [Yan10].** This book discusses an appealing mix of integrable and nonintegrable systems, and of analytical and numerical methods. Although the book reflects the research program of its author, its contents should appeal to a larger audience, especially one interested in numerical approaches.
- **Ablowitz, *Nonlinear Dispersive Waves. Asymptotic Analysis and Solitons* (2011) [Abl11].** This textbook contains a good mix of techniques for both integrable and non-integrable equations. The treatment is application based, with many applications drawn from nonlinear optics. One of the many things one takes away from this book is how much can be achieved with a good mastery of asymptotics and perturbation methods.

1.8 Exercises

1.1. Show that the FPUT system (1.1) can be written as

$$m \frac{d^2 y_n}{dt^2} = - \frac{\partial V}{\partial y_n}, \quad n = 1, \dots, N,$$

for some $V(y_1, \dots, y_N)$. Recall that (1.1) assumes periodic boundary conditions so that $y_{N+1} = y_1$.

Thus, the FPUT system is conservative, and energy is conserved. This implies that if energy is leaking from one mode, it has to go to another mode. It cannot simply disappear.

1.2. The Korteweg-deVries (KdV) equation

$$u_t = uu_x + u_{xxx}$$

is often written with different coefficients. By using a scaling transformation on all variables (dependent and independent), show that the choice of the coefficients is irrelevant: by choosing a suitable scaling, we can use any coefficients we please. Can you

say the same for the modified KdV (mKdV) equation

$$u_t = u^2 u_x + u_{xxx}?$$

- 1.3. The Nonlinear Schrödinger (NLS) equation is written as

$$ia_t = -a_{xx} + \sigma|a|^2 a,$$

where $\sigma = \pm 1$. The equation is often written with different coefficients. By using a scaling transformation on all variables (dependent and independent), show that the choice of the coefficients is almost irrelevant: by choosing a suitable scaling, we can use any coefficients we please, except for the sign of the ratio of the coefficients of the two terms on the right-hand side.

- 1.4. (Use Maple or Mathematica or other symbolic computing software for this problem.) Consider the KdV equation $u_t + uu_x + u_{xxx} = 0$. Show that

$$u = 12\partial_x^2 \ln \left(1 + e^{k_1 x - k_1^3 t + \alpha} \right)$$

is a one-soliton solution of the equation (*i.e.*, rewrite it in the familiar sech^2 form).

Now check that

$$u = 12\partial_x^2 \ln \left(1 + e^{k_1 x - k_1^3 t + \alpha} + e^{k_2 x - k_2^3 t + \beta} + \left(\frac{k_1 - k_2}{k_1 + k_2} \right)^2 e^{k_1 x - k_1^3 t + \alpha + k_2 x - k_2^3 t + \beta} \right)$$

is also a solution of the equation. It is a two-soliton solution, as we will verify later. By changing t , we can see how the two solitons interact. With $\alpha = 0$ and $\beta = 1$, examine the following three regions of parameter space: (a) $k_1/k_2 > \sqrt{3}$, (b) $\sqrt{3} > k_1/k_2 > \sqrt{(3 + \sqrt{5})/2}$, (c) $k_1/k_2 < \sqrt{(3 + \sqrt{5})/2}$. Discuss the different types of collisions. Here “examine” and “discuss” are to be interpreted in an experimental sense: play around with this solution and observe what happens. The results you observe are the topic of the second part of Lax’s seminal paper [Lax68].

- 1.5. **Cole-Hopf transformation.** Show that every non-zero solution of the heat equation $\theta_t = \nu\theta_{xx}$ gives rise to a solution of the dissipative Burgers’ equation $u_t + uu_x = \nu u_{xx}$, through the mapping $u = -2\nu\theta_x/\theta$.
- 1.6. From the previous problem, you know that every solution of the heat equation $\theta_t = \nu\theta_{xx}$ gives rise to a solution of the dissipative Burgers’ equation $u_t + uu_x = \nu u_{xx}$, through the mapping $u = -2\nu\theta_x/\theta$.
- (a) Check that $\theta = 1 + \alpha e^{-kx + \nu k^2 t}$ is a solution of the heat equation. What solution of Burgers’ equation does it correspond to? Describe this solution qualitatively (velocity, amplitude, steepness, *etc*) in terms of its parameters.

- (b) Check that $\theta = 1 + \alpha e^{-k_1 x + \nu k_1^2 t} + \beta e^{-k_2 x + \nu k_2^2 t}$ is a solution of the heat equation. What solution of Burgers' equation does it correspond to? Describe the dynamics of this solution, *i.e.*, how does it change in time?

Part I

General considerations for nonlinear wave equations

Chapter 2

Linear evolution equations. The dispersion relationship.

In order to understand nonlinear problems, first we have to understand linear problems well. In fact, it is a recurring theme in the study of nonlinear waves that when studying a nonlinear problem, one should first have a complete understanding of the linearized problem, *i.e.*, the problem one obtains when all nonlinear terms are ignored. For convenience, we only discuss one-dimensional problems here. The main method for solving the type of linear problems we are interested in is the Fourier transform, or Fourier series, depending on the boundary conditions. Using this method, we attempt to construct the solution of the equation as a linear superposition of modes whose functional dependence on x and t is of the form

$$e^{ikx-i\omega t}.$$

Typically, the equation will impose a condition expressing ω as a function of k : $\omega = \omega(k)$. This is the dispersion relationship.

If we are solving an equation on the whole line $x \in \mathbb{R}$, there are no restrictions on k and a superposition of all possible modes results in an integral over all $k \in \mathbb{R}$ (the Fourier integral). On the other hand, if we are solving an equation on a finite interval with periodic boundary conditions, there are restrictions on k , to ensure the periodicity of the modes is compatible with the length of the interval. In this case the possible k values are quantized and a superposition of all allowed modes gives rise to a (usually infinite) sum (the Fourier series). In fancy terms: it is the same in either case, but the measure of allowed wave numbers k is continuous in the first case and discrete in the second case. In what follows we focus on the $x \in \mathbb{R}$ case.

2.1 The dispersion relationship and the general solution

2.1.1 Scalar, first-order evolution equations

A scalar, linear (first-order) evolution equation with constant coefficients is a linear partial differential equation that may be solved for its lone t derivative of the scalar solution $u(x, t)$:

$$u_t = F(u, u_x, u_{xx}, \dots), \quad (2.1)$$

where the scalar-valued function F is linear and homogeneous in its arguments, and has constant coefficients:

$$F(u, u_x, u_{xx}, \dots) = a_0 u + a_1 u_x + a_2 u_{xx} + \dots,$$

where the coefficients a_j , $j = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ are constant. We assume vanishing boundary conditions at infinity:

$$u \rightarrow 0 \quad \text{as} \quad x \rightarrow \pm\infty,$$

and similar conditions on the spatial derivatives of u , as necessary.

Let us look for the dispersion relationship. To this end, we consider basic modes of the form

$$u = e^{ikx - i\omega t}.$$

Since we are investigating a linear homogeneous equation with constant coefficients, any constant multiple of a solution is again a solution. Thus the above can be multiplied by any function of k . However, in the scalar case investigated here this does not impact the results below. Proceeding,

$$u_t = -i\omega u, \quad u_x = ik u, \quad \dots, \quad u_{nx} = (ik)^n u,$$

where u_{nx} denotes the n -th x -derivate of $u(x, t)$. Using the linearity and homogeneity of F , we obtain $-i\omega u = F(u, ik u, \dots) = u F(1, ik, (ik)^2, \dots)$. In order to have solutions other than $u = 0$ we require

$$\omega = iF(1, ik, (ik)^2, \dots) = \omega(k).$$

This is the linear dispersion relationship. For any given wave number k , it gives the allowed frequency ω .

Thus the modes are of the form

$$e^{ikx - i\omega(k)t}.$$

The most general solution of the evolution equation we may obtain from this is a linear superposition of all of these:

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a(k) e^{ikx - i\omega(k)t} dk, \quad (2.2)$$

where $a(k)$ is a scalar-valued function of k and the front factor of $1/2\pi$ is chosen for convenience. Note that we have restricted this superposition to real values of k so that only modes that are bounded for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$ are included.

Example 2.1. Consider the KdV equation $u_t = uu_x + u_{xxx}$. Before it makes sense to talk about a dispersion relation, we have to linearize this equation. Assuming that $u \rightarrow \alpha$, $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$ (constant) as $|x| \rightarrow \infty$, we let

$$u = \alpha + \epsilon v + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2). \quad (2.3)$$

Here ϵ is small parameter, introduced essentially for accounting purposes. We substitute (2.3) in the KdV equation to find

$$\epsilon v_t = (\alpha + \epsilon v) \epsilon v_x + \epsilon v_{xxx} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2).$$

Note that no terms of $\mathcal{O}(\epsilon^0)$ remain. This is because $u = \alpha$ is a solution of the KdV equation. This is essential for what follows. If the zeroth-order terms did not disappear, they would be dominant in the above expression, rendering everything below moot. Next we collect terms of first order in ϵ , ignoring all higher-order terms. This results in

$$v_t = \alpha v_x + v_{xxx}.$$

Since we assumed that $u \rightarrow \alpha$ as $|x| \rightarrow \infty$, it follows that $v \rightarrow 0$ as $|x| \rightarrow \infty$. Thus a Fourier transform seems reasonable. Having obtained a linear, constant-coefficient problem for $v(x, t)$, we proceed to find the linear dispersion relation. Let $v = \exp(ikx - i\omega(k)t)$. Then $-i\omega = \alpha(ik) + (ik)^3 \Rightarrow \omega = -\alpha k + k^3$, so that we have found the solution

$$v = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a(k) e^{ikx - i(k^3 - \alpha k)t} dk \Rightarrow u = \alpha + \frac{\epsilon}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a(k) e^{ikx - i(k^3 - \alpha k)t} dk + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2).$$

As stated above, the parameter ϵ is introduced for accounting purposes. It can be equated to 1, although one might wish to omit the last equality expressing the solution $u(x, t)$ of the original problem using the dispersion relation.

The representation (2.2) is only useful if it allows us to solve the evolution equation for a sufficiently large set of initial conditions. Let $u(x, 0) = u_0(x)$ be a given initial condition with $u_0(x) \in L_2(-\infty, \infty)$, i.e.,

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |u_0(x)|^2 dx < \infty.$$

In this case the initial-value problem

$$\begin{cases} u_t = F(u, u_x, \dots) \\ u(x, 0) = u_0(x), \quad u \rightarrow 0 \quad \text{as } x \rightarrow \pm\infty \end{cases}$$

has a unique solution: we have

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a(k) e^{ikx - i\omega(k)t} dk.$$

At $t = 0$ this becomes

$$u_0(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a(k) e^{ikx} dk,$$

which implies that $a(k)$ is the Fourier transform of $u_0(x)$, provided $u_0(x)$ has a Fourier transform, which is guaranteed by the condition $u_0(x) \in L_2(-\infty, \infty)$, and

$$u_0(x) = \mathcal{F}^{-1}[a(k)](x) \Rightarrow a(k) = \mathcal{F}[u_0(x)](k) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} u_0(x) e^{-ikx} dx.$$

We say that the set of modes is complete in the space of initial conditions we are using, $L_2(-\infty, \infty)$ in this case. In other words: every initial condition in $L_2(-\infty, \infty)$ can be written as a linear combination of the fundamental modes.

2.1.2 The general vector case.

Suppose that u in (2.1) is a vector of dimension $N > 1$. We let

$$u = A(k) e^{ikx - i\omega t},$$

where $A(k)$ is a vector of dimension N , independent of x and t .

We obtain

$$-i\omega u = F(1, ik, (ik)^2, \dots) u \Rightarrow (F(1, ik, (ik)^2, \dots) + i\omega I) u = 0,$$

where $F(1, ik, (ik)^2, \dots)$ is a matrix of size $N \times N$. The dispersion relation is given by

$$\det(F(1, ik, (ik)^2, \dots) + i\omega I) = 0,$$

and the different branches of the dispersion relation $\omega_j(k)$, $j = 1, \dots, N$ are the eigenvalues of the matrix $iF(1, ik, (ik)^2, \dots)$. Corresponding to each branch is an eigenvector $A_j(k)$ of $-iF(1, ik, (ik)^2, \dots)$. The combination

$$A_j(k)e^{ikx-i\omega_j(k)t}$$

is referred to as a mode of the linear evolution equation. In general, a linear evolution equation has as many modes as the dimension of the system. The most general solution for our linear evolution system using these modes is given by the linear superposition

$$u = \frac{1}{2\pi} \sum_{j=1}^N \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_j(k) A_j(k) e^{ikx-i\omega_j(k)t} dk,$$

where $a_j(k)$, $j = 1, \dots, N$ are scalar functions of k .

Example 2.2. Consider the “free”¹ linear Schrödinger equation $iu_t = -u_{xx}$. We can find the dispersion relation immediately, following what we did for scalar problems, to find $\omega = k^2$. If we let $u = q + ip$, where q and p are real-valued functions, by equating real and imaginary parts we find that $q_t = -p_{xx}$, $p_t = q_{xx}$. Writing this as a system, we have

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \begin{pmatrix} q \\ p \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -\partial_x^2 \\ \partial_x^2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} q \\ p \end{pmatrix}.$$

To find the dispersion relation, we examine

$$\begin{pmatrix} i\omega & k^2 \\ -k^2 & i\omega \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} q \\ p \end{pmatrix} = 0,$$

from which $\omega^2 = k^4$, so that $\omega_1 = k^2$, $\omega_2 = -k^2$. Finding the eigenvectors, we have the modes

$$\begin{pmatrix} i \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{ikx-ik^2t} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{pmatrix} -i \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{ikx+ik^2t}.$$

Superimposing all these solutions, we have

$$\begin{pmatrix} q \\ p \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a(k) \begin{pmatrix} i \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{ikx-ik^2t} dk + \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a^*(k) \begin{pmatrix} -i \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-ikx+ik^2t} dk,$$

where $a^*(k)$ denotes the complex conjugate of $a(k)$. We have replaced k by $-k$ in the second term, and we have chosen the expansion coefficient to be the complex conjugate of the first one, to ensure reality of the solution. It may seem counterintuitive that by writing the Schrödinger equation in real vector form, we obtain two modes with frequencies k^2 and $-k^2$, whereas the Schrödinger equation in its complex form only gives rise to $\omega = k^2$, at least at first glance. The discrepancy is due to the fact we did not include the complex conjugate equation $-iu_t^* = -u_{xx}^*$. Of course, using the real form both the information from the equation and its complex conjugate are incorporated.

¹Because there is no external potential present.

2.1.3 Higher-order scalar equations.

Equations with higher-order time derivatives can always be reduced to first-order-in-time systems, but they occur so frequently and are so easily dealt with, that we discuss them briefly in their own right here. As before, time derivatives are replaced by $-i\omega$ and x derivatives by ik . This leads to a polynomial equation in ω and k , the dispersion relation. The degree of this equation as a function of ω equals the highest time derivative in the original equation. The different branches of the dispersion relation give rise to the different modes of the scalar equation.

Example 2.3. Consider the wave equation $u_{tt} - c^2 u_{xx} = 0$, where c is a positive constant. The dispersion relation is found immediately using $(-i\omega)^2 - c^2(ik)^2 = 0$ so that $\omega_{1,2} = \pm ck$. The superposition of all modes gives

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_1(k) e^{ikx - i\omega k t} dk + \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_2(k) e^{ikx + i\omega k t} dk.$$

Clearly, as in the previous example, not all complex functions $a_1(k)$ and $a_2(k)$ are allowed in order to produce a real solution. After all, the general real solution of the wave equation cannot depend on more than two arbitrary real-valued functions.

2.1.4 More general equations.

The concept of a dispersion relation can be extended for equations that are not necessarily in evolution form. In fact, it is shown in [Whi74] how an equation with an arbitrary dispersion relation (not necessarily polynomial) may be constructed (see also Problem 2.8). In principle, the ideas remain the same: time derivatives are replaced by $-i\omega$ and x derivatives by ik , and a functional relationship between ω and k is derived.

Example 2.4. Consider the linearized Benjamin-Bona-Mahoney (BBM) [Per66, BBM72] equation:

$$u_t + u_x - u_{xxt} = 0.$$

Formally replacing $\partial_t \rightarrow -i\omega$, $\partial_x \rightarrow ik$, we obtain

$$-i\omega + ik - (ik)^2(-i\omega) = 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad \omega = \frac{k}{1 + k^2},$$

and a solution using superposition is obtained as before.

2.2 Consequences of the dispersion relationship

It follows from the previous section that the scalar linear evolution equation may be rewritten as $u_t = -i\omega(-i\partial_x)u$. In algebraic terms, this implies that the dispersion relationship is the

symbol of the scalar linear evolution equation. This algebraic viewpoint is particularly handy in quantum mechanics, especially in the Wigner formalism [Sud05].

In any case, having established that the solution of the initial-value problem

$$\begin{cases} u_t = F(u, u_x, \dots) \\ u(x, 0) = u_0(x), \quad u \rightarrow 0 \quad \text{as} \quad x \rightarrow \pm\infty \end{cases} \quad (2.4)$$

is given by

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a(k) e^{ikx - i\omega(k)t} dk,$$

with

$$a(k) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} u_0(x) e^{-ikx} dx,$$

what may we conclude from this? In other words: is this a useful result? We wrote down a representation for the solution of the initial-value problem, but unless we are able to obtain qualitative or quantitative information about the solution from it, we have merely transformed our original problem into a new problem.

We will show below that a lot of important information about the equation and its solutions is contained in the dispersion relation. The following are immediate:

- If $\text{Im} \omega(k) > 0$ for some real k , then the corresponding mode grows exponentially in time, thus there is sensitive dependence on the initial data, and the problem is unstable. The most unstable mode (the one you might expect to see in an experimental setting where many perturbations are present) is the one that maximizes $\text{Im} \omega(k)$.
- If $\text{Im} \omega(k) \rightarrow \infty$ for any value of k , finite or infinite, then the problem is ill-posed: small perturbations in the initial conditions lead to unbounded growth for any finite time t , no matter how small.
- If $\text{Im} \omega(k) < 0$ for all real k , the problem is dissipative and asymptotically stable.
- By Parseval's relation

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |u|^2 dx &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |\mathcal{F}[u](k)|^2 dk \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |a(k)|^2 e^{2\text{Im} \omega(k)t} dk. \end{aligned}$$

Thus $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |u|^2 dx$ (we call this quantity the energy) is conserved (*i.e.*, independent of time) if and only if $\text{Im} \omega(k) \equiv 0$ for all real k . Then the dispersion relationship is real valued on the real line. There is no decay or growth.

If there is a term $\partial_x^n u$ in the differential equation (2.1) (assuming it has real coefficients), it contributes a term $-i(ik)^n = -i^{n+1}k^n$ to $\omega(k)$. This term is real if n is odd. If n is even, this term is imaginary and the term results in either dissipation or growth.

2.3 Asymptotics of the solution

The dominant behavior of the solution of the initial-value problem (2.4) is clear if there are real k values for which $\text{Im } \omega(k) \neq 0$, based on what we have discussed. Let us assume that $\text{Im } \omega(k) = 0$ for all real k . Also, let us assume that the differential equation we are dealing with is not $u_t = cu_x$, for some c . This is the one-dimensional transport equation. Its solution is a simple translation of the initial data. Let us examine a more complicated equation. Our solution is given by

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a(k) e^{ikx - i\omega(k)t} dk,$$

with

$$a(k) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} u_0(x) e^{-ikx} dx.$$

Despite having no growth or decay under the above assumptions, it is possible for this solution to have an asymptotic state, as the finite amount of initial energy can spread over an infinite region. If we were considering periodic boundary conditions, an asymptotic state would not be possible.

Every individual mode travels with the phase velocity

$$c_p = c_p(k) = \omega(k)/k,$$

and the contribution of wave number k to the integral is

$$a(k) e^{ik(x - c_p(k)t)}.$$

Since we are not dealing simply with the one-dimensional transport equation, $\omega(k) \neq ck$, where $c = c_p$, a constant. If c_p is not constant, the problem is more complicated than mere translation of initial data. We say the problem is dispersive if

$$\frac{\partial^2 \omega}{\partial k^2} \neq 0.$$

Then different modes travel at different phase speeds.

To examine the asymptotics of the kind of integral given above, two methods are used frequently: (a) **the method of stationary phase** (developed by Kelvin), and (b) **the**

method of steepest descent [AF03]. The latter is more general, but also more complicated. Before we consider the method of stationary phase in more detail, let us look at the integral. We have

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a(k) e^{i\phi(k)t} dk,$$

with $\phi(k)$ given by

$$\phi(k) = \frac{x}{t}k - \omega(k).$$

We will consider the long-time asymptotics of $u(x, t)$, along rays of constant x/t . Thus the result we will obtain will give us the asymptotic state of $u(x, t)$ for $t \rightarrow \infty$, while keeping x/t constant.

For large t , the modes corresponding to nearby wave numbers k and $k + \delta k$ have very different exponents, leading to destructive interference. This idea is similar to the ideas leading to the Riemann-Lebesgue lemma. To avoid this destructive interference we need $\phi'(k) = 0$, so that $\phi(k)$ is nearly constant and the two exponents are similar. Thus, for a given ray through the origin of the (x, t) -plane, we find that the dominant modes will be those for which $\phi'(k) = 0$. For dispersive equations, different wave numbers dominate along different rays. We have

$$\phi(k) = \frac{x}{t}k - \omega(k) \quad \Rightarrow \quad \phi'(k) = \frac{x}{t} - \frac{d\omega}{dk}.$$

Define the group velocity $c_g = c_g(k)$ to be

$$c_g = \frac{d\omega}{dk}.$$

Thus a particular wave number k dominates along a ray for which $x/t = c_g(k)$. This demonstrates the importance of the group velocity.

Thus the wave numbers $k - \delta k$ and $k + \delta k$ dominate along different rays through the origin, as indicated in Fig. 2.1. The energy contribution from the modes with wave numbers between $k - \delta k$ and $k + \delta k$ is

$$\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{k-\delta k}^{k+\delta k} |a(\kappa)|^2 d\kappa.$$

This contribution is spreading over a region that is linearly increasing in time, thus we expect

$$|u(x, t)|^2 \approx 1/t,$$

because of conservation of energy, by Parseval's identity. Thus

$$|u(x, t)| \approx t^{-1/2}, \quad \text{or} \quad |u(x, t)| = \mathcal{O}(t^{-1/2}).$$

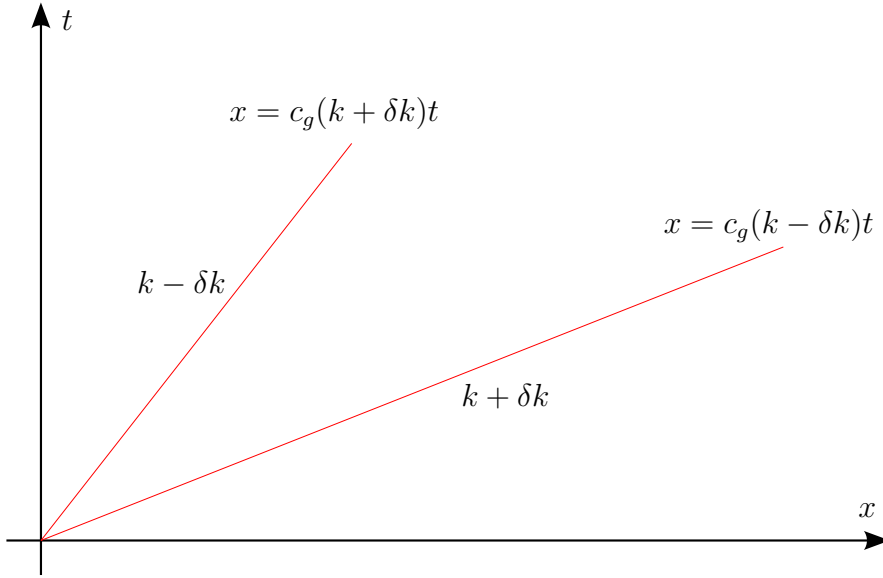


Figure 2.1: Different wave numbers $k - \delta k$ and $k + \delta k$ dominate along different rays, along which the information propagates with different velocities $c_g(k - \delta k)$ and $c_g(k + \delta k)$.

The dispersive character of the solution is manifested in the spreading of the solution over a larger region, as $t \rightarrow \infty$. Because energy is conserved for dispersive evolution equations, this results in a decrease of the amplitude.

The preceding heuristic arguments turn out to be correct, unless $\phi''(k) = 0$ where $\phi'(k) = 0$. In this case, the region where a certain wave number dominates is larger and nearby wave numbers spread slower. Overall this results in a slower decay of the solution amplitude.

2.4 The method of stationary phase

In this section we apply the method of stationary phase to make the ideas from the previous section more precise. Thus we examine the long-time asymptotics of the expression

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a(k) e^{i\phi(k)t} dk, \quad (2.5)$$

with $\phi = kx/t - \omega(k)$ along rays of constant x/t . Stationary phase points occur when $\phi'(k) = 0$, from which

$$x = c_g(k)t,$$

with $c_g(k) = \omega'(k)$, the group velocity. The asymptotic form of (2.5) has a contribution from

every solution k_0 of $\phi'(k) = 0$. In what follows, we assume there is a unique solution, and the asymptotic form consists of a single term.

We expand $\phi(k)$ near k_0 :

$$\begin{aligned}\phi(k) &= \phi(k_0) + (k - k_0)\phi'(k_0) + \frac{1}{2}(k - k_0)^2\phi''(k_0) + \mathcal{O}(|k - k_0|^3) \\ &= \phi(k_0) + \frac{1}{2}(k - k_0)^2\phi''(k_0) + \mathcal{O}(|k - k_0|^3),\end{aligned}\tag{2.6}$$

using the stationarity condition. The dominant contribution from waves with wave number k_0 to (2.5) is

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{k_0-\delta}^{k_0+\delta} a(k) e^{i\phi(k)t} dk &\approx \frac{1}{2\pi} a(k_0) \int_{k_0-\delta}^{k_0+\delta} e^{i[\phi(k_0) + \frac{1}{2}(k-k_0)^2\phi''(k_0)]t} dk \\ &\approx \frac{1}{2\pi} a(k_0) e^{i\phi(k_0)t} \int_{k_0-\delta}^{k_0+\delta} e^{i\frac{1}{2}(k-k_0)^2\phi''(k_0)t} dk \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} a(k_0) e^{i\phi(k_0)t} \int_{k_0}^{k_0+\delta} e^{i\frac{1}{2}(k-k_0)^2\phi''(k_0)t} dk,\end{aligned}$$

where δ is a small fixed number. In the last step, we used that the integrand is even around k_0 . The integral is worked out by using the substitution $\kappa^2 = \frac{1}{2}(k - k_0)^2|\phi''(k_0)|t$. This results in

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{k_0-\delta}^{k_0+\delta} a(k) e^{i\phi(k)t} dk &\approx \frac{1}{\pi} a(k_0) e^{i\phi(k_0)t} \sqrt{\frac{2}{|\phi''(k_0)|t}} \int_0^{\delta\sqrt{|\phi''(k_0)|t/2}} e^{i\kappa^2 \text{sgn}(\phi''(k_0))} d\kappa \\ &\approx \frac{1}{\pi} a(k_0) e^{i\phi(k_0)t} \sqrt{\frac{2}{|\phi''(k_0)|t}} \int_0^\infty e^{i\kappa^2 \text{sgn}(\phi''(k_0))} d\kappa \\ &\approx \frac{1}{\pi} a(k_0) e^{i\phi(k_0)t} \sqrt{\frac{2}{|\phi''(k_0)|t}} \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2} e^{i\pi \text{sgn}(\phi''(k_0))/4},\end{aligned}$$

where $\text{sgn}(x)$ denotes the sign of the real quantity x :

$$\text{sgn}(x) = \begin{cases} -1 & x < 0 \\ 0 & x = 0 \\ 1 & x > 0 \end{cases}.$$

Also, we have replaced the upper bound by ∞ since we are interested in the large t behavior, thus the quantity \sqrt{t} in the upper bound is large. Lastly, we have used the Fresnel integral [AF03]

$$\int_0^\infty e^{i\kappa^2} d\kappa = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2} e^{i\pi/4}.$$

The final expression for the stationary-phase approximation to $u(x, t)$ using the contribution from the stationary point k_0 is given by

$$u(x, t) = \frac{a(k_0)}{\sqrt{2\pi t |\phi''(k_0)|}} e^{i\phi(k_0)t + i\pi \operatorname{sgn}(\phi''(k_0))/4}. \quad (2.7)$$

As stated before, if there is more than one stationary point, the contributions from all these points should be added up to get the final approximate expression for $u(x, t)$. This formula confirms our earlier heuristic argument that the amplitude of the solution decays at a rate proportional to $t^{-1/2}$. Of course, the above argument is contingent on $\phi''(k_0) \neq 0$. If this were not the case, the expansion (2.6) shows that higher-order terms in $k - k_0$ need to be included to capture the dominant contribution. Our result (2.7) shows this restriction as well, as the expression is not defined when $\phi''(k_0) = 0$.

Example 2.5. Consider the linear KdV equation

$$u_t + u_{xxx} = 0.$$

Its dispersion relationship is $\omega = -k^3$. Thus the general solution of this equation in $L_2(-\infty, \infty)$ is

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a(k) e^{ikx + ik^3 t} dk. \quad (2.8)$$

We have

$$\phi(k) = \frac{x}{t}k + k^3 \quad \Rightarrow \quad \phi'(k) = \frac{x}{t} + 3k^2 \quad \Rightarrow \quad \phi''(k) = 6k.$$

Stationary points occur when $k^2 = -x/(3t)$. This results in real wave number values only if $x/t < 0$, hence $x < 0$ since we are interested in the behavior as $t \rightarrow \infty$. We conclude that on the positive real line there are no real stationary points and the solution decays, due to destructive interference. Using the method of steepest descent, one shows that this decay is exponential. It is possible to guess this: if the initial condition is analytic, we may use repeated integration by parts to demonstrate that the decay of the solution is faster than any power. This is confirmed by Fig. 2.2, where the expression (2.8) with $a(k) = \operatorname{sech}(k)$ and $x/t = 1$ has been evaluated for 20 different values of t .

Let $x/t < 0$. The stationary points are given by

$$k_{\pm} = \pm \sqrt{-\frac{x}{3t}}.$$

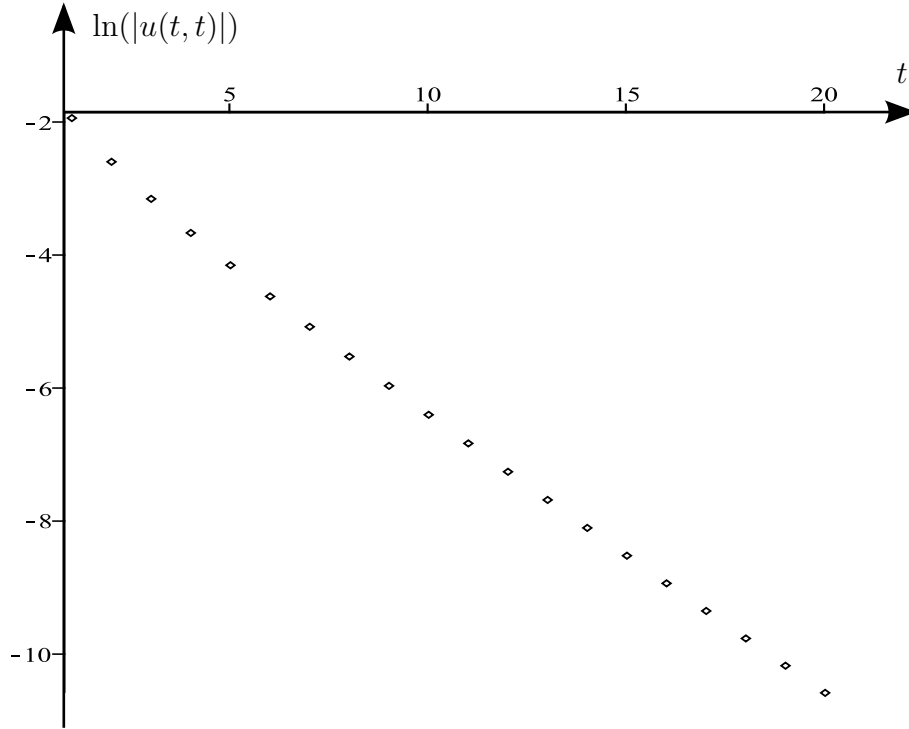


Figure 2.2: A log plot demonstrating the exponential decay of $u(x, t)$ obtained from (2.8) along the direction $x = t$, with $a(k) = \text{sech}(k)$, evaluated at $t = 1, 2, \dots, 20$. This illustrates the decay of the solution for positive values of x/t , due to the absence of any stationary points.

We see that there are two stationary points, k_+ and k_- . This results in two contributions to the asymptotic form of the integral. First, we consider the contribution from k_+ . Since $k_+ > 0$, $\phi''(k_+) > 0$. Using (2.7), we get

$$\frac{a(k_+)}{2\sqrt{3\pi tk_+}} e^{i\phi(k_+)t + i\pi/4}. \quad (2.9)$$

Similarly, we get for the contribution from $k_- = -k_+$:

$$\frac{a(k_-)}{2\sqrt{-3\pi tk_-}} e^{i\phi(k_-)t - i\pi/4} = \frac{a(k_-)}{2\sqrt{3\pi tk_+}} e^{-i\phi(k_+)t - i\pi/4}, \quad (2.10)$$

since $\phi(k_-) = -\phi(k_+)$. Adding the two contributions (2.9) and (2.10), we obtain the asymptotic expression

$$u(x, t) \approx \frac{a(k_+)}{2\sqrt{3\pi tk_+}} e^{i\phi(k_+)t + i\pi/4} + \frac{a(k_-)}{2\sqrt{3\pi tk_+}} e^{-i\phi(k_+)t - i\pi/4}.$$

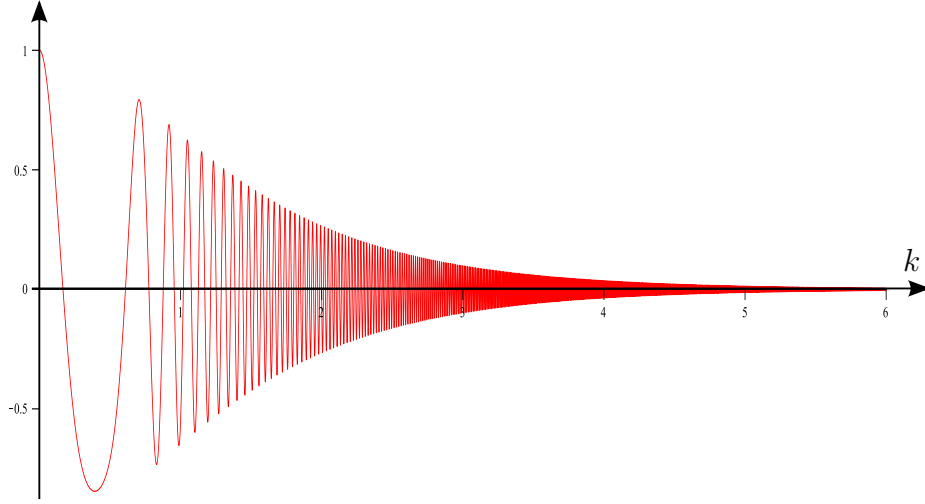


Figure 2.3: The graph of the integrand of (2.8) as a function of k , with $a(k) = \text{sech}(k)$ for $x/t = -1$, $t = 20$. Clearly, the numerical integration of this integrand is costly.

Note that the second term is the complex conjugate of the first one, since $a(k_-) = a(-k_+) = a^*(k_+)$. Thus

$$u(x, t) \approx \text{Re} \left(\frac{a(k_+)}{\sqrt{3\pi k_+ t}} e^{i\phi(k_+)t + i\pi/4} \right). \quad (2.11)$$

This expression is valid for large t , along rays of constant $x/t < 0$. This asymptotic result is easy to evaluate, and as such it is much more convenient than the integral form (2.8) of the solution. The numerical evaluation of such improper integrals with oscillatory integrands is nontrivial (see Fig. 2.3), and gets increasingly problematic as t increases, while the approximation we have obtained continues to improve, as shown in Fig. 2.4.

2.5 Pattern Formation

The dispersion relation of an equation has consequences beyond allowing us to solve the corresponding linear equation. When studying a nonlinear PDE, the first action to take is to linearize the equation for small solutions, in effect dropping all nonlinear terms. The dispersion relation of the resulting linear equation provides good information about the dynamics of small solutions of the nonlinear equation. We illustrate this using an example.

Example 2.6. The Kuramoto-Sivashinsky (KS) Equation. Consider the equation

$$u_t + uu_x + u_{xx} + au_{xxxx} = 0, \quad (2.12)$$

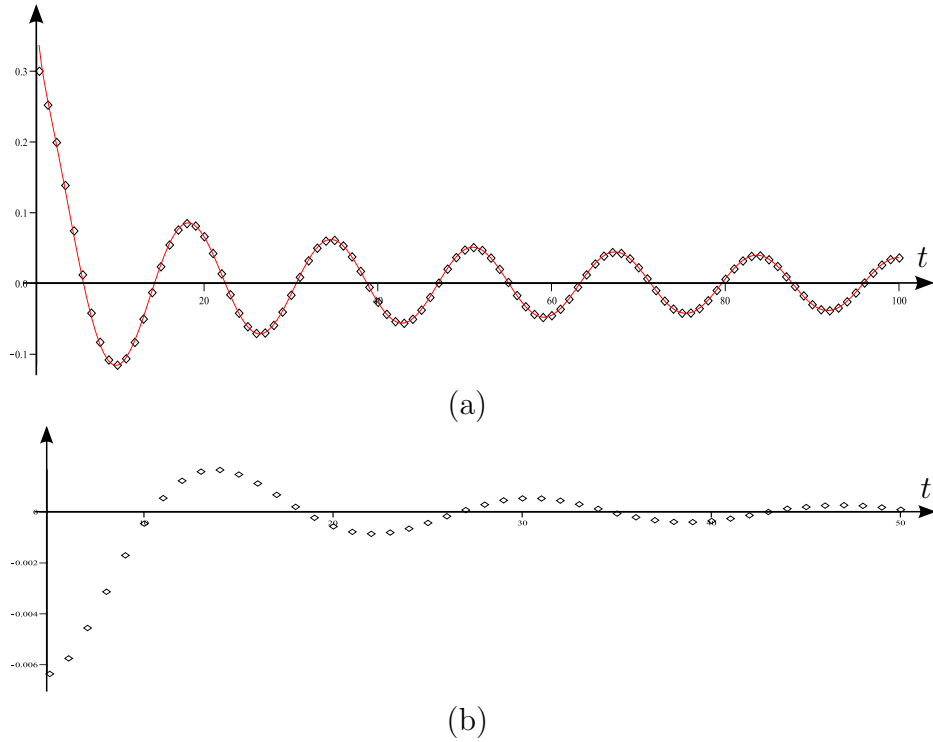


Figure 2.4: The stationary phase approximation (2.11) of (2.8) as a function of t (solid line), with $a(k) = \text{sech}(k)$ for $x/t = -1$, displayed in Figure (a). The diamonds indicate a (costly) numerical evaluation of (2.8), using the same parameters. The approximation appears excellent, except for values of, say, $t < 5$. This is made more quantitative in Figure (b) which shows the absolute error of the stationary phase approximation (2.11) by subtracting from this approximation the numerically computed integral given by (2.8), for 50 different values of t .

where $a > 0$ is a parameter. This equation arises in many applications, such as flame-front dynamics in combustion theory, reaction-diffusion system dynamics and cellular instabilities [KT75, Siv77]. Often it is used as one of the simplest mathematical models describing spatio-temporal chaos, pattern formation, and turbulence [SE05]. Sometimes, another equation is written for the KS equation, namely that obtained by letting $u = w_x$ and integrating with respect to x once. The KS equation is nonlinear, but it also contains two linear terms that have opposite effects, as we will see below.

Let us investigate the dynamics of small-amplitude solutions. To start, we ignore the effect of the nonlinear terms. That leaves us with

$$u_t + u_{xx} + au_{xxx} = 0, \quad (2.13)$$

which may be solved using Fourier analysis. The dispersion relation is determined by

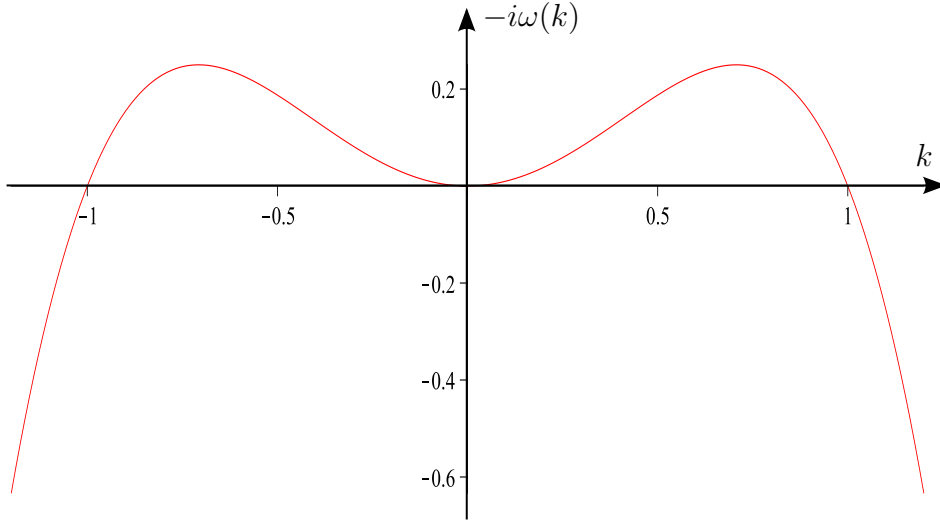


Figure 2.5: The graph of $-i\omega(k)$ for the linearized KS equation (2.13) with $a = 1$, as a function of k .

$$-i\omega = k^2 - ak^4.$$

This is a very different dispersion relation than those we have encountered thus far. Specifically, this one does not result in real values of ω for real values of k . In fact, ω is imaginary for all real k . Thus, the corresponding Fourier modes will either grow or decay. Such a mode is proportional to

$$e^{ikx - i\omega t} = e^{ikx + (k^2 - ak^4)t}.$$

It is immediate from this that modes for which $-i\omega(k)$ is positive will grow, while those for which $-i\omega(k)$ is negative will decay. The graph of $-i\omega(k)$ as a function of k is shown in Fig. 2.5. The effect of the second derivative is the k^2 behavior at the origin, while the fourth derivative causes the quartic drop off for large values of $|k|$. Thus, modes with small values of $|k|$ (i.e., long waves) grow in time, whereas modes with large wavenumbers $|k|$ (short waves) decay over time. The cut-off is at $k = \pm\sqrt{1/a}$. The maximal growth rate occurs for $\pm k_0 = \pm\sqrt{1/2a}$.

Suppose that we start with an initial condition that consists of small-amplitude white noise, i.e., our initial condition is a superposition of all Fourier wave numbers, and the Fourier amplitude $a(k)$ takes on small random values. The short-wave modes with $|k| > \sqrt{1/a}$ experience immediate damping, so that it appears the solution gets smoother as a function of time. In the mean time, the long-wave modes are growing in time, soon achieving amplitudes where the nonlinear terms cannot be ignored any longer. Since the largest growth rate occurs for the waves with $k = \pm k_0$, these waves experience the most growth. All other

modes appear exponentially small compared to these modes. If there is a discrete set of modes because the equation is posed on a finite interval, the modes with k closest to $\pm k_0$ will dominate the small-amplitude dynamics.

The effect of the nonlinear term can be understood as well. Suppose that a mode e^{ikx} is present in the signal $u(x, t)$. Since $u(x, t)$ is real valued, the mode e^{-ikx} is also present. The quadratic nonlinear term causes these contributions to interact with others, but also with themselves. Thus, immediately, the zero mode, and the modes e^{2ikx} , e^{-2ikx} are generated (if they were not already present) or affected (if they were already present). Next, the modes $e^{\pm 3ikx}$ and $e^{\pm 4ikx}$ are generated or affected. And so on. This simplistic reasoning leads to two conclusions.

- 2.1. Long waves grow, due to the presence of the band of unstable modes around the origin, see Fig. 2.5. However, this growth is limited by the nonlinearity which moves energy from wave numbers $\pm k$ to wave numbers $\pm 2k$, $\pm 3k$, etc.
- 2.2. This energy transfer from long waves to short waves is terminated by the fourth derivative term, which causes short waves to decay in time.

We conclude that the KS equation has a natural period selection mechanism built in: even if the initial condition is not periodic as a function of x , the dynamics of the equation tends to prefer signals that are periodic of period $2\pi/|k_0|$, as these waves experience the largest growth rate, which is saturated by the effect of the nonlinear term. Thus, an incoherent input signal $u(x, 0)$ may give rise to a periodic pattern. This is an example of pattern formation in one spatial dimension. In multiple space dimensions, such behavior is more pronounced and visually often very striking: out of a sea of white noise, a coherent pattern (squares, rectangles, hexagons, etc) may develop, seemingly spontaneous. As may be inferred from this example, pattern formation often requires the presence of dissipation and other non-dispersive processes. Because of this, beyond this chapter pattern formation and coherent structures are essentially ignored in the remainder of the text. The interested reader is referred to the seminal review paper [CH93] and the recent monograph [CG09].

2.6 Exercises

- 2.1. Why is it necessary to include $\mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2)$ in (2.3)?
- 2.2. Consider the example on P.27 for the linear Schrödinger equation. Show that both approaches lead to the same answer for $u(x, t)$, whether a complex scalar equation or a real system is used.
- 2.3. Write down the restrictions on $a_1(k)$ and $a_2(k)$ in the first example on P.28.

- 2.4. We have seen the dispersion relationships for the linear KdV and BBM equations. Both equations can be used to model long waves in shallow water. Based on the dispersion relationships for these two equations, discuss which one would be advantageous for numerical purposes, from the point of view of suppressing unwanted oscillations, *etc.*

2.5. The Benjamin-Ono equation

$$u_t + uu_x + \mathcal{H}u_{xx} = 0$$

is used to describe internal waves in deep water [SE05]. Here $\mathcal{H}f(x, t)$ is the spatial Hilbert transform of $f(x, t)$:

$$\mathcal{H}f(x, t) = \frac{1}{\pi} \oint_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{f(z, t)}{z - x} dz,$$

and \oint denotes the Cauchy principal value integral. Write down the linear dispersion relationship for this equation linearized about the zero solution.

- 2.6. Derive the linear dispersion relationship for the one-dimensional surface water wave problem by linearizing around the trivial solution $\zeta(x, t) = 0$, $\phi(x, z, t) = 0$:

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla^2 \phi &= 0, & -h < z < \zeta(x, t) \\ \phi_z &= 0, & z = -h \\ \zeta_t + \phi_x \zeta_x &= \phi_z, & z = \zeta(x, t) \\ \phi_t + g\zeta + \frac{1}{2}(\phi_x^2 + \phi_z^2) &= T \frac{\zeta_{xx}}{(1 + \zeta_x^2)^{3/2}}, & z = \zeta(x, t) \end{aligned}$$

Here $z = \zeta(x, t)$ is the surface of the water, $\phi(x, z, t)$ is the velocity potential so that $v = \nabla \phi$ is the velocity of the water, g is the acceleration of gravity, and $T > 0$ is the coefficient of surface tension.

- 2.7. Having found that for the surface water wave problem without surface tension the linear dispersion relationship is $\omega^2 = gk \tanh(kh)$, find the group velocities for the case of long waves in shallow water (kh small), and for the case of deep water (kh big).
- 2.8. Whitham [Whi70], [Whi74, page 368] wrote down what is now known as **the Whitham equation** to incorporate the full effect of water-wave dispersion for waves in shallow water by modifying the KdV equation $u_t + vu_x + uu_x + \gamma u_{xxx} = 0$ (where we have included the transport term) to

$$u_t + uu_x + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} K(x - y) u_y(y, t) dy = 0,$$

where

$$K(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} c(k) e^{ikx} dk,$$

and $c(k)$ is the positive phase speed for the water-wave problem: $c(k) = \sqrt{g \tanh(kh)/k}$.

- (a) What is the linear dispersion relation of the Whitham equation?
- (b) Show that the dispersion relation of the KdV equation is an approximation to that of the Whitham equation for long waves, *i.e.*, for $k \rightarrow 0$. What are v and γ ?

Note that using this process of “Whithamization”, one could construct a KdV-like equation (*i.e.*, an equation with the KdV nonlinearity) that has any desired dispersion relation. Similar procedures can be followed for other equations, like the NLS equation [TKDV00] *etc.*

2.9. Consider the linear free Schrödinger (“free”, because there’s no potential) equation

$$i\psi_t + \psi_{xx} = 0, \quad -\infty < x < \infty, \quad t > 0, \quad \psi \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } |x| \rightarrow \infty,$$

with $\psi(x, 0) = \psi_0(x)$ such that $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |\psi_0|^2 dx < \infty$.

- (a) Using the Fourier transform, write down the solution of this problem.
- (b) Using the Method of Stationary Phase, find the dominant behavior as $t \rightarrow \infty$ of the solution, along lines of constant x/t .
- (c) With $\psi_0(x) = e^{-x^2}$, the integral can be worked out exactly. Compare (graphically or other) this exact answer with the answer you get from the Method of Stationary Phase. Use the lines $x/t = 1$ and $x/t = 2$ to compare.
- (d) Use your favorite numerical integrator (write your own, or use maple, mathematica or matlab) to compare (graphically or other) with the exact answer and the answer you get from the Method of Stationary Phase.

2.10. Everything that we have done for continuous space equations also works for equations with a discrete space variable. Consider the discrete linear Schrödinger equation:

$$i \frac{d\psi_n}{dt} + \frac{1}{h^2} (\psi_{n+1} - 2\psi_n + \psi_{n-1}) = 0,$$

where h is a real constant, n is any integer, $t > 0$, $\psi_n \rightarrow 0$ as $|n| \rightarrow \infty$, and $\psi_n(0) = \psi_{n,0}$ is given.

- (a) The discrete analogue of the Fourier transform is given by

$$\psi_n(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{|z|=1} \hat{\psi}(z, t) z^{n-1} dz,$$

and its inverse

$$\hat{\psi}(z, t) = \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \psi_m(t) z^{-m}.$$

Show that these two transformations are indeed inverses of each other.

- (b) The dispersion relation of a semi-discrete problem is obtained by looking for solutions of the form $\psi_n = z^n e^{-i\omega t}$. Show that for the semi-discrete Schrödinger equation

$$\omega(z) = -\frac{(z-1)^2}{zh^2}.$$

How does this compare to the dispersion relation of the continuous space problem? Specifically, demonstrate that you recover the dispersion relationship for the continuous problem as $h \rightarrow 0$.

2.11. The FitzHugh-Nagumo system

$$\begin{aligned} u_t &= u_{xx} + u(u-a)(1-u) + w \\ w_t &= \epsilon u \end{aligned}$$

(with ϵ and a positive) describes an excitable system. For instance it has been used to model the dynamics of a neuron [SE05]. Write down its linear dispersion relationship. Discuss how different “small” (so that your linearization is justified) initial conditions will evolve (which modes will grow, which will not, *etc*).

- 2.12. **The Swift-Hohenberg equation** is often used as the prototype equation to illustrate pattern formation, especially in two dimensions. The equation can be written as

$$\psi_t = \alpha\psi - (1 + \partial_x^2 + \partial_y^2)^2\psi + \beta\psi^2 - \psi^3.$$

Discuss the dynamics of small-amplitude solutions of this equation for different values of the parameters α and β . You may wish to visit Michael Cross’ webpage <http://crossgroup.caltech.edu/Patterns/SwiftHohenberg.html>, illustrating the patterns that occur in this equation. These range from stripes over hexagons to quasi-crystals.

Chapter 3

Quasi-linear partial differential equations. The method of characteristics

In the previous chapter we have examined the effects of dispersion on the evolution of initial profiles. If the initial condition of a given nonlinear PDE is small, we may expect that the dynamics of the linearized equation is not unlike that of the nonlinear equation with the same initial condition. In this chapter, we investigate the effect of quasi-linear first-order nonlinearities. These are nonlinear terms that contain the function and its first-order spatial derivative, and that are linear in this derivative. Although other nonlinearities are relevant in many equations, this class of nonlinearities is important: it is probably the most basic nonlinear effect one may encounter, while allowing us to build some intuition about the effect of nonlinearities in general. Further, many other nonlinearities may be converted to this form by various procedures: taking derivatives, rewriting equations as first-order systems, *etc.*

The study of such quasi-linear equations leads to the method of characteristics, which is the starting point for more general considerations such as Riemann's method and the classification of higher-order PDEs into equations of hyperbolic, parabolic and elliptic type, see for instance [GL96]. In this chapter we limit ourselves to solving scalar first-order equations using characteristics. We examine the formation of shocks, and what may happen after shocks form.

3.1 The method of characteristics

We consider partial differential equations of the form

$$u_t + c(u)u_x = F(x, t, u) \tag{3.1}$$

As stated, such an equation is called **quasi-linear**, because it is linear in the derivatives of

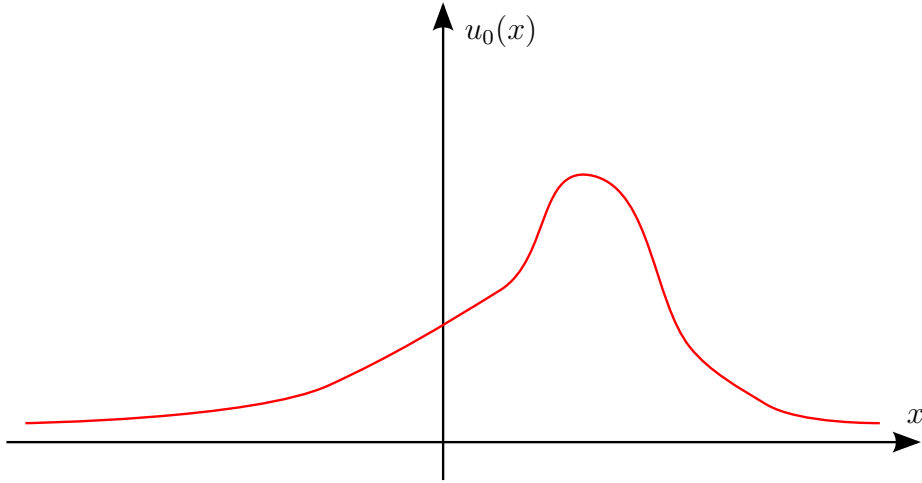


Figure 3.1: The initial condition $u = u_0(x)$ for equation (3.1)

$u(x, t)$. We could have written down a slightly more general equation, by allowing $c(u)$ to be an explicit function of x and t as well.

We use the method of characteristics to solve equations like this. An excellent presentation of the method of characteristics and many of its applications (traffic flow, gas dynamics) is found in [Whi74]. Let $u(x, 0) = u_0(x)$ be the initial condition for (3.1), given on the whole line $x \in \mathbb{R}$, see Fig. 3.1. We want to know what happens to $u(x, t)$ for $t > 0$. For our purposes, it suffices to consider the homogeneous case only, so that $F(x, t, u) = 0$.

Our equation reads

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + c(u) \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = 0. \quad (3.2)$$

This can be rewritten as

$$\frac{du}{dt} = 0,$$

where

$$\frac{du}{dt} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + \frac{dx}{dt} \frac{\partial u}{\partial x},$$

along curves for which

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = c(u).$$

Such curves are called **characteristic curves**. How do we use this? Along such a characteristic curve C

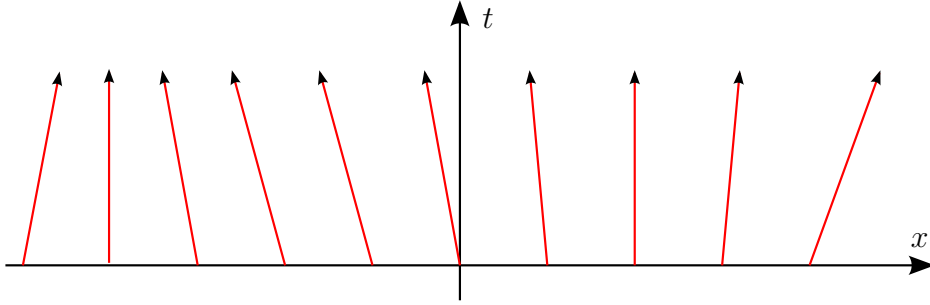


Figure 3.2: The initial condition $u(x, 0) = u_0(x)$ being transported away from the x axis, in the directions of the arrows.

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \frac{du}{dt} = 0 \\
 \Rightarrow & u = \text{constant along } C \\
 \Rightarrow & u = u_0(\xi),
 \end{aligned}$$

along the characteristic curve that starts at $x = \xi$ in the (x, t) -plane. What is the equation of this curve? We have along this curve

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \frac{dx}{dt} = c(u(x, t)) \\
 \Rightarrow & \frac{dx}{dt} = c(u_0(\xi)) \\
 \Rightarrow & x = \xi + tc(u_0(\xi)).
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the solution of (3.2) with initial condition $u(x, 0) = u_0(x)$ is given by

$$u = u_0(\xi),$$

where ξ is determined by the implicit equation

$$x = \xi + tc(u_0(\xi)).$$

This implicit equation should, if possible, be solved for ξ as a function of x and t .

Geometrically, it is clear what is happening, as is shown in Fig. 3.2. On every point of the x -axis, we can plot a vector with direction given by

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = c(u_0(\xi)),$$

which indicates how the initial condition is “transported” along the characteristic curves. For the equation we have considered, the characteristic curves are straight lines. This would not be the case if we allowed $c(u)$ to depend explicitly on x and/or t . For the straight-line case, there are different possibilities depending on $c(u)$ and $u_0(x)$:

- the characteristic lines could be parallel, or
- the characteristic lines could fan out, or
- the characteristic lines could cross.

Let us look at some examples.

Example 3.1. *Consider the initial-value problem*

$$\begin{cases} u_t + cu_x &= 0, \\ u(x, 0) &= u_0(x), \end{cases}$$

where c is a constant. The characteristic curves are determined by

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = c \Rightarrow x = \xi + ct \Rightarrow \xi = x - ct.$$

Thus the characteristics are all straight lines with slope $1/c$ in the (x, t) -plane. Furthermore, $u(x, t)$ is constant along these characteristics. Thus, along characteristics,

$$u(x, t) = u_0(\xi) = u_0(x - ct),$$

which provides the explicit solution to our initial-value problem. Since the characteristics are all parallel, no problems arise and the solution exists for all time. From Fig. 3.3 and our calculations we see that the initial condition is merely transported at constant speed along the characteristics.

Example 3.2. *A more complicated example is given by*

$$\begin{cases} u_t + uu_x &= 0, \\ u(x, 0) &= u_0(x) = \arctan x. \end{cases}$$

This partial differential equation is known as the (dissipationless) **Burgers equation**. It has played and still plays an important role as the simplest nonlinear partial differential equation, and as such is a laboratory for new techniques, numerical methods, etc. Of course, we recognize it as the KdV equation minus the dispersion term.

Noting that $u(x, t) = u_0(\xi)$ is constant along characteristics, and that we have $c(u) = u$ for this equation, it follows that the characteristics are determined by

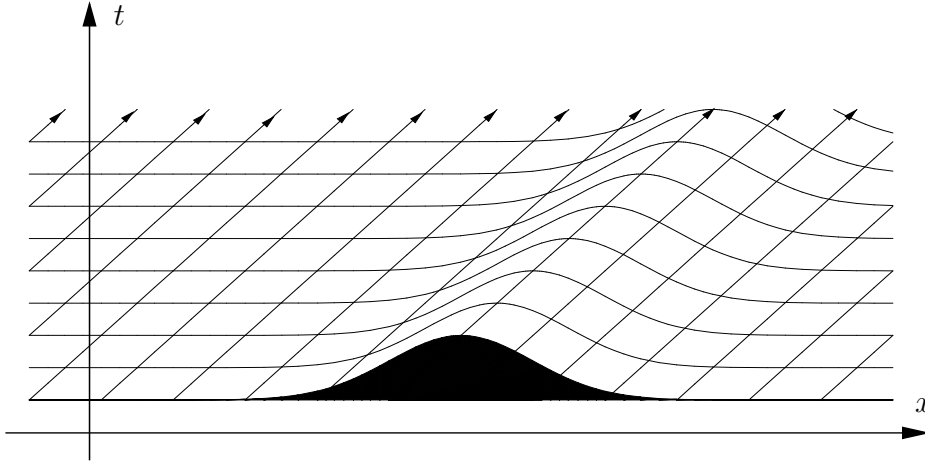


Figure 3.3: The characteristics for $u_t + cu_x = 0$, demonstrating the uniform translation of the initial condition over time.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \frac{dx}{dt} &= u \\
 \Rightarrow x &= \xi + u_0(\xi)t \\
 \Rightarrow x &= \xi + t \arctan \xi \\
 \Rightarrow t &= \frac{x - \xi}{\arctan \xi}.
 \end{aligned}$$

These characteristic lines are fanning out, thus the solution spreads out. It is defined for all $t \geq 0$, and is given by

$$u(x, t) = u_0(\xi) = \arctan \xi,$$

where $\xi = \xi(x, t)$ is determined by the implicit relationship

$$x = \xi + t \arctan \xi.$$

In this case, we cannot write down an explicit solution, as we cannot solve $x = \xi + t \arctan \xi$ explicitly for ξ as a function of x and t . However, it is still straightforward to analyze the behavior of the solution. The solution at different times and the characteristics are shown in Fig. 3.4.

Example 3.3. Consider the system

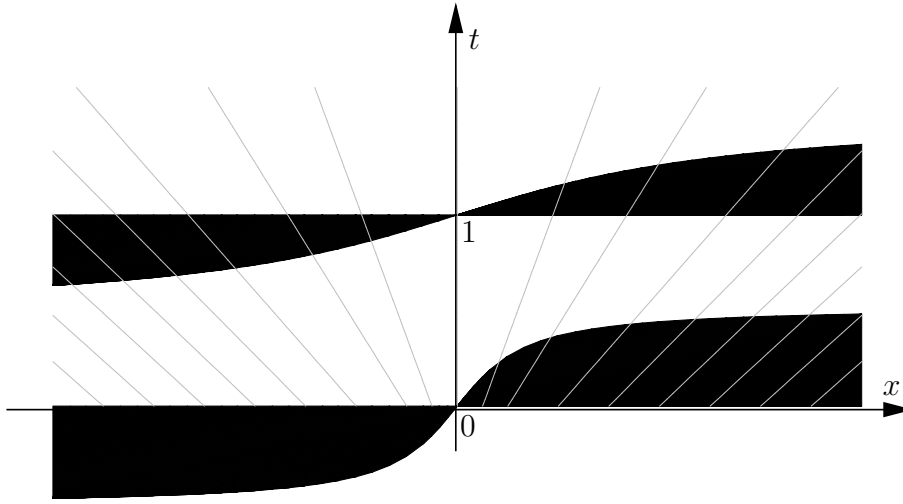


Figure 3.4: The characteristics for $u_t + uu_x = 0$, demonstrating the spreading of the initial condition $u_0 = \arctan x$ over time.

$$\begin{cases} u_t + uu_x = 0, \\ u(x, 0) = -\arctan x. \end{cases}$$

This is almost the same example, but now the sign of the initial condition is switched. Following what we did in the previous example, the solution is given by

$$u(x, t) = u_0(\xi) = -\arctan \xi,$$

where $\xi = \xi(x, t)$ is determined by the implicit relationship

$$x = \xi - t \arctan \xi.$$

As before, we cannot solve this explicitly for ξ , but we can analyze the behavior of the solution. The plot of the characteristics is shown in Fig. 3.5. We see there is a time t^* after which the solution obtained through the methods of characteristics is no longer valid: multiple characteristics cross, and in this wedge of overlapping characteristics, it is not possible to assign a unique value to $u(x, t)$.

We will return to this example soon, to resolve the issues we have just encountered. When characteristics cross, what happens for $t > t^*$, where t^* is the time at which they first cross? This is a question we will look into later. For now, let us find a condition to determine this time of first crossing t^* . This time is known as the breaking time, as it is the time at which the wave first “breaks”: the solution develops an infinite derivative in space x or time t (if

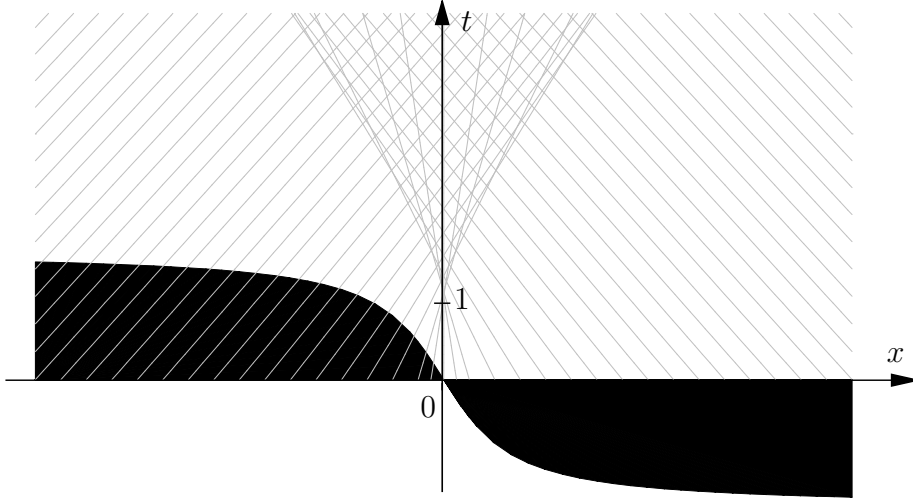


Figure 3.5: The crossing of the characteristics for $u_t + uu_x = 0$, demonstrating the steepening of the initial condition $u_0 = -\arctan x$ over time.

one happens, the other one happens as well, because of the partial differential equation). We have

$$u_t = u_{0\xi} \xi_t, \quad u_x = u_{0\xi} \xi_x,$$

using the chain rule. These become infinite when both of ξ_x and ξ_t become infinite, since u_0 is a well-behaved function. Taking x and t derivatives of the equation for the characteristics gives

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \xi + tc(u_0(\xi)) \\ \Rightarrow \quad 1 &= \xi_x + tc'(u_0(\xi))u_{0\xi}\xi_x & \Rightarrow \quad \xi_x &= \frac{1}{1 + tc'(u_0(\xi))u_{0\xi}} \\ \Rightarrow \quad 0 &= \xi_t + tc'(u_0(\xi))u_{0\xi}\xi_t + c(u_0(\xi)) & \Rightarrow \quad \xi_t &= \frac{-c(u_0(\xi))}{1 + tc'(u_0(\xi))u_{0\xi}}. \end{aligned}$$

These expressions have the same denominators, so that the breaking time is determined by when these denominators are zero. Thus

$$t^* = -\frac{1}{c'(u_0(\xi^*))u_{0\xi}(\xi^*)},$$

where ξ^* corresponds to those characteristics for which

$$c'(u_0)u_{0\xi} < 0,$$

(to ensure a positive breaking time), and

$$|c'(u_0)u_{0\xi}| \text{ is maximal,}$$

(to ensure t^* is the smallest time at which crossing occurs).

Example 3.4. *Let us return to our previous example to try to determine the breaking time t^* . We have*

$$\begin{aligned} c(u) = u & \Rightarrow c' = 1, \\ u_0 = -\arctan \xi & \Rightarrow u_{0\xi} = \frac{-1}{1 + \xi^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus ξ^* is determined by

$$c'u_{0\xi} < 0 \Rightarrow \frac{-1}{1 + \xi^2} < 0,$$

which is always true, and

$$\frac{1}{1 + \xi^2} \text{ is maximal,}$$

which implies $\xi^* = 0$. Thus

$$t^* = -\frac{1}{c'(u_0(\xi^*))u_{0\xi}(\xi^*)} = -\frac{1}{-\frac{1}{1+(\xi^*)^2}} = 1 + (\xi^*)^2 = 1,$$

which agrees with Fig. 3.5.

3.2 After shock formation: introducing dissipation or dispersion

Once a shock forms, it is clear that the equation

$$u_t + c(x, t, u)u_x = F(x, t, u)$$

is no longer valid. How do we modify it? This question has several answers, but none of them are determined by mathematics. At this point, the application that we are attempting to model needs to give us ideas to modify the model, so as to be able to come up with a unique solution. We will see two ways to do this. Both may give analytical results. More importantly they are used in numerical methods to either avoid shock formation, or else to dictate the motion and location of shocks, once they form.

The first method we discuss modifies the governing equation to prevent the formation of shocks. There are many ways of doing this, and typically one looks at the application being

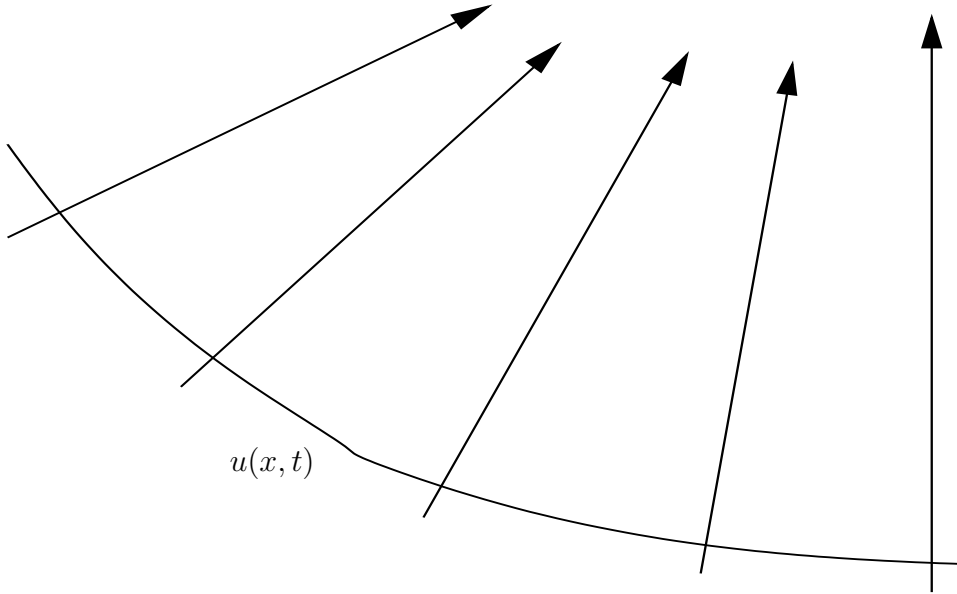


Figure 3.6: Part of an initial profile that will lead to shock formation in the dissipationless Burgers equation.

considered to figure out what the right way is to achieve this. Our equation is supposed to model some process associated with an application. When we get close to shock formation and derivatives get large, it is possible that other terms that we have previously omitted become important.

Example 3.5. *We have found that the dissipationless Burgers equation*

$$u_t + uu_x = 0$$

develops a shock if the initial condition has a profile as shown in Fig. 3.6. In general, any profile with negative derivative will lead to steepening. Now suppose that the problem we are modeling actually corresponds to the differential equation

$$u_t + uu_x = \epsilon u_{xx},$$

where $\epsilon > 0$ is very small. Because of the small coefficient ϵ we may have thought it was fine to ignore this second derivative term. This approximation will be valid, as long as derivatives in the solution are “small” (meaning “not large”). However, as we approach the shock, derivatives become very large and the term on the right does become significant.

Let us verify that this is indeed the case. Close to the shock time t^ , we have*

$$u_x = u'_0(\xi)\xi_x = \frac{u'_0(\xi)}{1 + tu'_0(\xi)},$$

and the denominator approaches zero. Also,

$$u_{xx} = u_0''(\xi)\xi_x^2 + u_0'(\xi)\xi_{xx}.$$

To calculate ξ_{xx} , we return to the definition of the characteristic curve:

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \xi + tu_0(\xi) \\ \Rightarrow 1 &= \xi_x + tu_0'(\xi)\xi_x \\ \Rightarrow 0 &= \xi_{xx} + tu_0'(\xi)\xi_{xx} + tu_0''(\xi)\xi_x^2 \\ \Rightarrow \xi_{xx}(1 + tu_0'(\xi)) &= -tu_0''(\xi)\xi_x^2 \\ \Rightarrow \xi_{xx} &= \frac{-tu_0''(\xi)\xi_x^2}{1 + tu_0'(\xi)}. \end{aligned}$$

Using this, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} u_{xx} &= u_0''(\xi)\xi_x^2 + u_0'(\xi)\xi_{xx} \\ &= u_0''(\xi)\xi_x^2 - u_0'(\xi)\frac{tu_0''(\xi)\xi_x^2}{1 + tu_0'(\xi)} \\ &= u_0''(\xi)\xi_x^2 \left(1 - \frac{tu_0'}{1 + tu_0'}\right) \\ &= \frac{u_0''(\xi)\xi_x^2}{1 + tu_0'} \\ &= \frac{u_0''(\xi)}{(1 + tu_0')^3}, \end{aligned}$$

and we see that $u_{xx} \rightarrow \infty$ much faster than u_x or u_t . Thus, the right-hand side term cannot be ignored close to the shock formation.

Next, we show that taking this second-derivative term into account does indeed have the desired effect of arresting the shock formation. Near the shock we have

$$u_t = \epsilon u_{xx} - uu_x \sim \epsilon u_{xx},$$

Since u_{xx} is much larger than the product of uu_x just before the shock formation. Just before a shock is formed, the solution has a singular inflection point (i.e., the second derivative changes sign, but by passing through infinity instead of zero). Above this inflection point $u_t \sim \epsilon u_{xx} < 0$, whereas below the inflection point $u_t \sim \epsilon u_{xx} > 0$. The combination of these is to counteract the steepening, as desired, see Fig. 3.7.

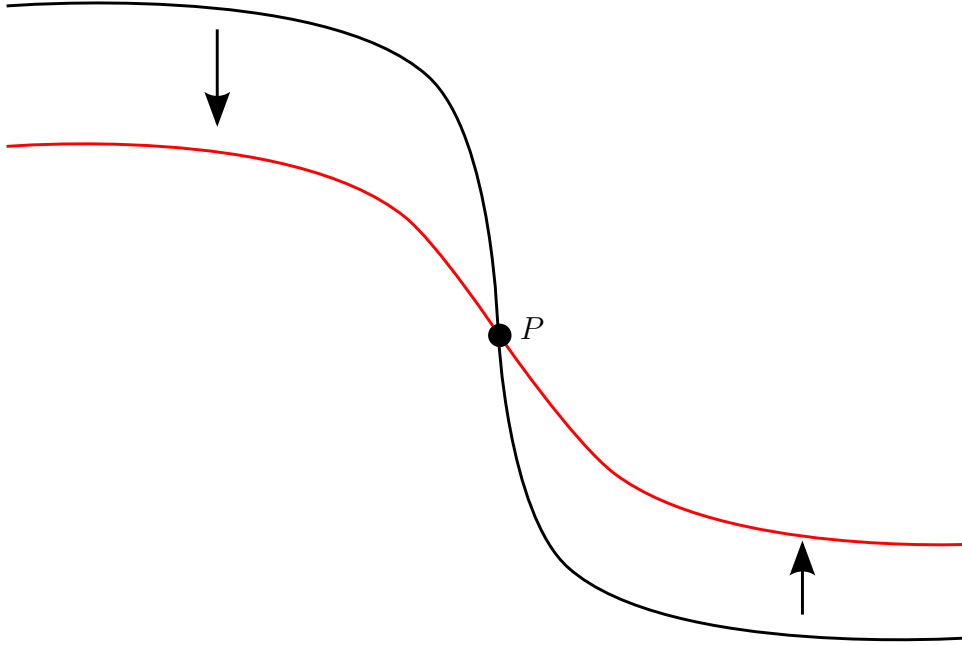


Figure 3.7: The effect of second-derivative dissipation on the near-formation of a shock near an inflection point P .

For other examples, and depending on the applications, different mechanisms may prevent shock formation. For instance for dispersive processes, the introduction of a third-derivative term may be more appropriate:

$$u_t + uu_x = \epsilon u_{xxx}.$$

The resulting partial differential equation is the KdV equation, of course. Although we will see in future chapters that the initial-value problem for this equation can be solved for initial data in a suitable function space, investigating the behavior of solutions as $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$ is nowhere near as straightforward as for the Burgers equation with dissipation. It is the topic of what is now known as Lax-Levermore theory [LL82], where one examines the zero-dispersion limit of wave equations with increasingly small dispersion. This is now well understood for the KdV equation and for the defocusing NLS equation

$$i\psi_t = -\epsilon\psi_{xx} + |\psi|^2\psi.$$

For the focusing NLS equation

$$i\psi_t = -\epsilon\psi_{xx} - |\psi|^2\psi,$$

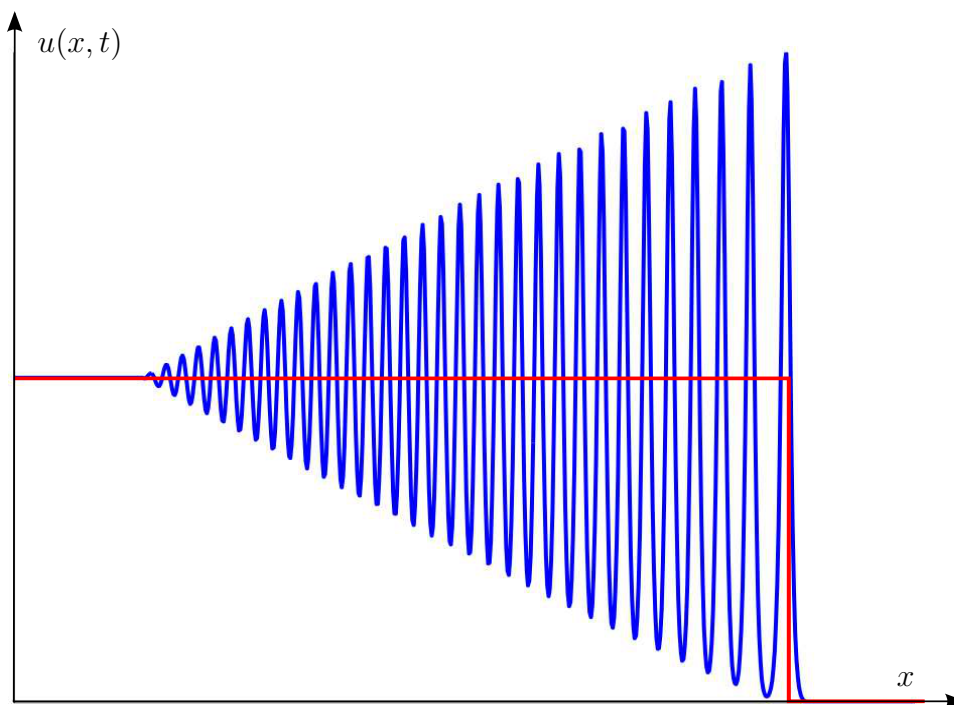


Figure 3.8: A solution profile $u(x, t)$ at time t (fast oscillations; blue) for small dispersion, and the shock (red) it is weakly converging to (Figure modified from [HA09]).

the small-dispersion problem is significantly more complicated, and serious progress has been made since the mid 1990s only. See [KMM03] for an overview.

The main difference between dissipation and dispersion in the prevention of shock formation is that dissipation tends to smooth out the shock profile, and as the coefficient of the dissipative term approaches zero, the solution converges to the observed shock profile (in some norm). On the other hand, adding dispersion tends to result in high-frequency oscillations, and as the coefficient of the dispersive term tends to zero, the solution does not necessarily converge to the shock profile. Often there is only weak convergence¹, *i.e.*, the local average² of the solution converges to the shock profile. This is illustrated in Fig. 3.8

For yet different applications, one may have to resort to higher-order dissipation or dispersion, or different types of nonlinear terms.

¹See any standard analysis text, *e.g.*, [Fri82].

²The average of the solution over a small interval which contains a large number of oscillations of the solution.

3.3 After shock formation: Rankine-Hugoniot conditions

Another approach to the problem of shocks forming is to embrace them: instead of trying to prevent them, let us figure out what to do with them once they form. Let us determine where the shocks go, and how fast they move. The key to doing this is to work with an integral form of the partial differential equation. This integral form typically corresponds to the conservation law form of the application being modeled. Most partial differential equations arising in applications are originally derived in integral form, expressing the conservation of various quantities, such as mass, charge, momentum, energy, *etc.* This is true for Maxwell's equations in electro-magnetism, for the equations of continuum mechanics, including the Navier-Stokes equations, *etc.*

The idea behind using an integral form of the partial differential equation is that integrals do not require continuous integrands to act on, whereas the arguments of derivatives should be smooth. Thus, using the integral form, we can deal with discontinuous solutions. Such solutions are also known as weak solutions of the differential equation.

Example 3.6. *Again we consider the dissipationless Burgers equation*

$$u_t + uu_x = 0.$$

We can rewrite this equation as

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}(u) + \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\frac{1}{2}u^2\right) = 0.$$

This form of the equation is called the conservation law form: integrating over the entire spatial domain, we find a conserved quantity for the partial differential equation if suitable boundary conditions are used. For instance

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t}(u) + \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\frac{1}{2}u^2\right) \right) dx = 0 \Rightarrow \frac{d}{dt} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} u dx = 0,$$

where we have assumed that $u \rightarrow 0$ as $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$. Thus $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} u dx$ is a constant of the motion.

Let us integrate the conservation law form over only part of space:

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{x_1}^{x_2} \frac{\partial}{\partial t}(u) dx + \frac{1}{2}u^2 \Big|_{x=x_1}^{x=x_2} &= 0 \\ \Rightarrow \frac{d}{dt} \int_{x_1}^{x_2} u dx &= \frac{1}{2}(u_1^2 - u_2^2), \end{aligned}$$

where $u_1 = u(x_1, t)$ and $u_2 = u(x_2, t)$. As long as our solution has continuous derivatives, this integral equation, which is valid for all x_1 and x_2 , is completely equivalent with the original partial differential equations form of the dissipationless Burgers equation.

Suppose that the solution exhibits a shock at $x = s(t)$. Also, assume that $x_2 > s(t)$ and $x_1 < s(t)$. Lastly, let $u^- = \lim_{x < s(t)} u(x, t)$, and $u^+ = \lim_{x > s(t)} u(x, t)$. Thus u^- and u^+ are the values of u just past and in front of the shock. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dt} \left(\int_{x_1}^{s(t)} u dx + \int_{s(t)}^{x_2} u dx \right) &= \frac{1}{2} (u_1^2 - u_2^2) \\ \Rightarrow \quad u^- s' - u^+ s' + \int_{x_1}^{s(t)} u_t dx + \int_{s(t)}^{x_2} u_t dx &= \frac{1}{2} (u_1^2 - u_2^2). \end{aligned}$$

Now we let $x_1 \rightarrow s$ and $x_2 \rightarrow s$. Then both of

$$\int_{x_1}^{s(t)} u_t dx \quad \text{and} \quad \int_{s(t)}^{x_2} u_t dx$$

vanish, as u_t is smooth both in front of and past the shock. We obtain

$$\begin{aligned} (u^- - u^+) s' &= \frac{1}{2} (u^{-2} - u^{+2}) \\ \Rightarrow \quad s' &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{(u^- - u^+)(u^- + u^+)}{u^- - u^+} \\ \Rightarrow \quad s' &= \frac{1}{2} (u^- + u^+). \end{aligned}$$

We find that the velocity of the shock is equal to the average of the solution amplitude in front of and past the shock.

How can we use this? For typical initial conditions the values of u^- and u^+ are not constant, and the shock velocity condition represents an ordinary differential equation for the shock position. However, we know at which time t^* and on which characteristic ξ^* the shock first forms. We may use our condition to move the shock approximately, using an Euler-like numerical method, for instance.

Let us examine how this works: at time t^* , a shock forms on characteristic ξ^* , from which we find the initial position $s(t^*)$ of the shock. Then we know the values of $u^- = u(s(t^*), t^*) = u^+$. Note that $u^-(t^*) = u^+(t^*)$ for smooth initial conditions. This is not the case if the initial conditions are discontinuous. Using this, we may propagate the shock with a small time step Δt :

$$s(t^* + \Delta t) = s(t^*) + \frac{1}{2} (u^- + u^+) \Delta t + \mathcal{O}((\Delta t)^2).$$

Next, we update the values of u^+ and u^- , using the values transported to the shock line along the new characteristics that now contribute to the shock. The introduction of the shock, splits the region where characteristics used to cross in two regions, one to the left of the shock line, one to the right. The characteristics can now safely be followed all the way to the shock line, without risking any multivaluedness. A schematic of this idea is presented in Fig. 3.9.

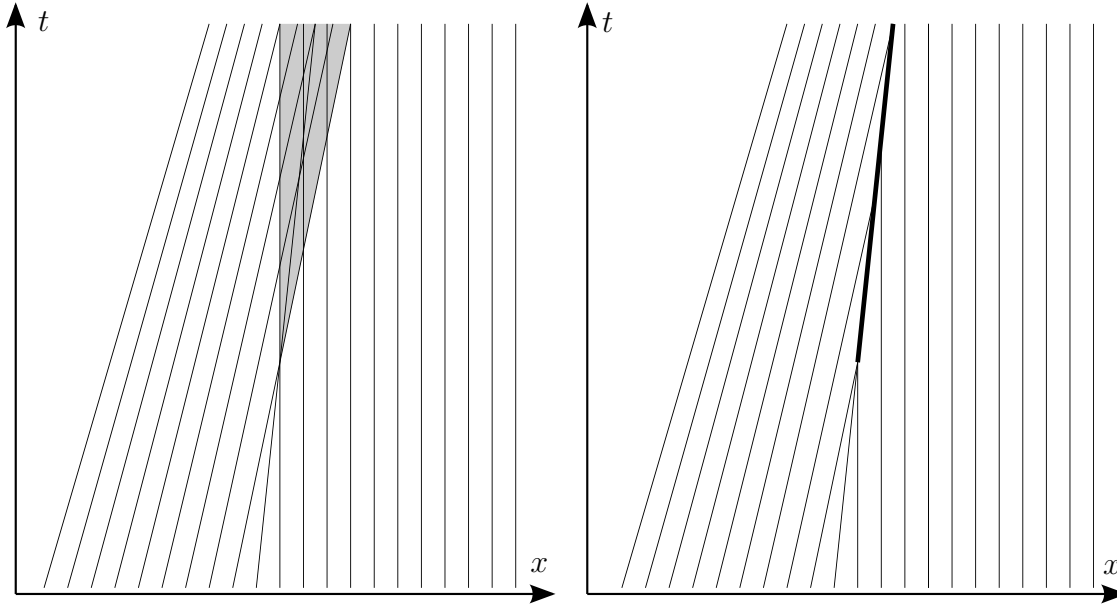


Figure 3.9: A shock region before and after the introduction of the shock. In the original shock region (left, filled in), the characteristics cross. After the shock is introduced (right, bold line), the characteristics are followed all the way to the shock.

In general, for an equation of the form

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\rho + \frac{\partial}{\partial x}j = 0,$$

the equation for the shock gives

$$s' = \frac{\Delta j}{\Delta \rho},$$

where $\Delta j = j^- - j^+$, and $\Delta \rho = \rho^- - \rho^+$. This follows a derivation entirely similar to the one for the dissipationless Burgers equation. This condition is known as the **Rankine-Hugoniot condition**.

A word of warning... Suppose we wish to introduce a shock in the characteristic picture for the dissipationless Burgers equation

$$u_t + uu_x = 0.$$

We could also, perversely, rewrite this equation as

$$uu_t + u^2u_x = 0,$$

which has as its conservation law form the equation

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left(\frac{1}{2} u^2 \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\frac{1}{3} u^3 \right) = 0.$$

Using the Rankine-Hugoniot condition with $\rho = u^2/2$ and $j = u^3/3$, we find

$$s' = \frac{2 u^{-3} - u^{+3}}{3 u^{-2} - u^{+2}} = \frac{2 u^{-2} + u^{-} u^{+} + u^{+2}}{3 u^{-} + u^{+}}.$$

This is different from the result we obtained before! Thus, when going from the differential form of the partial differential equation to the integral form (which is of course what we are doing when we invoke the Rankine-Hugoniot condition), we might lose uniqueness. This is unsatisfying, but not unexpected. As previously announced, the application in question (physics, engineering, biology, *etc.*) will have to dictate which integral formulation to use. The above calculation merely illustrates that the mathematics alone cannot tell us the right answer.

Let us summarize: typically an integral formulation is obtained first for many applications. Then one often switches to a differential formulation, because differential equations are easier to solve than integral equation. Or maybe we just have more experience with them. In any case, the limit process of going from an integral equation to a differential equation is straightforward and it results in a unique differential formulation. Then, when shocks are found in the differential equation, it is important to know which integral formulation the differential equation originated from, so as to be able to resolve the shock in a consistent manner.

3.4 Exercises

3.1. Consider the initial-value problem

$$\begin{cases} u_t + t u u_x = 0, \\ u(x, 0) = \sin(x), x \in \mathbb{R}. \end{cases}$$

Solve this initial-value problem for $t \geq 0$. Draw the characteristics. For how long is the solution valid?

3.2. Consider the initial-value problem

$$\begin{cases} u_t + t u u_x = 0, \\ u(x, 0) = \cos(x), x \in \mathbb{R}. \end{cases}$$

Solve this initial-value problem for $t \geq 0$. Draw the characteristics. For how long is the solution valid?

3.3. Consider the initial-value problem

$$\begin{cases} u_t + 2xtu_x = 1, \\ u(x, 0) = e^x, x \in \mathbb{R}. \end{cases}$$

Solve this initial-value problem for $t \geq 0$. Draw the characteristics. For how long is the solution valid?

3.4. Consider the initial-value problem

$$\begin{cases} u_t + xu_x = 1, \\ u(x, 0) = e^x, x \in \mathbb{R}. \end{cases}$$

Solve this initial-value problem for $t \geq 0$. Draw the characteristics. For how long is the solution valid?

3.5. Consider the initial-value problem

$$\begin{cases} u_t + uu_x = 0, \\ u(x, 0) = u_0(x), x \in \mathbb{R}. \end{cases}$$

Solve this initial-value problem for $t \geq 0$ with (a) $u_0(x) = -x$, (b) $u_0(x) = 1 - x^2$, (c) $u_0(x) = \sin x$. For each case, draw the characteristics. For how long is the solution valid?

3.6. The method of characteristics is not restricted to initial-value problems. (a) Consider the problem

$$\begin{cases} xu_x + yu_y = u + 1, \\ u(x, x^2) = x^2, (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2. \end{cases}$$

This problem is due to Guenther and Lee, see [GL96]. Use our version of the method of characteristics to solve this problem. You can use either x or y as your “time-like” variable. Where is your solution defined? (b) Now consider the same problem, but with $u(x, x) = x^2$, instead of $u(x, x^2) = x^2$. Show that this problem cannot be solved using the method of characteristics.

Explanation: This is because the data from which you are to recover the solution is given on a characteristic curve (check this). Since the solution is transported along characteristic curves, giving data along a certain characteristic curve does not allow one to construct the solution along the other characteristics. In general, the method of characteristics will work when the data is given along a curve that crosses the characteristics.

3.7. We have seen an example where the breaking time t^* depends on the initial data. Now consider the initial-value problem

$$\begin{cases} (t - \alpha)u_t + xu_x = u, \\ u(x, 0) = f(x), x \in \mathbb{R}, \alpha > 0. \end{cases}$$

Solve this initial-value problem for $t \geq 0$, *i.e.*, give an explicit solution for $u(x, t)$ in terms of the initial data $f(x)$. Draw the characteristics. For how long is the solution valid? As you see, in this problem the breaking time t^* is independent of the initial data $f(x)$.

- 3.8. The method of characteristics is easily extended to multidimensional problems. Consider the initial-value problem

$$\begin{cases} u_t + c_1(u)u_x + c_2(u)u_y = 0, \\ u(x, y, 0) = u_0(x, y), (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2. \end{cases}$$

- Generalize the method of characteristics to such two-dimensional equations: write down the equations for the characteristics and solve them if possible. Write down the exact solution for $u(x, y, t)$, in explicit form if possible, in implicit form otherwise.
- Apply the above method to solve the two-dimensional transport equation $u_t + c_1 u_x + c_2 u_y = 0$, with initial condition $u(x, y, 0) = u_0(x, y)$. Find the explicit solution for $u(x, y, t)$.
- Use a slight variation of your method to solve the damped transport initial-value problem

$$\begin{cases} u_t + c_1 u_x + c_2 u_y + \alpha u = 0, & \alpha > 0 \\ u(x, y, 0) = u_0(x, y), (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2. \end{cases}$$

- 3.9. Consider the IVP

$$\begin{cases} u_t + uu_x = 0, \\ u(x, 0) = \phi(x), \end{cases}$$

where $\phi(x)$ is determined by

$$\phi(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x \leq 0 \\ 1 - x, & 0 < x < 1 \\ 0, & x \geq 1. \end{cases}$$

(a) Show that a shock forms at $t_* = 1$. (b) You know that different integral representations of the differential equation can lead to different shock dynamics. By multiplying the differential equation by u^α , $\alpha \in (-1, +\infty)$, find different shock positions for any $t > 1$, depending on α . (c) Show that by a suitable choice of α , the shock can be continued along any of the characteristics starting in $x_0 \in (0, 1)$. (d) For any choice of α , draw the solution $u(x, t)$ at $t = 0$, $t = 1/2$, $t = 1$, $t = 2$, and $t = 5$.

- 3.10. Consider the IVP

$$\begin{cases} u_t + uu_x = 0, \\ u(x, 0) = \phi(x), \end{cases}$$

where $\phi(x)$ is defined by

$$\phi(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x < -1 \\ x^2, & -1 < x < 0 \\ 0, & 0 < x \end{cases}$$

Determine the solution of this problem in all regions of $x \in \mathbb{R}$ and $t > 0$, using the integral representation.

$$\frac{d}{dt} \int_a^b u dx + \frac{1}{2} u^2 \Big|_a^b = 0.$$

Are there any shocks? If so, where and when do they occur? Also draw all relevant phases the solution goes through, and provide a picture of the characteristics. If there are shocks, include a picture of the characteristics without and with the shock lines.

3.11. Rarefaction waves. We have considered several examples with characteristics. In many cases, each point of the (x, t) -plane had exactly one characteristic going through it. In other case, the characteristic crossed, and more than one characteristic could pass through a given point. There are other possibilities: it is possible that some regions of the plane have no characteristics in them.

(a) Consider the following initial-value problem:

$$u_t + uu_x = 0, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}, \quad \text{and} \quad u(x, 0) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } x \leq 0, \\ 1 & \text{for } x > 0. \end{cases}$$

Graph the characteristics for this problem in the (x, t) -plane ($t \geq 0$) and show that there are no characteristics in a whole sector of the plane.

(b) As with shocks, there are several ways to deal with this problem. We'll examine one here: consider the same differential equation as above, but with initial condition $u_\epsilon(x, 0) = 1/2 + \tanh(x/\epsilon)/2$, with $\epsilon > 0$. Show that in this case, there is exactly one characteristic in every area of the (x, t) -plane ($t \geq 0$) (a graphical "proof" is fine). What happens to the initial condition $u_\epsilon(x, 0)$ as $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$? What happens to the characteristics as $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$?

(c) We now use the limit characteristics found above to solve the initial-value problem. It is clear what to do on the original characteristics (*i.e.*, the ones we had before we talked about this limit process), as we can propagate the initial condition along them. What do we do along the characteristics in the sector? The solution should be constant along them, but we don't know what initial condition to propagate along them. In order to be constant along these characteristics, the solution $u(x, t)$ should be of the form $u(x, t) = g(x/t)$. Substitute this ansatz in the partial differential equation to find an equation for $g(z)$, $z = x/t$ (ignore the possibility $g' = 0$, which cannot result in a continuous solution. It can be shown that this choice can indeed be ignored).

(d) Finally, write down the solution to the original initial-value problem obtained this way and plot it for various instances of time. This solution satisfies the original partial differential equation at all time, except at the corner points emanating from the original discontinuity.

- 3.12. **Rarefaction waves: another example.** Use the same process to solve the initial-value problem

$$u_t + u^2 u_x = 0, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}, \quad \text{and} \quad u(x, 0) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } x \leq 0, \\ 1 & \text{for } x > 0. \end{cases}$$

- 3.13. **Shock waves.** It is not often that shock conditions like the ones we derived in class can be solved as a differential equation for the shock position, hence determining the shock position $s(t)$ at any time after its formation. But sometimes, this is possible.

Consider the following initial-value problem:

$$u_t + u^2 u_x = 0, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}, \quad \text{and} \quad u(x, 0) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } x \leq 2, \\ 0 & \text{for } x > 2. \end{cases}$$

Solve this initial-value problem in the region of the (x, t) -plane ($t \geq 0$) where no shock develops. Next, assuming that

$$\frac{d}{dt} \int_{x_1}^{x_2} u dx + \int_{x_1}^{x_2} u^2 u_x dx = 0$$

is the correct integral formulation to use, derive the shock condition governing the motion of the shock position $x = s(t)$. In this case, this condition can be solved for the shock position. Proceed to solve it, and hence find the position of the shock for any time after its formation. Give the solution to the initial-value problem, for any time $t \geq 0$. Illustrate this with some appropriately chosen snapshots of the solution $u(x, t)$.

- 3.14. **Rarefaction waves and shock waves combined.** Consider the following initial-value problem:

$$u_t + uu_x = 0, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}, \quad \text{and} \quad u(x, 0) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } x \leq 0, \\ 1 & \text{for } 0 < x < 1, \\ 0 & \text{for } x \geq 1. \end{cases}$$

(a) Find the solution of this problem in all areas of the (x, t) ($t \geq 0$)-plane where there is exactly one characteristic through each point.

(b) Using the same process as before, fill in the rarefaction region with characteristic lines, and write down the solution to the initial-value problem in this region.

(c) Assuming that the integral formulation

$$\frac{d}{dt} \int_{x_1}^{x_2} u dx + \int_{x_1}^{x_2} \left(\frac{1}{2} u^2 \right)_x dx = 0$$

is the correct integral formulation corresponding to the partial differential equation, derive the shock speed condition for a shock moving on a path $x = s(t)$.

(d) Use this shock condition to find the location of the shock at any time $t > 0$. Note that there are two different regions for this.

(e) Knowing the path of the shock, give a complete plot of the characteristics in the (x, t) -plane ($t \geq 0$), and describe the complete solution to the initial-value problem. Also provide snapshots of the solution $u(x, t)$ at relevant times.

3.15. Rarefaction waves and shock waves combined: good times were had by all.

Consider the following initial-value problem:

$$u_t + uu_x = 0, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}, \quad \text{and} \quad u(x, 0) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } x < 0, \text{ or } x > 3 \\ 3 & \text{for } 0 < x < 1, \\ 2 & \text{for } 1 < x < 2, \\ 1 & \text{for } 2 < x < 3. \end{cases}$$

Using rarefaction waves and the integral formulation you used in the previous problem, solve this problem for all $t > 0$.

3.16. Consider the nonlinear partial differential equation

$$\phi_{tt}\phi_x^2 - 2\phi_{xt}\phi_x\phi_t + \phi_t^2\phi_{xx} = 0.$$

This equation is a special case of the so-called Monge-Ampère equation. Show that in terms of the auxiliary function $u = \phi_t/\phi_x$ this equation may be reduced to a first-order equation. Assuming initial conditions $\phi(x, 0) = 1 + 2e^{3x}$ and $\phi_t(x, 0) = 4e^{3x}$, find $\phi(x, t)$ for $x \in \mathbb{R}$ and $t \geq 0$.

Chapter 4

Multiple scale perturbation theory

Typically, physical and other applications present us with systems of equations whose solutions are analytically untractable. Reductive perturbation theory is used to derive simpler equations that still incorporate many of the physical effects one wishes to investigate. For instance, starting from the Euler equations describing the dynamics of surface water waves under the influence of gravity, we may derive the KdV equation to investigate long waves in shallow water [KdV95]. We will go through the details of this derivation below. Similarly, we can examine the evolution of modulated wave trains in nonlinear optics using the NLS equation [Has90], as opposed to having to undertake the study of Maxwell's equations with the appropriate polarization vector. Or we can examine Alfvén waves in space plasmas using the Derivative Nonlinear Schrödinger (DNLS) equation

$$u_t = iu_{xx} + \alpha(|u|^2u)_x = 0, \quad \alpha = \pm 1,$$

as opposed to having to deal with Maxwell's equations coupled with the fluid equations [DMV93].

The most general method for obtaining these reduced equations is the method of multiple scales. We will illustrate the use of the method on two examples in this chapter. Good discussions and examples of the multiple-scales method can be found in the classic text [KC96]. More examples, especially in the context of nonlinear wave equations, are found in [IR00], albeit often using more heuristic arguments than the method requires.

Since the equations obtained are often simpler than those from which they originate¹, we may anticipate that analytical methods may prove useful in their study. Sometimes, much more is true and the equations found are integrable. As we have already remarked, integrable equations are the exception rather than the rule. This makes it all the more amazing how often these equations show up in applications. The main reason is that they incorporate and balance effects that occur in numerous application settings, making them universal.

¹This is not always the case. In this chapter, we will derive the NLS equation, starting from the KdV equation. It is hard to argue that one equation is simpler than the other.

For instance, the KdV equation arises in *all* applications where long waves propagate in a dispersive medium, just like the NLS equation is found to govern the dynamics of modulated wave trains in dispersive media. These statements are independent of the specific application studied, whether it is Bose-Einstein condensation, fluid mechanics, nonlinear optics, plasma physics, solid state physics, *etc.* Of course, the specific derivation of these equations depends heavily on the application equations from which we start, as is obvious from the examples below.

4.1 Waves in shallow water: the KdV equation

Our first case study for the method of multiple scales is a careful derivation of the KdV equation in the context of water waves. Historically, the works of Boussinesq [Bou71] and Korteweg and de Vries [KdV95] are the most relevant. The books by Ablowitz & Segur [AS81] and Infeld & Rowlands [IR00], for instance, contain derivations as well, with varying amounts of detail.

4.1.1 Problem set-up

Consider the problem of describing the surface dynamics of water waves in shallow water, under the influence of gravity. We assume that the dynamics inside the water is irrotational (no vorticity), and inviscid (no viscosity or other dissipative effects). Further, we ignore the effects of surface tension and assume that the water has constant density. We only consider the one-dimensional problem (one vertical direction z and one horizontal direction x). A sketch of this set-up is given in Fig. 4.1.

The equation for the surface of the water is $z = \zeta(x, t)$. We assume that $z = 0$ corresponds to the equilibrium situation (flat water surface). The bottom of the water is assumed to have no topography and is at $z = -h$. Since the motion is irrotational, it may be derived from a velocity potential, thus the velocity (u, w) is given by $(u, w) = \nabla\phi = (\phi_x, \phi_z)$.

The water wave problem is governed by the following four equations [KC07, Sto92]:

1. $\nabla^2\phi = 0$, for $-h < z < \zeta(x, t)$. This follows from conservation of mass, having an incompressible fluid and potential flow. This equation governs the motion in the bulk of the water, *i.e.*, away from the boundaries. The other three equations are boundary conditions.
2. $\phi_z = 0$ at $z = -h$. This equation dictates that there is no flow through the bottom.
3. $\zeta_t + \phi_x\zeta_x = \phi_z$, at $z = \zeta(x, t)$ (at the surface). This equation is known as the kinematic condition. It states that fluid particles on the surface remain on the surface: $\frac{d}{dt}(\zeta - z) = 0$.

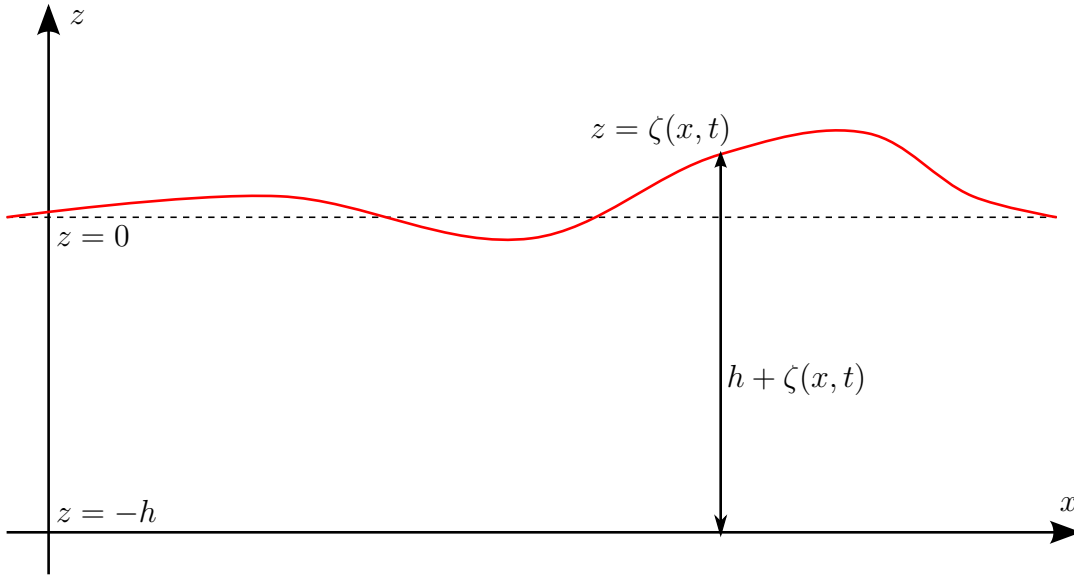


Figure 4.1: The set-up of the shallow water wave problem.

4. $\phi_t + g\zeta + \frac{1}{2}|\nabla\phi|^2 = 0$, ignoring surface tension. Like the kinematic condition, this equation is also specified at the surface $z = \zeta(x, t)$. It is known as the dynamic condition. It is essentially Bernoulli's equation.

Lastly, we impose that the fluid is in equilibrium as $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$. In summary, we are attempting to solve the following free-boundary value problem:

$$\begin{cases} \phi_{xx} + \phi_{zz} = 0, & \text{for } -h < z < \zeta(x, t), \\ \phi_z = 0, & \text{at } z = -h, \\ \zeta_t + \phi_x \zeta_x = \phi_z, & \text{at } z = \zeta(x, t), \\ \phi_t + g\zeta + \frac{1}{2}(\phi_x^2 + \phi_z^2) = 0 & \text{at } z = \zeta(x, t), \end{cases} \quad (4.1)$$

with $\zeta, \phi \rightarrow 0$ as $|x| \rightarrow \infty$. It is bad enough that these equations are nonlinear. What makes them truly hard to deal with is that we are solving a partial differential equation (Laplace's equation) inside a domain whose boundaries we do not know. Finding these boundaries is part of the problem and, in this case, the essence of the problem.

4.1.2 The linear dispersion relation

Linearizing the above equations around the equilibrium solution $\zeta(x, t) = 0$ and $\phi(x, z, t) = 0$, we find the linear dispersion relationship to be

$$\omega^2 = gk \tanh(kh), \quad (4.2)$$

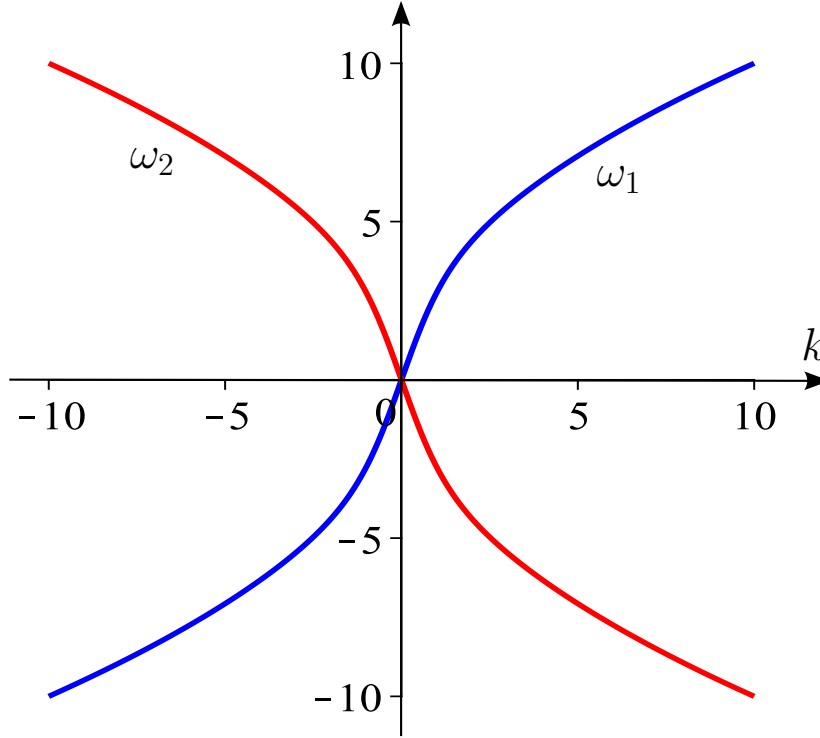


Figure 4.2: Both branches of the linear dispersion relation for the water wave problem, with $g = 10$ and $h = 1$. For ω_1 (ω_2) the phase and group speed are always positive (negative).

see Problem 2.6 on Page 40. Note that the right-hand side is indeed positive for all values of k . We define $\omega_1(k) = \text{sgn}(k)\sqrt{gk \tanh(kh)}$, $\omega_2(k) = -\omega_1(k)$. With these definitions both the phase speed c_{1p} and the group speed c_{1g} associated with the first branch $\omega_1(k)$ are positive. Similarly, those for the second branch are negative.

A plot of both branches of $\omega(k)$ is shown in Fig. 4.2. We discuss a few interesting limits.

Long waves in shallow water

If $|k|$ is small so that $|k|h \ll 1$, then we find $\omega^2 = ghk^2$, or $\omega_{\pm} = \pm\sqrt{gh}|k|$. In this case the waves are long (wavelength= $2\pi/k$) compared to the depth of the water. The phase and group velocities for the + and - branch are given by

$$c_p = \frac{\omega_{\pm}(k)}{k} = \pm \text{sgn}(k)\sqrt{gh}, \quad c_g = \frac{d\omega_{\pm}(k)}{dk} = \pm \text{sgn}(k)\sqrt{gh}.$$

Thus waves in shallow water are essentially non-dispersive: wave crests move with the same speed as wave packets.

Short waves in deep water

If $kh \gg 1$ then $\omega^2 = g|k|$ and $\omega_{\pm} = \pm\sqrt{g|k|}$. These waves are short compared to the depth of the water. The phase and group velocities for the $+$ and $-$ branch are given by

$$c_p = \frac{\omega_{\pm}(k)}{k} = \pm \operatorname{sgn}(k) \sqrt{\frac{g}{|k|}}, \quad c_g = \frac{d\omega_{\pm}(k)}{dk} = \pm \frac{\operatorname{sgn}(k)}{2} \sqrt{\frac{g}{|k|}}.$$

In this case, wave crests move twice as fast as wave packets.

Both types of wave may exist in a given wave field. For instance, Fig. 4.3 displays both long and short waves on the Atlantic Ocean near Panama. The dominant waves (large wave crests moving towards the lower-left corner of the photograph) are long waves: their crest-to-crest wavelength is large compared to the local depth of the water. On the other hand, the small ripples on the surface have a short wavelength compared to this depth. Note that there appears to be little or no interaction between these different waves. Of course, it is not clear from Fig. 4.3 that both types of waves are gravity waves. That requires detailed measurements and data analysis. In fact, the short waves in the picture are more likely the result of wind blowing across the water surface. Nevertheless, the photograph illustrates the simultaneous presence in time of different kinds of water waves at the same location.

4.1.3 The principle of Maximal Balance

At this point we state which type of waves we are interested in. We introduce two small parameters ϵ_1 and ϵ_2 as follows:

- $\epsilon_1 = (kh)^2 \ll 1$, *i.e.*, waves are long compared to the depth of the water.
- $\epsilon_2 = |\zeta|_{\max}/h \ll 1$, thus the waves have small amplitude.

The condition that these parameters are small represents different physical assumptions, as is obvious from their definition. **Kruskal's principle of maximal balance** [Kru63] states that in order to obtain an equation that is interesting, we should balance these different physical assumptions, taking all of them into account. Thus we let $\epsilon = \epsilon_1 = \mathcal{O}(\epsilon_2)$, and we continue working with one small parameter ϵ only, representing both assumptions. Note that we could have incorporated both effects by setting $\sqrt{\epsilon_1} = \epsilon_2$, *etc.* Indeed, there are many possibilities. Some of these lead to different interesting equations from the one that we are about to obtain, while others do not lead to anything interesting at all. Kruskal's principle does not tell us how to balance different effects², and we cannot expect it to do so. As Fig. 4.3 illustrates, different wave phenomena may be present simultaneously in an

²Perhaps we should write: fortunately, Kruskal's principle does not tell us how to balance different effects. If it did asymptotics in general and the method of multiple scales would be reduced to a simple mechanical crank, without any creative input from the executioner.

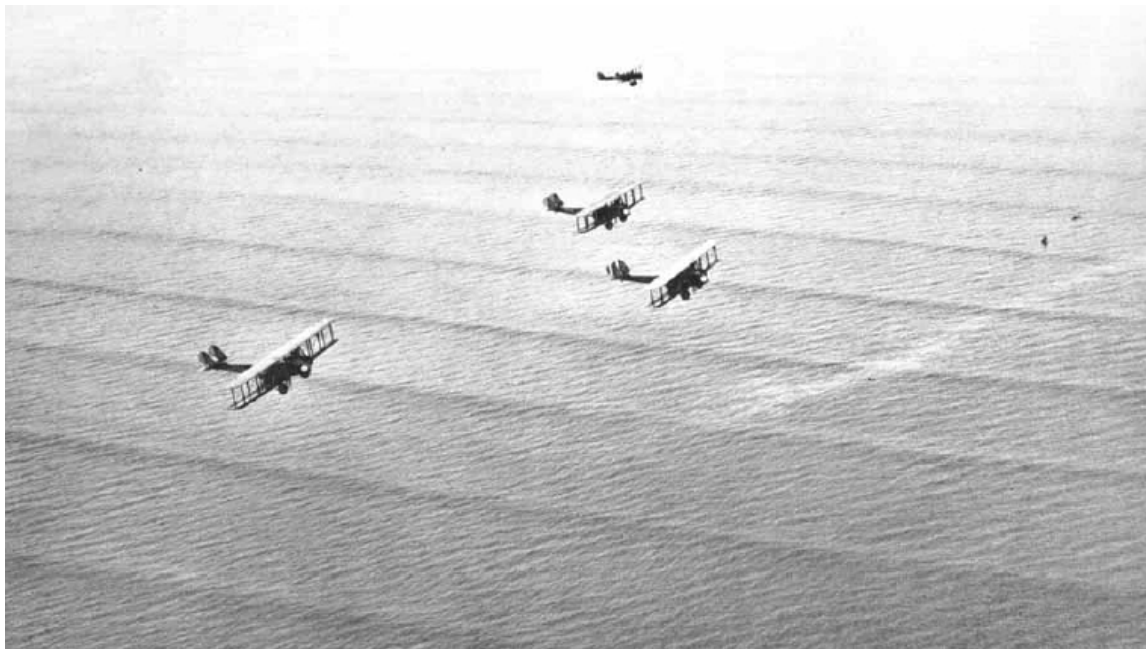


Figure 4.3: Surface water waves near the coast of Panama. The original caption read: “As they near shallow water close to the coast of Panama, huge deep-sea waves, relics of a recent storm, are transformed into waves that have crests, but little or no troughs. A light breeze is blowing diagonally across the larger waves to produce a cross-chop. Three Army bombers, escorted by a training ship, are proceeding from Albrook Field, Canal Zone, to David, Panama.” (Taken from *National Geographic* 63 (1933).)

application settings. Although a lot of hard work goes into using the method of multiple scales (as in what follows), it is the seemingly small choices that are made in this balancing step that determine the relevance of the final equation or equations obtained. This step is the one that requires the practitioner’s creative input.

4.1.4 Nondimensionalization

When working with small parameters, one should always work in dimensionless variables. Indeed, the magnitude of variables with dimensions may be changed arbitrarily by changing its measuring units, thus it is impossible to decide whether a dimensional quantity is small or not³.

³Another reason for working with dimensionless quantities is that we can introduce Taylor or Laurent series, as necessary. The arguments of functions whose series expansions contain more than one term has to be dimensionless. Indeed, different powers of dimensional quantities have different dimensions, and quantities of different dimensions cannot be added together. As a special case, the argument of transcendental functions

We define new dimensionless variables as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} z^* &= z/h, \\ x^* &= \sqrt{\epsilon} \frac{x}{h}, \\ t^* &= \sqrt{\frac{\epsilon g}{h}} t, \\ \zeta &= \epsilon h \zeta^*, \\ \phi &= h \sqrt{\epsilon g h} \phi^*. \end{aligned}$$

It is convenient to define new independent variables in terms of old ones, and old dependent variables in terms of new ones, because of how the substitution rules work out, using the chain rule with the independent variables.

The first equation nondimensionalizes the vertical coordinate by the height, as one would expect. The second equation does the same in the horizontal direction: up to a factor of 2π , x is scaled by the wave length λ : $x^* = 2\pi x/\lambda = kx$, which gives the above, using $kh = \sqrt{\epsilon}$. Combined, the two equations state that variations in the horizontal direction are slower than in the vertical direction. In other words, they encode that we are working with long waves in shallow water.

The third equation follows from the second one and the dispersion relation for shallow water waves by ensuring that the relevant velocity is \sqrt{gh} : the quantity t^* is defined so that the velocity-like quantity $\Delta x/\Delta t = \sqrt{gh} \Delta x^*/\Delta t^*$. This is why it was necessary to examine the linear dispersion relation first. The fourth equation encodes the small-amplitude assumption: $\zeta = |\zeta|_{\max} \zeta^* = \epsilon h \zeta^*$ (up to a proportionality constant), while, as for the third equation, the last definition follows from $\Delta \phi/\Delta x$ being a velocity. That does not determine the accompanying power of ϵ , which is partially a choice. A positive power of ϵ is expected, as water particles should move much less in the horizontal direction than the wave profile itself. Obviously, a different power of ϵ leads to different equations in what follows, and perturbation series assumptions have to be changed accordingly to ensure desirable results. The benefit of the present choice is that the equations below involve integer powers of ϵ only. No square roots of ϵ appear.

In these new variables, our first equation becomes:

$$\frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial z^2} = 0 \Rightarrow \frac{\epsilon}{h} \frac{\partial^2 \phi^*}{\partial x^{*2}} + \frac{1}{h} \frac{\partial^2 \phi^*}{\partial z^{*2}} = 0 \Rightarrow \epsilon \frac{\partial^2 \phi^*}{\partial x^{*2}} + \frac{\partial^2 \phi^*}{\partial z^{*2}} = 0,$$

valid for $-1 < z^* < \epsilon \zeta^*$. The second equation gives

$$\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial z} = 0 \Rightarrow \frac{\partial \phi^*}{\partial z^*} = 0,$$

(*e.g.*, \exp , \sin , \dots) has to be dimensionless.

valid on $z^* = -1$. From the third equation, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial z} &= \frac{\partial \zeta}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x} \frac{\partial \zeta}{\partial x} \\ \Rightarrow \quad \sqrt{\epsilon gh} \frac{\partial \phi^*}{\partial z^*} &= \epsilon h \sqrt{\frac{\epsilon g}{h}} \frac{\partial \zeta^*}{\partial t^*} + \epsilon h \frac{\epsilon}{h^2} h \sqrt{\epsilon gh} \frac{\partial \phi^*}{\partial x^*} \frac{\partial \zeta^*}{\partial x^*} \\ \Rightarrow \quad \frac{\partial \phi^*}{\partial z^*} &= \epsilon \frac{\partial \zeta^*}{\partial t^*} + \epsilon^2 \frac{\partial \phi^*}{\partial x^*} \frac{\partial \zeta^*}{\partial x^*}, \end{aligned}$$

valid on $z^* = \epsilon \zeta^*$. The last equation becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial t} + g\zeta + \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x} \right)^2 + \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial z} \right)^2 &= 0 \\ \Rightarrow \quad h \sqrt{\epsilon gh} \sqrt{\frac{\epsilon g}{h}} \frac{\partial \phi^*}{\partial t^*} + \epsilon gh \zeta^* + \frac{1}{2} h^2 (\epsilon gh) \frac{\epsilon}{h^2} \left(\frac{\partial \phi^*}{\partial x^*} \right)^2 + \frac{1}{2} h^2 (\epsilon gh) \frac{1}{h^2} \left(\frac{\partial \phi^*}{\partial z^*} \right)^2 &= 0 \\ \Rightarrow \quad \frac{\partial \phi^*}{\partial t^*} + \zeta + \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{\partial \phi^*}{\partial z^*} \right)^2 + \frac{\epsilon}{2} \left(\frac{\partial \phi^*}{\partial x^*} \right)^2 &= 0, \end{aligned}$$

which is valid on $z^* = \epsilon \zeta^*$ as well.

So as not to burden the notation with all these stars, we omit them from here on out. Our final system of dimensionless equations is

$$\begin{array}{lll} \phi_{zz} + \epsilon \phi_{xx} = 0, & \text{for} & -1 < z < \epsilon \zeta, \\ \phi_z = 0, & \text{at} & z = -1, \\ \epsilon \zeta_t + \epsilon^2 \phi_x \zeta_x = \phi_z, & \text{at} & z = \epsilon \zeta, \\ \phi_t + \zeta + \frac{1}{2} \phi_z^2 + \frac{\epsilon}{2} \phi_x^2 = 0 & \text{at} & z = \epsilon \zeta. \end{array}$$

4.1.5 Determining the dependence on z

Using the first two of these equations, it is easy to determine the z dependence of $\phi(x, z, t)$. Since $\phi_z = 0$ at $z = -1$, it is convenient to expand $\phi(x, z, t)$ as a series in $z + 1$:

$$\phi(x, z, t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (z + 1)^n \phi_n(x, t).$$

Substitution in $\phi_{zz} + \epsilon \phi_{xx} = 0$ gives:

$$\begin{aligned}
& \epsilon \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (z+1)^n \phi_{nxx}(x, t) + \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} (z+1)^{n-2} n(n-1) \phi_n(x, t) = 0 \\
\Rightarrow & \epsilon \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (z+1)^n \phi_{nxx}(x, t) + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (z+1)^n (n+2)(n+1) \phi_{n+2}(x, t) = 0 \\
\Rightarrow & \epsilon \phi_{nxx} + (n+2)(n+1) \phi_{n+2}(x, t) = 0, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots, \\
\Rightarrow & \phi_{n+2} = \frac{-\epsilon \phi_{nxx}}{(n+1)(n+2)}, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots
\end{aligned}$$

In the above the index n does not denote a number of x derivatives as before. We know that $\phi_z = 0$ at $z = -1$, thus $\phi_1(x, t) = 0$. Using the above recursion relation, we find

$$0 = \phi_1(x, t) = \phi_3(x, t) = \phi_5(x, t) = \dots,$$

hence

$$\phi(x, z, t) = \phi_0(x, t) - \epsilon \frac{(z+1)^2}{2!} \phi_{0xx} + \epsilon^2 \frac{(z+1)^4}{4!} \phi_{0xxxx} - \dots$$

Two equations remain to be solved, both at the surface $z = \epsilon \zeta(x, t)$:

$$\begin{cases} \phi_z = \epsilon \zeta_t + \epsilon^2 \phi_x \zeta_x, \\ \phi_t + \zeta + \frac{1}{2} \phi_z^2 + \frac{\epsilon}{2} \phi_x^2 = 0. \end{cases} \quad (4.3)$$

The above result for $\phi(x, z, t)$ gives $\phi_z = -\epsilon(z+1)\phi_{0xx} + \dots$. Evaluating this at $z = \epsilon \zeta$ gives:

$$\phi_z = -\epsilon(\epsilon \zeta + 1)\phi_{0xx} + \dots = -\epsilon \phi_{0xx} + \dots,$$

valid at $z = \epsilon \zeta(x, t)$. All the terms that were ignored are of order at least ϵ^2 . The first of the above equations becomes

$$-\epsilon \phi_{0xx} + \dots = \epsilon \zeta_t + \epsilon^2 \phi_{0x} \zeta_x + \dots,$$

so that

$$\zeta_t + \partial_x \phi_{0x} = \mathcal{O}(\epsilon).$$

Similarly, from the second equation we obtain

$$\phi_{0t} + \zeta = \theta(\epsilon) \Rightarrow (\phi_{0x})_t + \partial_x \zeta = \mathcal{O}(\epsilon).$$

4.1.6 The perturbation expansions and the slow time scales

At this point, two functions remain to be determined: $\phi_0(x, t)$ and $\zeta(x, t)$. We assume the following expansions:

$$\phi_{0x} = u_0 + \epsilon u_1 + \epsilon^2 u_2 + \dots, \quad (4.4)$$

$$\zeta = \zeta_0 + \epsilon \zeta_1 + \epsilon^2 \zeta_2 + \dots \quad (4.5)$$

It turns out that the more convenient quantity for our calculations is the spatial derivative of $\phi_0(x, t)$, rather than the function itself. Next, we introduce the slow time scales τ_1, τ_2 , *etc.*:

$$\tau_0 = t, \tau_1 = \epsilon t, \tau_2 = \epsilon^2 t, \dots,$$

which implies that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau_0} + \epsilon \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau_1} + \epsilon^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau_2} + \dots$$

It is clear at this stage why the perturbation expansions for $\phi_{0x}(x, t)$ and $\zeta(x, t)$ are introduced. Indeed, the remaining equations depend on ϵ , and it is natural to determine their solution order by order in ϵ . During the course of our calculations, we have used $\sqrt{\epsilon}$. However, the two surface equations (4.3) only depend on integer powers of ϵ , and it is not necessary to include half-integer powers of ϵ in the perturbation expansions (4.4-4.5). The introduction of the slow time scales τ_1, τ_2 , *etc.* may appear puzzling. In fact, currently there is no reason for introducing them. If we were to proceed with t as the only temporal variable, soon we would find ourselves stuck, having too many conditions on too few variables. At that stage, the slow time scales would have to be introduced, resulting in a plethora of calculations that need to be redone. To avoid this backtracking, we introduce the slow time scales here. We comment below at which stage the reader can observe the necessity of their use.

Some clarification can be given as to why the first slow time scale τ_1 should be of first order in ϵ . Consider the linear dispersion relation (4.2). Since we are interested in long waves, we expand this near $k = 0$, obtaining

$$\omega_{1,2} = \pm \sqrt{ghk} \left(1 - \frac{1}{6}(kh)^2 + \mathcal{O}((kh)^4) \right),$$

where the $+$ sign is to be used for $kh > 0$, the $-$ sign for $kh < 0$. Using $kh = \sqrt{\epsilon}$ (see Section 4.1.3) and the nondimensionalizations for x and t , we obtain

$$e^{ikx - i\omega_{1,2}t} = e^{i(x^* \mp t^*) \pm i\epsilon t^*/6 + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2)}.$$

Here the entries in the exponent on the left-hand side have dimensions, whereas those on the right-hand side do not. It follows that we should expect wave propagation in two directions, left and right, corresponding to the bottom and top signs in the above equation. This wave propagation phenomenon is dominant. In addition, we expect to observe secondary dynamics, at the time scale $\tau_1 = \epsilon t^*$.

It should be clear to the reader that the presentation of examples of the method of multiple scales one finds in textbooks or research articles is the result of much backtracking, fine tuning, and polishing. The use of the method of multiple scales is truly a situation where hindsight is twenty-twenty!

4.1.7 Lowest-order results

With all of this newly introduced notation, (4.3) at lowest order becomes

$$\begin{cases} \frac{\partial \zeta_0}{\partial \tau_0} + \frac{\partial u_0}{\partial x} = 0 \\ \frac{\partial u_0}{\partial \tau_0} + \frac{\partial \zeta_0}{\partial x} = 0 \end{cases}.$$

Combining these equations gives

$$\begin{cases} \frac{\partial^2 \zeta_0}{\partial \tau_0^2} - \frac{\partial^2 \zeta_0}{\partial x^2} = 0, \\ \frac{\partial^2 u_0}{\partial \tau_0^2} - \frac{\partial^2 u_0}{\partial x^2} = 0. \end{cases}$$

Both ζ_0 and u_0 satisfy wave equations with (dimensionless) velocity 1 as functions of x and τ_0 . Thus

$$\begin{cases} \zeta_0 = f(x - \tau_0, \tau_1, \tau_2, \dots) + g(x + \tau_0, \tau_1, \tau_2, \dots) \\ u_0 = f(x - \tau_0, \tau_1, \tau_2, \dots) - g(x + \tau_0, \tau_1, \tau_2, \dots) \end{cases}.$$

Thus, on the fastest time scale τ_0 , all initial data splits in two directions, with one part (f) propagating to the right, and the other part (g) propagating to the left. The only relevant dynamics on this time scale is simple wave propagation, according to the wave equation. This behavior is to be expected from the linear dispersion relation, as remarked above. To obtain these expressions, we have assumed that both ζ_0 and u_0 approach 0 as $|x| \rightarrow \infty$, as do the functions f and g . Without this assumption, an additive constant (possibly dependent on τ_1, τ_2, \dots) could be added to the expression for u_0 .

4.1.8 Higher order results

Let us proceed to higher order. First we determine $\phi_z(x, \epsilon \zeta(x, t), t)$ to second order in ϵ .

$$\begin{aligned}
\phi_z(x, \epsilon\zeta(x, t), t) &= -\epsilon(1+z)\phi_{0xx} + \epsilon^2 \frac{(1+z)^3}{6} \phi_{0xxxx} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^3) \quad \text{at } z = \epsilon\zeta(x, t) \\
&= -\epsilon(1+\epsilon\zeta)\phi_{0xx} + \epsilon^2 \frac{(1+\epsilon\zeta)^3}{6} \phi_{0xxxx} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^3) \\
&= -\epsilon(1+\epsilon\zeta_0)\phi_{0xx} + \epsilon^2 \frac{1}{6} \phi_{0xxxx} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^3) \\
&= -\epsilon(1+\epsilon\zeta_0)(u_{0x} + \epsilon u_{1x}) + \epsilon^2 \frac{1}{6} u_{0xxx} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^3) \\
&= -\epsilon u_{0x} + \epsilon^2 \left(-\zeta_0 u_{0x} - u_{1x} + \frac{1}{6} u_{0xxx} \right) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^3).
\end{aligned}$$

Next we determine $\phi_x(x, \epsilon\zeta(x, t), t)$ to first order in ϵ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
\phi_x(x, \epsilon\zeta(x, t), t) &= \phi_{0x} - \epsilon \frac{(1+z)^2}{2} \phi_{0xxx} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \quad \text{at } z = \epsilon\zeta(x, t) \\
&= \phi_{0x} - \epsilon \frac{1}{2} \phi_{0xxx} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\
&= u_0 + \epsilon u_1 - \epsilon \frac{1}{2} u_{0xx} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\
&= u_0 + \epsilon \left(u_1 - \frac{1}{2} u_{0xx} \right) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2),
\end{aligned}$$

and $\phi_{xt}(x, \epsilon\zeta(x, t), t)$, also to first order in ϵ .

$$\begin{aligned}
\phi_{xt}(x, \epsilon\zeta(x, t), t) &= (\partial_{\tau_0} + \epsilon \partial_{\tau_1})(u_0 + \epsilon(u_1 - u_{0xx}/2)) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\
&= u_{0\tau_0} + \epsilon(u_{0\tau_1} + u_{1\tau_0} - u_{0xx\tau_0}/2) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2).
\end{aligned}$$

Last, we find an expression for ζ_t to first order in ϵ .

$$\begin{aligned}
\zeta_t &= \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \tau_0} + \epsilon \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau_1} \right) (\zeta_0 + \epsilon \zeta_1) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\
&= \zeta_{0\tau_0} + \epsilon(\zeta_{1\tau_0} + \zeta_{0\tau_1}) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2).
\end{aligned}$$

Using all of these expressions, the kinematic equation becomes, to second order in ϵ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
\epsilon^1 : \quad & -u_{0x} = \zeta_{0\tau_0} \\
\epsilon^2 : \quad & -\zeta_0 u_{0x} - u_{1x} + \frac{1}{6} u_{0xxx} = \zeta_{1\tau_0} + \zeta_{0\tau_1} + u_0 \zeta_{0x} \quad \text{or} \\
& \zeta_{1\tau_0} + u_{1x} = - \left(\zeta_{0\tau_1} + u_0 \zeta_{0x} + \zeta_0 u_{0x} - \frac{1}{6} u_{0xxx} \right).
\end{aligned}$$

The first equation we had already found by looking at the leading order terms. We will hang on to the second equation for now. Bernoulli's equation $\phi_{xt} + \zeta_x + \frac{1}{2}\partial_x(\phi_z^2 + \epsilon\phi_x^2) = 0$, evaluated at $z = \epsilon\zeta(x, t)$ becomes, to first order in ϵ :

$$\begin{aligned} \epsilon^0 : \quad & u_{0\tau_0} + \zeta_{0x} = 0, \\ \epsilon^1 : \quad & u_{0\tau_1} + u_{1\tau_0} - \frac{1}{2}u_{0xx\tau_0} + \zeta_{1x} + u_0u_{0x} = 0 \quad \text{or} \\ & u_{1\tau_0} + \zeta_{1x} = - \left(u_{0\tau_1} - \frac{1}{2}u_{0xx\tau_0} + u_0u_{0x} \right). \end{aligned}$$

As for the kinematic condition, we had already found the first equation by considering the leading-order terms. Thus we are left with both of the higher-order equations

$$\begin{cases} \zeta_{1\tau_0} + u_{1x} &= - \left(\zeta_{0\tau_1} + u_0\zeta_{0x} + \zeta_0u_{0x} - \frac{1}{6}u_{0xxx} \right), \\ u_{1\tau_0} + \zeta_{1x} &= - \left(u_{0\tau_1} - \frac{1}{2}u_{0xx\tau_0} + u_0u_{0x} \right). \end{cases}$$

As expected, the left-hand side of these equations is identical to what was found at the leading order, but for the next set of unknown functions ζ_1 and u_1 . The right-hand side of these equations consists of functions whose dependence on the fast time scale τ_0 has already been determined. We wish to determine both how u_1 and ζ_1 depend on τ_0 , but even more how u_0 and ζ_0 depend on the slower time scale τ_1 .

4.1.9 Characteristic variables

Let us change variables on these two equations, to express them in characteristic variables. We introduce the variables that “diagonalize” the system of equations on the left-hand side:

$$l = x + \tau_0, \quad r = x - \tau_0.$$

Here l (left) is the characteristic variable for a left-moving wave, and r (right) is the characteristic variable for a right-moving wave. Then

$$\partial_x = \partial_r + \partial_l, \quad \partial_{\tau_0} = \partial_l - \partial_r,$$

and $\zeta_0 = f(r) + g(l)$, $u_0 = f(r) - g(l)$. Note that $f(r)$ and $g(l)$ each depend on all stretched time variables τ_1, τ_2 , etc, but not on the other characteristic variable. The transformed equations are

$$\begin{cases} \zeta_{1l} - \zeta_{1r} + u_{1r} + u_{1l} &= - \left(f_{\tau_1} + g_{\tau_1} + (f - g)(f_r + g_l) + (f + g)(f_r - g_l) - \frac{1}{6}(f_{rrr} - guu) \right), \\ u_{1l} - u_{1r} + \zeta_{1r} + \zeta_{1l} &= - \left(f_{\tau_1} - g_{\tau_1} + \frac{1}{2}(f_{rrr} + guu) + (f - g)(f_r - g_l) \right). \end{cases}$$

Adding and subtracting these two results in

$$\begin{cases} 2(\zeta_{1l} + u_{1l}) &= -(2f_{\tau_1} + 3ff_r + \frac{1}{3}f_{rrr}) + f_r g + gg_l + fg_l - \frac{2}{3}g_{ll}, \\ 2(u_{1r} - \zeta_{1r}) &= -(2g_{\tau_1} - 3gg_l - \frac{1}{3}g_{ll}) - g_l f - ff_r - gf_r + \frac{2}{3}f_{rrr}. \end{cases}$$

The left-hand sides may be integrated:

$$\begin{cases} 2(\zeta_1 + u_1) &= -(2f_{\tau_1} + 3ff_r + \frac{1}{3}f_{rrr})l + f_r \int g dl + \frac{1}{2}g^2 + fg - \frac{2}{3}g_{ll} + C_1, \\ 2(u_1 - \zeta_1) &= -(2g_{\tau_1} - 3gg_l - \frac{1}{3}g_{ll})r - g_l \int f dr - \frac{1}{2}f^2 - gf + \frac{2}{3}f_{rr} + C_2, \end{cases}$$

where C_1 (C_2) may depend on all variables but l (r). All terms on the right-hand sides are bounded, except for the first terms (which are secular: they grow without bound as $r, l \rightarrow \pm\infty$) and the second terms (unless the integrand has zero average). The second terms of both equations may be eliminated by imposing that we consider profiles for which the right- and left-translating frames of reference do not interact. Thus the equations we are about to derive are valid in frames moving along with the shallow-water velocity (\sqrt{gh} in dimensional variables), and after a sufficient amount of time τ_0 has elapsed so that the right- and left-moving waves no longer interact. This leaves only the growth of the first secular terms. This growth is unphysical, as the quantities on the left-hand side are clearly bounded. Thus we impose that the secular terms vanish. This gives

$$2\frac{\partial f}{\partial \tau_1} + 3f\frac{\partial f}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{3}\frac{\partial^3 f}{\partial r^3} = 0,$$

for the right-going wave, and

$$2\frac{\partial g}{\partial \tau_1} - 3g\frac{\partial g}{\partial l} - \frac{1}{3}\frac{\partial^3 g}{\partial l^3} = 0,$$

for the left-going wave. Note that if we had not introduced the slow time scale τ_1 , we would have found two ordinary differential equations, one to be satisfied by f , the other by g . This would determine the profiles f and g up to some arbitrary constants, instead of allowing for general initial conditions. Having introduced the slow time scale τ_1 , we have obtained two PDEs satisfied by f and g . Both are KdV equations. Thus, in their respective frames of reference, both parts of the wave profile are described by a KdV equation which describes how the right- or left-going part of the profile evolves in its moving frame of reference.

4.1.10 The one-soliton solution

The one-soliton solution wave profile for the right- and left-going KdV equations is given by

$$f = \frac{4}{3}a^2 \text{sech}^2 a \left(r - \frac{2}{3}a^2 \tau_1 - x_0 \right), \quad g = \frac{4}{3}a^2 \text{sech}^2 a \left(l + \frac{2}{3}a^2 \tau_1 - x_0 \right),$$

as the reader can easily check. In these formulae, a is a free parameter, determining the amplitude, width and speed of the soliton. The constant x_0 is also a free parameter, determining the initial position of the peak of the soliton. Strictly speaking, the parameters for the right-going soliton (f) and for the left-going one (g) are unrelated. We use the same notation for convenience. More compact,

$$\begin{aligned} g, f &= \frac{4}{3}a^2 \operatorname{sech}^2 a \left(x \pm \tau_0 \pm \frac{2}{3}a^2\tau_1 - x_0 \right) \\ &= \frac{4}{3}a^2 \operatorname{sech}^2 a \left(x - x_0 \pm \left(\tau_0 + \frac{2}{3}a^2\tau_1 \right) \right), \end{aligned}$$

where the $+$ ($-$) sign corresponds to g (f). Returning to dimensional variables, the one-soliton wave profile is

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{4}{3}a^2\epsilon h \operatorname{sech}^2 a \left(\frac{\sqrt{\epsilon}}{h}(x - x_0) \pm \left(\sqrt{\frac{\epsilon g}{h}}t + \frac{2}{3}a^2\epsilon \sqrt{\frac{\epsilon g}{h}}t \right) \right) = \\ \frac{4}{3}(a^2\epsilon)h \operatorname{sech}^2 \left[\frac{a\sqrt{\epsilon}}{h} \left(x - x_0 \pm \sqrt{gh} \left(1 + \frac{2}{3}a^2\epsilon \right) t \right) \right]. \end{aligned}$$

Some comments are in order.

- In all that preceded, ϵ is an arbitrary parameter, introduced as a measure of smallness for both amplitude and $1/\text{wavelength}$. At this point, it is clear that the exact value of ϵ does not matter, as only the combination $a\sqrt{\epsilon}$ shows up, thus ϵ may conveniently be absorbed by a .
- A KdV soliton raises the surface of the water: there is no dip leading or trailing the soliton.
- A KdV soliton moves with a speed slightly higher than the shallow-water wave speed \sqrt{gh} .
- The above conclusions were obtained because we assumed surface tension was a small effect. If surface tension is a major effect (as for instance in thin films), the last two conclusions do not necessarily hold.

The soliton solution for the KdV equation has been compared extensively with water-wave experiments, see [AS81] for an overview, or [HS74, HS78a, HS78b, SH82]. In all cases, good agreement was found with experimental observations.

4.2 Slowly modulated waves: the NLS equation

The derivation of the KdV equation from the water wave equations illustrates all aspects and intricacies of the method of multiple scales, including how complicated and messy it often gets. In this section, we present a derivation of the equally seminal NLS equation, starting from the KdV equation. We use the method of multiple scales, but its application is nowhere near as complicated as before, mainly due to the fact that our starting equation (the KdV equation) is significantly simpler than the Euler equations (4.1).

The NLS equation arises in the study of modulated wave trains in dispersive media. In this section, we derive the equation from the KdV equation: starting from a periodic wave train solution of the KdV equation, we examine the dynamics of wave trains as they experience modulation. Our derivation follows [BC01]. Similar derivations are found in [Abl11, Joh76, Joh97] and elsewhere.

4.2.1 Problem set-up

Small-amplitude waves in dispersive media are governed by the KdV equation, which may be written as

$$u_t = uu_x + u_{xxx}. \quad (4.6)$$

We already know this equation has solitary wave solutions. We will see in Chapter 5 that it has periodic solutions as well. Let us investigate what the dynamics would be of a small-amplitude wave train solution that undergoes a slow modulation. In an application problem, such modulations can be caused by perturbations in material properties, the presence of other signals, *etc.*

4.2.2 The linear dispersion relation and modulated wave packets.

Since the wave trains we examine have small amplitude, we begin by investigating the linearized KdV equation

$$u_t = u_{xxx}.$$

Using what we have learned in Chapter 2, the dispersion relation is

$$\omega(k) = k^3,$$

so that a localized solution on the whole line is written as

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} U(k) e^{ikx - i\omega(k)t} dk, \quad (4.7)$$

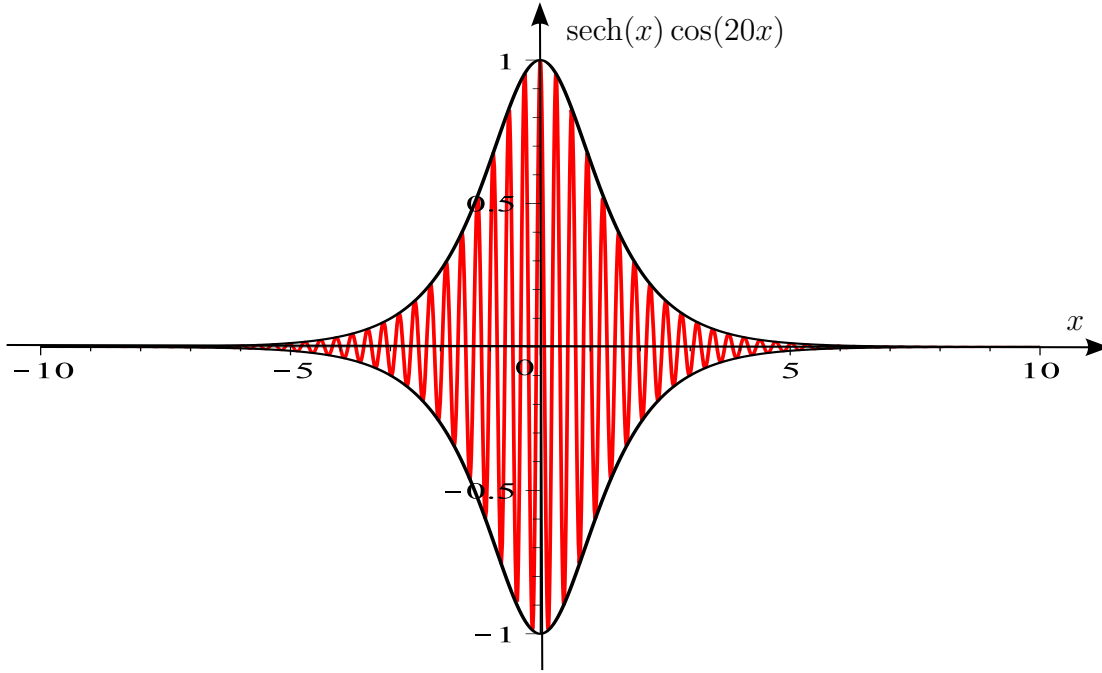


Figure 4.4: A wave packet given by $\text{sech}(x) \cos(20x) = e^{i20x}\text{sech}(x)/2 + e^{-i20x}\text{sech}(x)/2$. Also plotted is its envelope given by $\pm \text{sech}(x)$.

where $U(y)$ is the Fourier transform of the initial condition. This solution can be rewritten using some simple manipulations. Suppose that in Fourier space, the solution is centered around wave number k_0 . In other words, the localized solution (4.7) contains a pronounced component with period $2\pi/k_0$. One way this may occur is if the solution consists of a localized envelope of an underlying “carrier” wave with wave number k_0 . Such a solution is illustrated in Fig. 4.4. Its Fourier transform is displayed in Fig. 4.5.

Assuming a wave-packet-like solution, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 u(x, t) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} U(k) e^{ikx - it(\omega_0 + (k-k_0)\omega'_0 + \tilde{\Omega}(k))} dk \\
 &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} U(k) e^{ik_0x - i\omega_0t + i(k-k_0)(x - i\omega'_0t) - i\tilde{\Omega}(k)t} dk \\
 &= \frac{1}{2\pi} e^{ik_0x - i\omega_0t} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} U(k) e^{i(k-k_0)\xi - i\tilde{\Omega}(k)t} dk \\
 &= \frac{1}{2\pi} e^{ik_0x - i\omega_0t} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} U(k + k_0) e^{ik\xi - i\Omega(k)t} dk \\
 &= e^{ik_0x - i\omega_0t} A(\xi, t),
 \end{aligned} \tag{4.8}$$

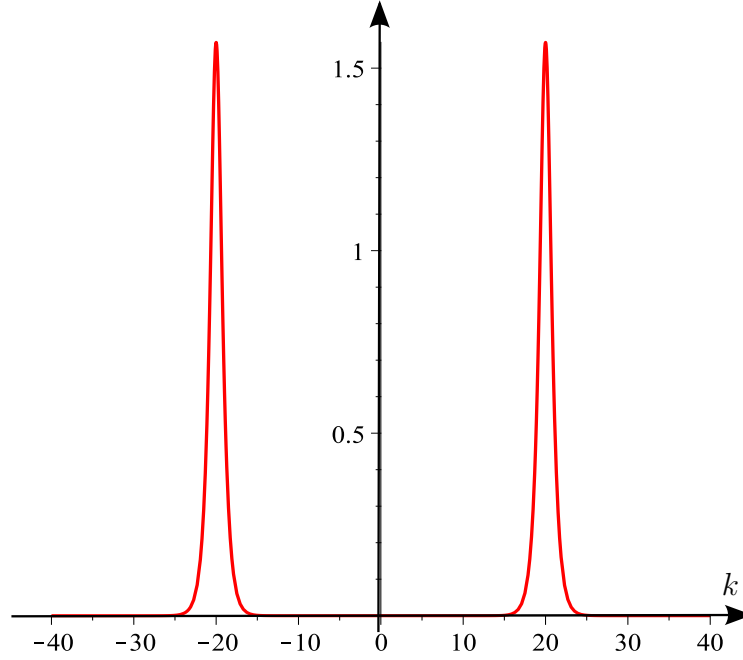


Figure 4.5: The Fourier transform of a wave packet given by $\text{sech}(x) \cos(20x) = e^{i20x} \text{sech}(x)/2 + e^{-i20x} \text{sech}(x)/2$, approximated numerically by computing $\int_{-10}^{10} \text{sech}(x) \cos(20x) \cos(kx) dx$. Note that the Fourier spectrum of this solution has two pronounced peaks at $k_0 = 20$ and at $k_0 = -20$.

where $\omega_0 = \omega(k_0)$, $\omega'_0 = c_g = \omega'(k_0)$, $\tilde{\Omega}(k) = \omega(k) - \omega_0 - (k - k_0)\omega'_0$, and $\Omega(k) = \tilde{\Omega}(k + k_0)$. Finally, the envelope $A(\xi, x)$ is given by

$$A(\xi, t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} U(k + k_0) e^{ik\xi - i\Omega(k)t} dk.$$

For a wave packet solution, we may assume that the dependence of the envelope function $A(\xi, t)$ on its variables is slow in comparison to the dependence of $\exp(ik_0x - i\omega_0t)$ on x and t . Thus, the wave number k_0 and the frequency ω_0 are much higher than any dominant wave number and frequency present in $A(\xi, t)$. We use this in what follows to set up the slow variables for the method of multiple scales. It should be mentioned that to ensure reality of the solution $u(x, t)$, it is necessary to add the complex conjugate to any ansatz of the form (4.8). Indeed, the Fourier transform of a real solution $u(x, t)$ will be peaked at $-k_0$ if it is peaked at k_0 , see also Fig. 4.5.

4.2.3 The perturbation expansion and the slow time scales

Since we are assuming the solutions have small amplitude, we let

$$u = \epsilon u_1 + \epsilon^2 u_2 + \epsilon^3 u_3 + \dots, \quad (4.9)$$

where ϵ is a small parameter. Substituting this in (4.6), we find that u_1 satisfies the linear KdV equation. Assuming a wave packet form with carrier wave number k_0 and carrier wave frequency ω_0 , we let

$$u_1(x, t) = e^{ik_0 x - i\omega_0 t} A(\xi, \tau_2) + c.c., \quad (4.10)$$

where $c.c.$ denotes the complex conjugate of the first term. We will use this notation in what follows: we suppress all terms with negative wave numbers, accounting for them using the $+c.c.$ notation. Note that this does not apply to real terms, all of which are written explicitly. Also, we have introduced the slow envelope variables $\xi = \epsilon(x - c_g t)$ and $\tau_2 = \epsilon^2 t$. Similarly, we could introduce slower time scales $\tau_3 = \epsilon^3 t$, and so on. It turns out that for the derivation of the NLS equation, the introduction of τ_2 suffices. We have already motivated that the envelope functions should depend only on slow variables. This is now made explicit. The presence of the scaling factor ϵ^2 with τ_2 is motivated by our calculations in the previous section: the frequency function $\Omega(k)$ is related to a second-order term in the Taylor expansion of the $\omega(k)$. Allowing $A(\xi, \tau_2)$ to depend also on a time variable $\tau_1 = \epsilon t$ merely results in a redefining of c_g .

With the introduction of the slow variables, we need to replace derivatives using the rules

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} &\rightarrow \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \epsilon \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi}, \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial t} &\rightarrow \frac{\partial}{\partial t} - \epsilon c_g \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} + \epsilon^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau_2} + \dots \end{aligned}$$

4.2.4 Results at consecutive orders

Substituting the perturbation expansion (4.9) in (4.6) and using the derivative replacement rules, we find

$$\begin{aligned} \epsilon u_{1t} + \epsilon^2 u_{2t} + \epsilon^3 u_{3t} - \epsilon^2 c_g u_{1\xi} - \epsilon^3 c_g u_{2\xi} + \epsilon^3 u_{1\tau_2} = \\ \epsilon^2 u_1 u_{1x} + \epsilon^3 u_1 u_{2x} + \epsilon^3 u_1 u_{1\xi} + \epsilon^3 u_2 u_{1x} + \\ \epsilon u_{1xxx} + \epsilon^2 u_{2xxx} + \epsilon^3 u_{3xxx} + 3\epsilon^2 u_{1\xi xx} + 3\epsilon^3 u_{2\xi xx} + 3\epsilon^3 u_{1\xi \xi x} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^4). \end{aligned}$$

Here the different lines of the equation correspond to the different terms in (4.6).

Results at order ϵ

Collecting all coefficients of ϵ , we find $u_{1t} - u_{1xxx} = 0$, as expected. Substitution of (4.10) gives $\omega_0 = k_0^3$, confirming the dispersion relationship.

Results at order ϵ^2

At second order in ϵ , we find

$$u_{2t} - u_{2xxx} = c_g u_{1\xi} + u_1 u_{1x} + 3u_{1\xi xx}.$$

Substituting of (4.10) gives

$$\begin{aligned} u_{2t} - u_{2xxx} &= c_g (e^{ik_0 x - i\omega_0 t} A_\xi + c.c.) + (e^{ik_0 x - i\omega_0 t} A + c.c.) (ik_0 e^{ik_0 x - i\omega_0 t} A + c.c.) + \\ &\quad (3(ik_0)^2 e^{ik_0 x - i\omega_0 t} + c.c.) \\ &= (c_g - 3k_0^2) e^{ik_0 x - i\omega_0 t} A_\xi + ik_0 e^{2ik_0 x - 2i\omega_0 t} A^2 + c.c.. \end{aligned}$$

Note that $e^{ik_0 x - i\omega_0 t}$ is in the kernel of the left-hand side. Thus the first term on the right should be eliminated to avoid secular terms in u_2 that grow linearly in x and t . This results in the requirement $c_g = 3k_0^2$, another confirmation of the dispersion relation. We are left with

$$u_{2t} - u_{2xxx} = ik_0 e^{2ik_0 x - 2i\omega_0 t} A^2 + c.c.. \quad (4.11)$$

Using the method of undetermined coefficients, we let

$$u_2 = e^{2ik_0 x - 2i\omega_0 t} B(\xi, \tau_2) + c.c. + C(\xi, \tau_2).$$

The equation (4.11) for u_2 imposes no conditions on the slow function $C(\xi, \tau_2)$. The function $C(\xi, \tau_2)$ may be chosen to be real, since u_2 is real and $C(\xi, \tau_2)$ does not multiply any factors of $e^{ik_0 x - i\omega_0 t}$. We find for $B(\xi, \tau_2)$ that

$$B(\xi, \tau_2) = \frac{1}{6k_0^2} A^2,$$

so that

$$u_2 = \frac{1}{6k_0^2} e^{2ik_0 x - 2i\omega_0 t} A^2(\xi, \tau_2) + c.c. + C(\xi, \tau_2). \quad (4.12)$$

It is clear that our expansion method fails if $k_0 = 0$, but this is to be expected. Our expansion method assumes that k_0 is a high wave number, in comparison to any other wave numbers involved.

Results at order ϵ^3

At third order in ϵ , we find

$$u_{3t} - u_{3xxx} = c_g u_{2\xi} - u_{1\tau_2} + u_1 u_{2x} + u_1 u_{1\xi} + u_2 u_{1x} + 3u_{2\xi xx} + 3u_{1\xi \xi x}.$$

Next, we substitute the expressions for u_1 (4.10) and for u_2 (4.12). This results in a right-hand side which contains terms with $\exp(ik_0 x - i\omega_0 t)$, $\exp(2ik_0 x - 2i\omega_0 t)$, $\exp(3ik_0 x - 3i\omega_0 t)$, and their complex conjugates. There are also a few terms which depend only on the slow variables. As before, all terms in the kernel of the left-hand side should be made to vanish, to avoid secular growth in u_3 . Thus, the terms only depending on the slow variables, and the coefficients of $\exp(ik_0 x - i\omega_0 t)$ and $\exp(-ik_0 x + i\omega_0 t)$ must be equated to zero.

First, we investigate the slow-variable term. It is given by

$$\begin{aligned} & 3k_0^2 C_\xi + AA_\xi^* + A^* A_\xi = 0 \\ \Rightarrow & 3k_0^2 C_\xi + (|A|^2)_\xi = 0 \\ \Rightarrow & 3k_0^2 C + |A|^2 = \tilde{D}(\tau_2), \end{aligned}$$

so that

$$C(\xi, \tau_2) = -\frac{1}{3k_0^2} |A|^2 + D(\tau_2), \quad (4.13)$$

where $D(\tau_2) = \tilde{D}(\tau_2)/3k_0^2$.

The coefficient of $\exp(ik_0 x - i\omega_0 t)$ is given by

$$-A_{\tau_2} + \frac{i}{6k_0} |A|^2 A + 3ik_0 A_{\xi\xi} + ik_0 AC = 0,$$

which results in

$$(i\partial_{\tau_2} + k_0 D)A = -3k_0 A_{\xi\xi} + \frac{1}{6k_0} |A|^2 A,$$

upon using (4.13). The coefficient of $\exp(-ik_0 x + i\omega_0 t)$ gives the complex conjugate equation, of course. The equation we have obtained is almost the NLS equation. Equating

$$A(\xi, \tau_2) = a(\xi, \tau_2) e^{ik_0 \int D d\tau_2}$$

gives

$$ia_{\tau_2} = -3k_0 a_{\xi\xi} + \frac{1}{6k_0} |a|^2 a, \quad (4.14)$$

the NLS equation! Because the sign of the ratio of the coefficient of the dispersive term (the first term on the right-hand side) to the coefficient of the nonlinear term is always

negative, the equation is known as the *defocusing* NLS equation. The reader should convince her/himself that this cannot be altered: no matter which coefficients are used in the KdV equation, the resulting NLS equation is always of defocusing type, see Problem 4.3 on Page 93.

4.2.5 Defocusing *vs.* focusing

In general, we may write the NLS equation as

$$ia_t = -a_{xx} + \sigma|a|^2a, \quad (4.15)$$

where $\sigma = \pm 1$. By scaling both the independent and the dependent variables, the size of the coefficients of the different terms in the equation is arbitrary, but the sign of the ratio of the two terms on the right-hand side cannot be changed. This is encoded in σ . The second-derivative term is the dispersive term. If the dispersive term and the nonlinear term have the same sign, the equation is of focusing type. Otherwise it is of defocusing type. This nomenclature originates in nonlinear optics where the different equation gives rise to light bundles that are either focusing or spreading out (defocusing), depending on the nature of the material [MN04]. In the context of Bose-Einstein condensates, the equations are referred to instead as attractive or repulsive, respectively [PS08].

Using ideas from quantum mechanics [Mer97], a heuristic explanation can be given for the different behavior exhibited by the defocusing and the focusing equation. Let us rewrite (4.15) suggestively as

$$ia_t = -a_{xx} + V a.$$

This equation is similar to the linear Schrödinger equation with inter-particle potential given by $V = \sigma|a|^2$. Suppose that the solution of the NLS equation is a localized envelope. Then the potential V looks like the profile displayed in Fig. 4.6a for $\sigma = 1$ (defocusing) or Fig. 4.6b for $\sigma = -1$ (focusing). Thus, for the defocusing equation the “potential” the wave function a experiences is positive, leading to a repulsive interaction: particles with this type of interaction try to maximize the interparticle distance, leading to a phenomenon of defocusing. For the focusing equation, this “potential” is negative, and particles experience a potential well, leading to an attractive interaction among particles. All particle positions seek to line up with the center of the well, leading to a focusing phenomenon.

Remarks.

- The NLS equation is sometimes referred to as the Gross-Pitaevski equation, after Gross [Gro61] and Pitaevski [Pit61] who derived the equation in the context of Bose-Einstein condensation in 1961. This is 7 years prior to Zakharov’s derivation in the context of deep water waves. It should be emphasized that the context of Bose-Einstein condensation is the one application where the equation does not describe the modulation of a

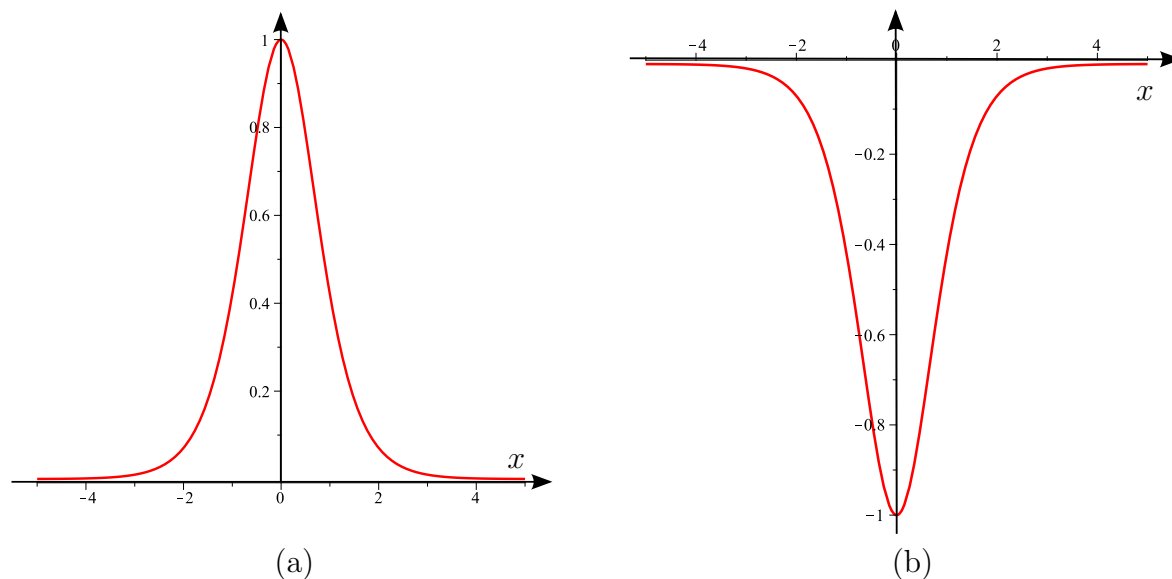


Figure 4.6: (a) The repulsive potential $|a|^2$ for a localized solution a . (b) The attractive potential $-|a|^2$ for a localized solution a .

wave train. Instead, it arises from a Hartree-Fock mean-field approximation (see, for instance, [Mer97]) to the many-particle linear Schrödinger equation [Gro61, Pit61].

- The NLS equation has been derived in a plethora of application fields. A few prominent examples are: (a) Waves in deep water: such waves are susceptible to the so-called Benjamin-Feir instability [Ben67, BF67, Whi67]. The NLS equation describes the evolution of this instability, past its linear onset [Zak68]. (b) In plasma physics, the equation is used to describe so-called Langmuir waves, among many other phenomena [IR00]. (c) In nonlinear optics, it describes the propagation of localized wave packets in χ_3 materials [Has90, MN04]. (d) As mentioned above, it describes the mean-field dynamics of the ground-state of a Bose-Einstein condensate [Gro61, Pit61].
- The equation can also be derived in applications where multiple space dimensions enter the picture. In that case the dispersive term is replaced by either a Laplacian in the appropriate number of dimensions, or by a hyperbolic operator (*e.g.*, two-dimensional waves in deep water [DR77], depending on the magnitude of surface tension). Many interesting new issues require further study at this point. The investigation of so-called collapse and blow-up of a wave packet has been of especially great interest. An overview of the rich literature is presented by Sulem & Sulem [SS99].

4.2.6 The one-soliton solution

In this section we examine the qualitative aspects of the soliton solutions of both the defocusing and the focusing NLS equation. The derivation of some of these results is left as an exercise to the reader, see Problem 5.2 on Page 154. We begin with the soliton solution of the focusing NLS equation.

The bright soliton

The reader should verify that

$$a(x, t) = \sqrt{2} k e^{i\theta + irx + i(k^2 - r^2)t} \operatorname{sech} k(x - x_0 - 2rt)$$

satisfies (4.15) with $\sigma = -1$. It is referred to as the *bright soliton* solution of the focusing NLS equation. It consists of a complex oscillation modulated by a sech envelope. The different parameters correspond to different characteristic properties of the soliton. All of these parameters are assumed to be real.

- The parameter x_0 determines the location of the peak of the envelope at $t = 0$.
- The parameter r determines the velocity $2r$ of the peak of the envelope.
- The parameter k determines both the amplitude $\sqrt{2}k$ of the soliton and its width.
- Lastly, the parameter θ gives rise to a constant phase shift.

Often, the physically important quantity is the function $u_1 = a \exp(ik_0x - i\omega_0t) + c.c. = \operatorname{Re}(a \exp(ik_0x - i\omega_0t))$, as we have learned from the derivation leading to (4.15). It appears that the parameters r and, to a lesser extent, k , can be used to tune the carrier wave number k_0 and frequency ω_0 . Sometimes, only the so-called intensity of the soliton solution is considered. This is

$$I(x, t) = |a(x, t)|^2 = 2k^2 \operatorname{sech}^2 k(x - x_0 - 2rt).$$

The intensity of the bright soliton is illustrated in Fig. 4.7. In the context of nonlinear optics, this appears as a bright spot on a dark background [HT73, MS82].

Dark and grey solitons

If $\sigma = 1$, then

$$a(x, t) = \sqrt{2} k e^{i\theta + irx - i(k^2 - r^2)t} \tanh k(x - x_0 - 2rt)$$

is a solution of the NLS equation. This solution is referred to as a *dark soliton*. The reason for this is that the intensity $I = |a|^2$ is given by

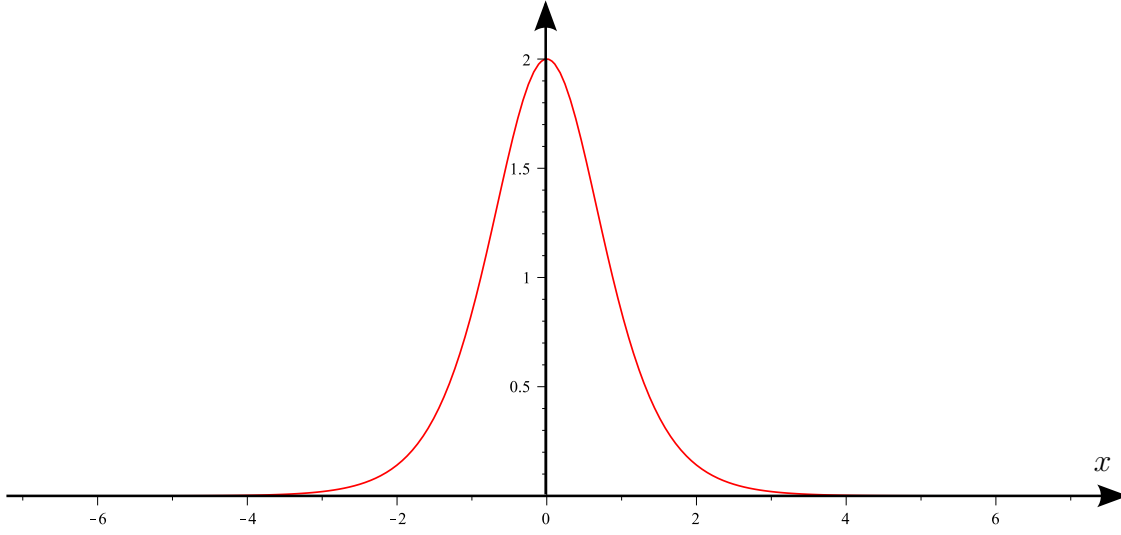


Figure 4.7: The intensity of a bright soliton with $x_0 = 0$, $k = 1$, $r = 0$, and $\theta = 0$, evaluated at $t = 0$.

$$I(x, t) = 2k^2 \tanh^2 k(x - x_0 - 2rt) = 2k^2(1 - \operatorname{sech}^2 k(x - x_0 - 2rt)).$$

Thus, the intensity of the dark soliton is visible as a “dark” spot on a bright background. In the context of nonlinear optics, this requires fibers to be flooded with light, while the dark solitons travel back and forth. For this and other reasons dark solitons are not considered much in optical fiber communications, but they have been observed [EPF⁺87]. The intensity of the dark soliton is displayed in Fig. 4.8. The solution parameters have similar meanings as for the bright soliton.

The dark soliton is often referred to as a *topological soliton*, because it cannot be interpreted as a perturbation of its background, unlike the bright soliton. Indeed, the bright soliton appears as a localized disturbance to its background state: far away from the peak of the bright soliton, the background state appears completely unperturbed. The envelope of the dark soliton has different limiting values as $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$, as illustrated in Fig. 4.9. Thus, the presence of a dark soliton imparts a large, non-localized effect on its surroundings. The use of the word “topological” refers to the fact that the dark soliton changes the space it is present in. In this sense, the dark soliton does not fit our original make-shift definition of a soliton on Page 2. As stated there, we will change this definition as necessary. Various more precise definitions will be given in later chapters.

In addition to the dark soliton solution, the defocusing NLS has other topological soliton solutions, known as the *grey solitons*. Their intensity is given by

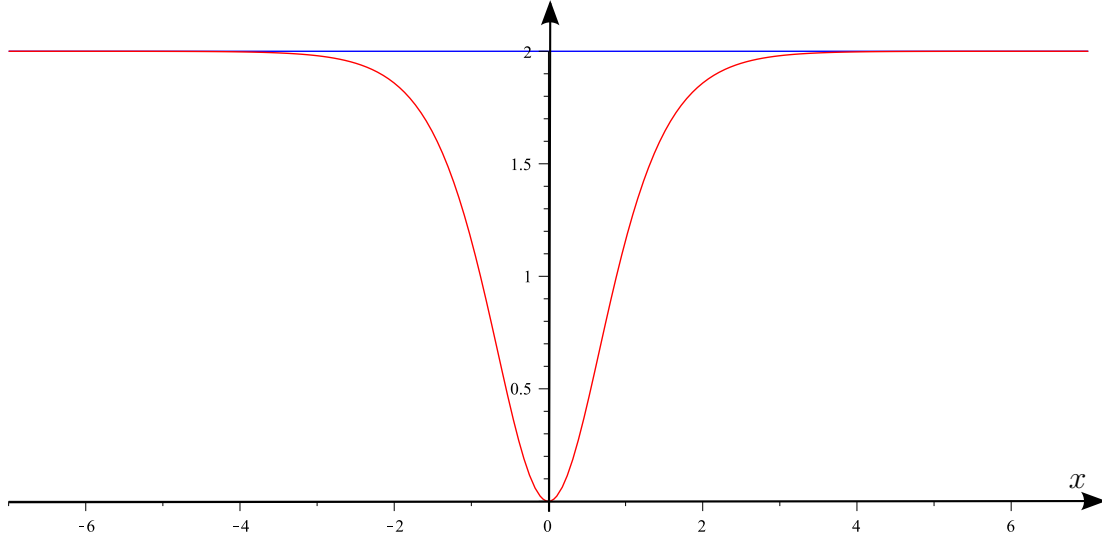


Figure 4.8: The intensity $I(x, t)$ of a dark soliton (red) on a blue background, with $x_0 = 0$, $k = 1$, $r = 0$, and $\theta = 0$, evaluated at $t = 0$.

$$I(x, t) = |a(x, t)|^2 = 2k^2(\tanh^2 k(x - x_0 - 2rt) + B) = 2k^2(B + 1 - \operatorname{sech}^2 k(x - x_0 - 2rt)),$$

where B is a positive parameter. Because of the presence of this parameter, the intensity does not dip down to 0 at $t = 0$ and $x = x_0$. In other words, the dark soliton still appears as a darker spot, compared to its bright background, but the intensity at its darkest point does not vanish. This is illustrated in Fig. 4.10. Clearly, the dark soliton is a special case of the grey solitons, obtained for $B = 0$. The explicit solution formula for the grey soliton $a(x, t)$ is more complicated than any of the other solutions previously mentioned and we omit it here.

4.3 Exercises

- 4.1. **The KdV equation for ion-acoustic waves in plasmas.** Ion-acoustic waves are low-frequency electrostatic waves in a plasma consisting of electrons and ions. We consider the case with a single ion species.

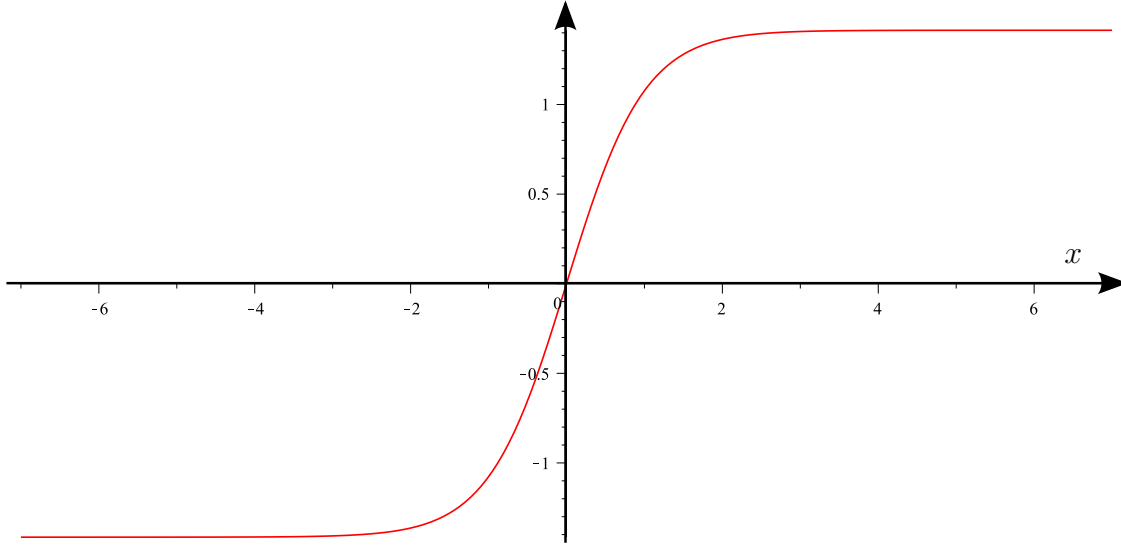


Figure 4.9: The envelope $\sqrt{2}k \tanh k(x - x_0 - 2rt)$ of a dark soliton with $x_0 = 0$, $k = 1$, and $r = 0$, evaluated at $t = 0$.

Consider the following system of one-dimensional equations

$$\begin{cases} \frac{\partial n}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial}{\partial z}(nv) = 0 \\ \frac{\partial v}{\partial t} + v \frac{\partial v}{\partial z} = -\frac{e}{m} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial z} \\ \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial z^2} = \frac{e}{\varepsilon_0} \left[N_0 \exp\left(\frac{e\phi}{\kappa T_e}\right) - n \right] \end{cases}.$$

Here n denotes the ion density, v is the ion velocity, e is the electron charge, m is the mass of an ion, ϕ is the electrostatic potential, ε_0 is the vacuum permittivity, N_0 is the equilibrium density of the ions, κ is Boltzmann's constant, and T_e is the electron temperature.

- (a) Verify that $c_s = \sqrt{\frac{\kappa T_e}{m}}$, $\lambda_{De} = \sqrt{\frac{\varepsilon_0 \kappa T_e}{N_0 e^2}}$, and $\omega_{pi} = \sqrt{\frac{N_0 e^2}{\varepsilon_0 m}}$ have dimensions of velocity, length and frequency, respectively. These quantities are known as the ion acoustic speed, the Debye wavelength for the electrons, and the ion plasma frequency.
- (b) Nondimensionalize the above system, using

$$n = N_0 n^*, \quad v = c_s v^*, \quad z = \lambda_{De} z^*, \quad t = \frac{t^*}{\omega_{pi}}, \quad \phi = \frac{\kappa T_e}{e} \phi^*.$$

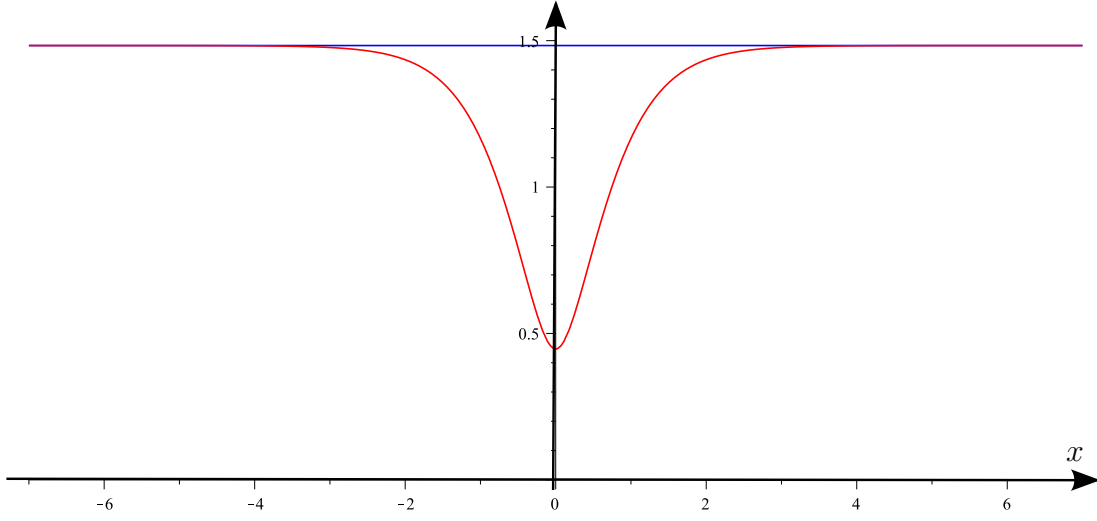


Figure 4.10: The intensity $I(x, t)$ of a grey soliton with $x_0 = 0$, $k = 1$, and $r = 0$, evaluated at $t = 0$.

(c) You have obtained the system

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \frac{\partial n}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial}{\partial z}(nv) = 0 \\ \frac{\partial v}{\partial t} + v \frac{\partial v}{\partial z} = -\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial z} \\ \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial z^2} = e^\phi - n \end{array} \right.$$

for the dimensionless variables. Note that we have dropped the $*$'s, to ease the notation. Find the linear dispersion relation for this system, linearized around the trivial solution $n = 1$, $v = 0$, and $\phi = 0$.

(d) Rewrite the system using the “stretched variables”

$$\xi = \epsilon^{1/2}(z - t), \quad \tau = \epsilon^{3/2}t.$$

Given that we are looking for low-frequency waves, explain how these variables are inspired by the dispersion relation.

(e) Expand the dependent variables as

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} n = 1 + \epsilon n_1 + \epsilon^2 n_2 + \dots, \\ v = \epsilon v_1 + \epsilon^2 v_2 + \dots, \\ \phi = \epsilon \phi_1 + \epsilon^2 \phi_2 + \dots \end{array} \right.$$

Using that all disturbances return to their equilibrium values as $\xi \rightarrow \pm\infty$, $\tau \rightarrow \infty$, find a governing equation which determines how ϕ_1 depends on ξ and τ .

- 4.2. While deriving the KdV equation from the water-wave problem, we assumed that $x \in \mathbb{R}$, and that $u \rightarrow \text{constant}$ as $|x| \rightarrow \infty$. Similarly, it was assumed that all the spatial derivatives of u approached zero as $|x| \rightarrow \infty$. Suppose that, instead, we have periodic boundary conditions. What changes? Can you still derive the KdV equation?
- 4.3. Consider the KdV equation:

$$u_t = au^p u_x + bu_{xxx}.$$

Here a and b are real, constant coefficients, and p is an integer greater than one. Using the same scalings as in Section 4.2, show that the NLS equation governing the dynamics of modulated wave trains of this equation is always of defocusing type.

- 4.4. **Obtaining the KdV equation from the NLS equation.** We have shown that the NLS equation may be used to describe the slow modulation of periodic wave trains of the KdV equation. In this problem we show that the KdV equation describes the dynamics of long-wave solutions of the NLS equation. We follow the derivation presented in [ÖT09].

Consider the defocusing NLS equation

$$ia_t = -a_{xx} + |a|^2 a.$$

- (a) Let

$$a(x, t) = e^{i \int V dx} \rho^{1/2}.$$

Derive a system of equations for the phase function $V(x, t)$ and for the amplitude function $\rho(x, t)$, by substituting this form of $a(x, t)$ in the NLS equation, dividing out the exponential, and separating real and imaginary parts. Write your equations in the form $\rho_t = \dots$, and $V_t = \dots$. Due to their similarity with the equations of hydrodynamics, this new form of the NLS equation is referred to as its *hydrodynamic form*.

- (b) Find the linear dispersion relation for the hydrodynamic form of the defocusing NLS equation, linearized around the trivial solution $V = 0$, $\rho = 1$. In other words, we are examining perturbations of the so-called Stokes wave solution of the NLS equation, which is given by a signal of constant amplitude.
- (c) Rewrite the system using the “stretched variables”

$$\xi = \epsilon(x - \beta t), \quad \tau = \epsilon^3 t.$$

Given that we are looking for long waves, explain how these variables are inspired by the dispersion relation. What should the value of β be?

(d) Expand the dependent variables as

$$\begin{cases} V &= \epsilon^2 V_1 + \epsilon^4 V_2 + \dots, \\ \rho &= 1 + \epsilon^2 \rho_1 + \epsilon^4 \rho_2 + \dots. \end{cases}$$

Using that all disturbances return to their equilibrium values as $\xi \rightarrow \pm\infty$, $\tau \rightarrow \infty$, find a governing equation which determines how V_1 depends on ξ and τ . This equation should be equivalent to the KdV equation.

4.5. Consider the previous problem, but with the focusing NLS equation

$$ia_t = -a_{xx} - |a|^2 a.$$

The method presented in the previous problem does not allow one to describe the dynamics of long-wave solutions of the focusing NLS equation using the KdV equation. How does this show up in the calculations?

Chapter 5

Special solutions of one-dimensional nonlinear partial differential equations

The equations we are interested in are nonlinear. The problem we really want to solve is typically posed as an initial- or initial-boundary-value problem, on some domain. Given how complicated nonlinear wave equations are, the solution of these initial- and boundary-value problems is not usually obtainable. Instead, often we focus our attention on whatever special solutions we can find.

In this chapter we examine methods, mostly analytical, some numerical, qualitative and quantitative, to find special solutions of nonlinear wave equations. The most sophisticated of the analytical methods presented is the method of Lie symmetries. Before we examine this method in some generality, we look in great detail at the most important solutions obtained using this method, the so-called traveling waves. Next, we investigate scaling symmetries, and the similarity solutions they give rise to. A brief glimpse of Lie point-symmetry methods follows, using lots of examples. We also illustrate techniques, if they can be called this, for constructing explicit solution formulas for solitary wave or soliton solutions, or for periodic solutions, in terms of elliptic functions. We briefly discuss the algorithm of Conte and Musette [CM08] for constructing *all* elliptic solutions of a given traveling-wave reduction of a nonlinear PDE. Lastly, we discuss a few numerical methods to construct special solutions. Two of these are iterative methods, due to Lakoba, Yang and others [Yan10]. Another one is the use of numerical continuation methods for constructing special solutions and bifurcation diagrams associated with them: as special solutions bifurcate away from trivial solutions (like the zero solution) their different solution parameters (*e.g.*, amplitude, speed, period, width, *etc.*) depend on each other. These relationships may be used to trace bifurcation curves along which numerical continuation methods [AG03] may be used to compute nontrivial solutions.

It should be emphasized that the most popular method for finding special solutions of nonlinear wave equations is *guessing*: one starts from an ansatz for the solution which incorporates a number of free functions or parameters. This ansatz is substituted in the

equation, which results in a system of equations for the functions or parameters in the ansatz. Presumably, this system of equations is simpler to solve than the original equation. The solution of these equations results in special solutions of our originating nonlinear wave equation. The benefit of such an approach to construct special solutions is that it is often fast, and requires limited work. On the other hand, the significance of the class of solutions constructed is typically not clear. All that is guaranteed is that all solutions consistent with the ansatz have been found. Whether the ansatz allows one to find all solutions of a given problem in a certain larger class, or only a few, *etc*, is usually unclear. We illustrate a few ansatz approaches below.

Let me to begin the chapter by sharing a secret: whenever we solve PDEs analytically, we always reduce the problem to solving ordinary differential equations. If the equation we are solving is linear with constant coefficients and has simple boundary conditions [GL96, Hab87, Olv14], we attempt to do this using separation of variables. This reduces the problem to that of solving an infinite set of decoupled ordinary differential equations. The outcome of this procedure is a set of so-called fundamental solutions of our partial differential equation. What are these good for? Since the equation is linear, we can construct more general solutions by superposition of the fundamental solutions. This is especially useful if the set of fundamental solutions is complete in some suitable function space, like the square-integrable functions. In that case the superposition constitutes the general solution of the partial differential equation within that function space.

If the partial differential equation at hand is nonlinear, special solutions no longer play the role of fundamental solutions, since superposition no longer results in more general solutions. So why should we care about getting exact solutions?

- The analysis of exact solutions should result in a better understanding of the partial differential equation. Each exact solution tells us something about the dynamics of the differential equation, even if that dynamics is trivial. In fact, that may be the most important case. To see this, think about finite-dimensional dynamical systems,

$$\frac{du}{dt} = F(u),$$

where u is a vector function. In this case, a major role is played by the fixed points of this system, for which $F(u) = 0$. The same is true in our setting, with the difference that our phase space is infinite dimensional.

- If we resort to solving the nonlinear equation numerically, we need to ensure that our numerical method is producing reliable results. The goal is not only to check the numerical algorithm used, but even more to check our implementation of it. Exact solutions provide an excellent check for any numerical solver.

- Even though superposition no longer applies, the special solutions we construct may still serve as the building blocks of a nonlinear theory. For instance, in many cases, the long-time behavior of solutions of the PDE may be described asymptotically by different exact solutions. For many equations this is true for the soliton solutions, for instance. The similarity solutions obtained using the scaling transformations may play a similar role, perhaps for a different range of x values. We will have more to say about this later.

5.1 Traveling wave solutions

Our visual perception is very good at isolating features of patterns that do not change. Thus, if the solution of a PDE contains features with a shape that is invariant under the dynamics, it jumps out at us. This is the case with the solitons that we have already seen. The periodic patterns in Fig. 4.3 provide another example. Such invariant shapes might be described by special solutions of the partial differential equation. These special solutions are the traveling wave or stationary solutions. Traveling wave or stationary solutions of an equation are defined to be solutions that are stationary in some frame of reference that is moving with constant velocity v with respect to the original frame of reference. Thus

$$u(x, t) = U(x - vt) = U(z),$$

where $z = x - vt$, and v is constant. This ansatz does indeed state that we are looking for solutions whose shape does not change in time, if we put ourselves in a suitably moving coordinate frame¹.

Here is the general idea: let

$$u_t = N(u, u_x, u_{xx}, \dots) \tag{5.1}$$

be some nonlinear partial differential equation. Thus $N(u, u_x, \dots)$ is a nonlinear function of u and its x -derivatives. Substituting our traveling wave ansatz into the original PDE gives

$$-vU' = N(U, U', U'', \dots),$$

which is an ODE for $U(z)$. All solutions of this ODE are traveling wave solutions of the PDE. Not all of these solutions are of interest to us: they may not satisfy the conditions (boundary, initial or other) that we may want them to satisfy. For instance, we may impose that our solutions remain bounded in some sense for all x and t .

In this section, we examine the ODE from different points of view. We use techniques familiar from physics and differential equations. At the end, we will have achieved an understanding of how the soliton solutions fit into a larger class of stationary solutions. Few

¹Generalizations of this ansatz are possible: we could look for solutions that have a traveling envelope, but a more complicated phase profile, *etc.* Exercise 5.3 on Page 154 provides an example.

issues in this section will be dealt with in all generality. For most, we restrict ourselves to classes of examples.

5.1.1 The energy integral approach

Let us consider the class of examples

$$4u_t = 6u^p u_x + u_{xxx}, \quad (5.2)$$

for $p = 0, 1, 2, \dots$. The $p = 0$ case corresponds to a linear equation and is not very interesting. Stationary solutions satisfy

$$-4vU' = 6U^p U' + U''''.$$

This equation may be integrated once to obtain

$$-4vU = \frac{6}{p+1}U^{p+1} + U'' + \alpha, \quad (5.3)$$

where α is an integration constant. We will come back to this equation when we use phase plane analysis to examine the qualitative behavior of our solutions. Multiplying by U' , we obtain an equation that may be integrated once more:

$$\begin{aligned} -4vUU' &= \frac{6}{p+1}U^{p+1}U' + U''U' + \alpha U' \\ \Rightarrow \quad -2vU^2 &= \frac{6}{(p+1)(p+2)}U^{p+2} + \frac{1}{2}U'^2 + \alpha U - \beta, \end{aligned} \quad (5.4)$$

where β is a second integration constant. This equation is rewritten as

$$\frac{1}{2}U'^2 + V(U; v, \alpha) = \beta, \quad (5.5)$$

where

$$V(U; v, \alpha) = \frac{6}{(p+1)(p+2)}U^{p+2} + 2vU^2 + \alpha U.$$

The above equation is the equation of conservation of energy for the motion of a particle with unit mass under the influence of a conservative force, whose potential is given by $V(U; v, \alpha)$ [Gol80]. The first term of the energy equation denotes the kinetic energy, the second one the potential energy. The right-hand side denotes the constant total energy. From this simple analogy, many conclusions may be drawn. For starters, if $p = 0$ then V is a quadratic function of U and in essence we are solving the harmonic oscillator, with its trigonometric solutions.

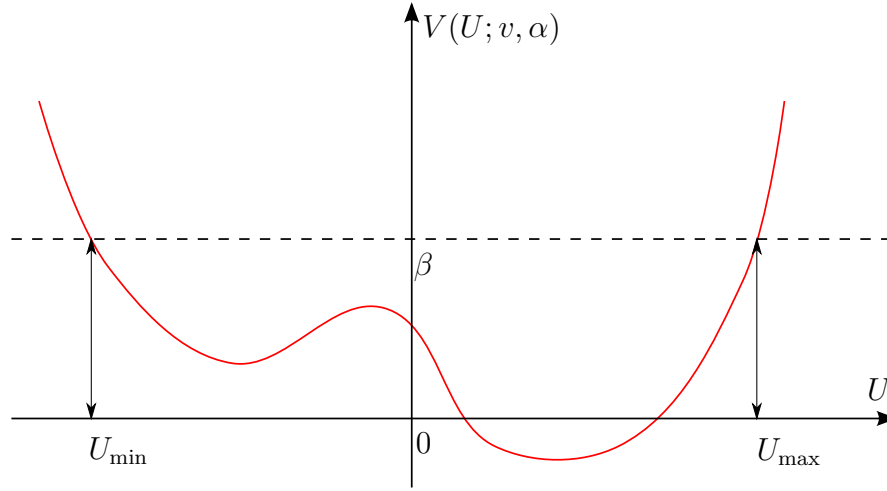


Figure 5.1: A cartoon of the potential $V(U; v, \alpha)$ with p even. Here the total energy was chosen to give rise to periodic solutions.

- **p even.**

If p is even then $V \rightarrow \infty$ as $U \rightarrow \pm\infty$. The potential looks like indicated in Figs. 5.1 and 5.2. In order to have real-valued solutions, it is necessary that the kinetic energy is positive. Since the kinetic energy is the difference between the total energy and the potential energy, this requires a sufficiently high value of β . If β is chosen sufficiently high (above the minimum value of the potential), it follows that real-valued solutions exist, and that these are bounded: $U_{\min} < U < U_{\max}$.

More can be said. The “time” (in z , thus x , or up to a multiplicative constant t , in terms of the original variables) it takes U to travel from $U_{\max} = U(z_2)$ to $U_{\min} = U(z_1)$ is given by (solving the separable ordinary differential equation (5.5)):

$$z_2 - z_1 = \int_{U_{\min}}^{U_{\max}} \frac{dU}{\sqrt{2(\beta - V(U; v, \alpha))}}.$$

The integral on the right-hand side is singular, as $V(U; v, \alpha) = \beta$ at both U_{\min} and U_{\max} . If the equation $V(U; v, \alpha) = \beta$ has simple roots at both U_{\min} and U_{\max} (as is the case in Fig. 5.1), both singularities are square-root singularities. Square-root singularities are integrable and the resulting $z_2 - z_1$ is finite. This is the case of periodic solutions, and $z_2 - z_1$ is half the period of the solution.

On the other hand, if $V(U; v, \alpha) = \beta_s$ has at least a double root (as is the case in Fig. 5.2), the corresponding singularity is not integrable and the resulting $z_2 - z_1$ is infinite. This corresponds to the solitary wave case. In the case of Fig. 5.2, the choice of

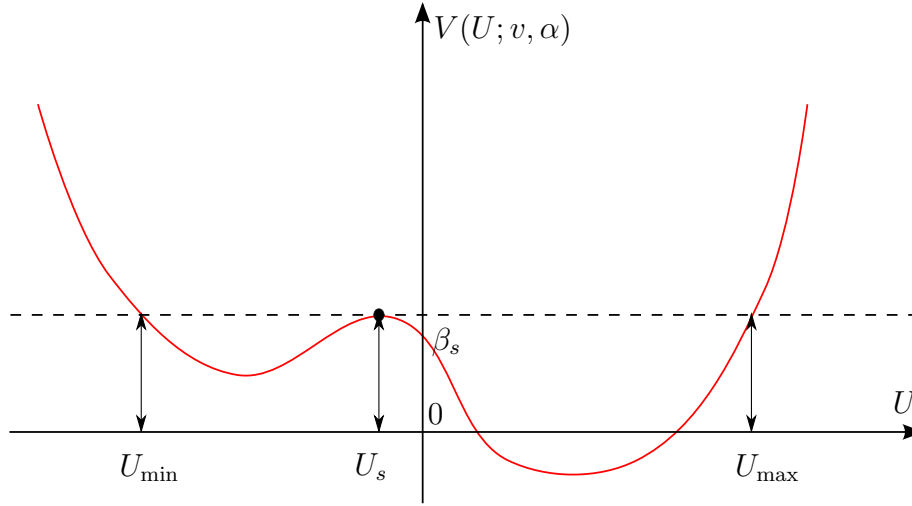


Figure 5.2: A cartoon of the potential $V(U; v, \alpha)$ with p even. Here the total energy was chosen so as to obtain a solitary wave solution.

$\beta = \beta_s$ gives rise to two solution classes: an elevation solitary wave with $U \in (U_s, U_{\max}]$ and a depression solitary wave with $U \in [U_{\min}, U_s]$. This simple argument validates the often made statement that solitons are limits of periodic solutions of integrable systems where the period has limited to infinity.

If the value of β is lowered below β_s , the cartoon of Fig. 5.2 gives rise to two distinct families of periodic solutions, one for each well of the potential $V(U; v, \alpha)$. As the value of β is lowered and approaches the minimum of the well, the amplitude of the periodic solution shrinks to zero, until it degenerates to a constant solution.

- **p odd**

If p is odd then $V \rightarrow \infty$ as $U \rightarrow \infty$ and $V \rightarrow -\infty$ as $U \rightarrow -\infty$. The potential looks like indicated in Figs. 5.3 and 5.4 below. It is clear that for all values of β real-valued solutions exist, but it is not immediately clear whether any bounded real-valued solutions exist. If the potential is monotone as in Fig. 5.3, there is no value of β for which bounded solutions exist.

On the other hand, if the potential is not monotone and has one or more local minimum, bounded solutions exist for values of β slightly above local minimum values of the potential, as indicated in Fig. 5.4. In that case, solitons may be found at the edge of the region of existence of such bounded solutions, namely at energy levels β_s which pass through the local maximum (or maxima) adjacent to the local minimum. For instance, in Fig. 5.4, $\beta = \beta_s$ gives rise to a family of elevation solitary waves.

From the potential energy picture, it follows that equilibrium solutions must satisfy

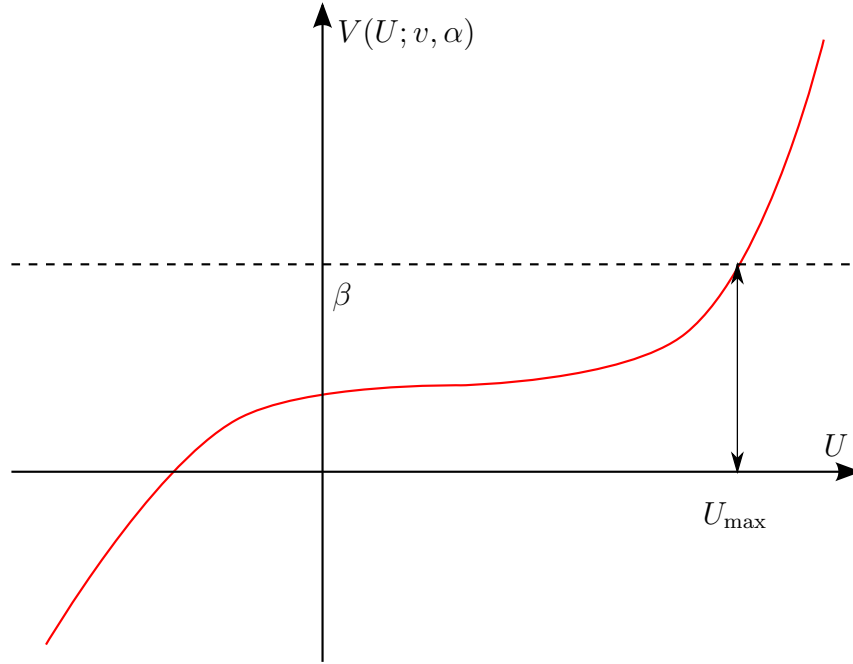


Figure 5.3: A cartoon of the potential $V(U; v, \alpha)$ with p odd. In this case, no bounded solutions exist, no matter the value of β .

$V'(U; v, \alpha) = 0$. Thus such equilibrium solutions are found at the local minima or maxima of the potential. The ones at the minima are stable within the class of stationary solutions, whereas the equilibrium solutions at the maxima are unstable. Looking ahead at the phase plane analysis, we conclude that since energy is conserved, the only type of non-degenerate equilibrium points that can occur are either centers (stable) or saddles (unstable).

The potential energy picture, although limited to specific systems, is quite powerful when it can be applied. An excellent example of its use can be found in [HKB89], where the stationary solutions of the derivative NLS (DNLS) equation

$$b_t + (|b|^2 b)_z + i b_{zz} = 0 \quad (5.6)$$

are examined, see Exercise 5.3. This equation describes, among other phenomena, the propagation of Alfvén (*i.e.*, low-frequency electromagnetic) waves in magnetized plasmas [Che83].

5.1.2 Phase plane analysis

To use phase plane analysis, we return to (5.3). This equation is rewritten as

$$U'' = -\frac{\partial V}{\partial U}(U; v, \alpha).$$

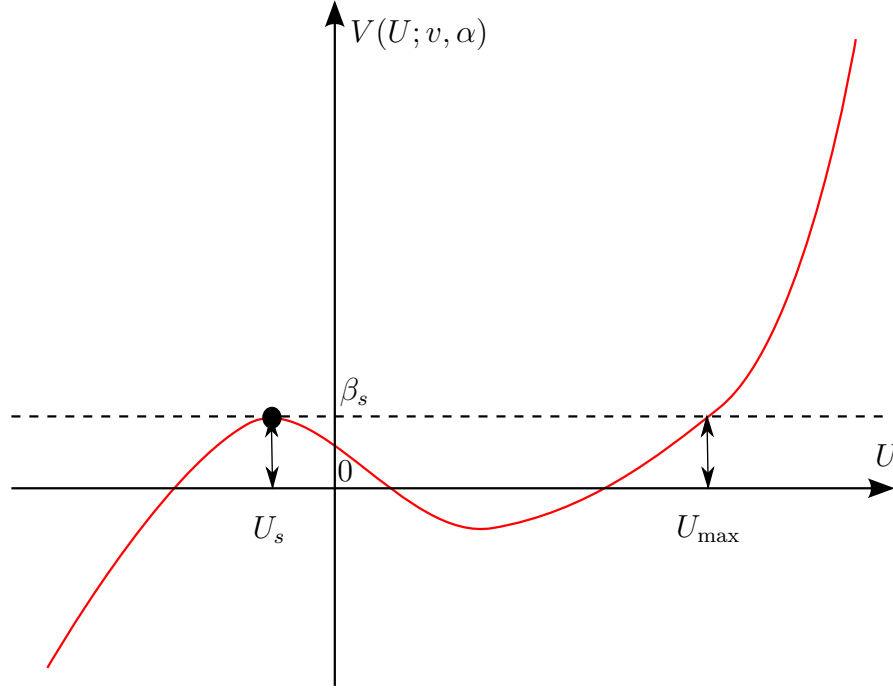


Figure 5.4: A cartoon of the potential $V(U; v, \alpha)$ with p odd. In this case bounded solutions exist. Specifically, solitary waves exist when $\beta = \beta_s$.

In order to write this as a first-order system, we introduce $u_1 = U$, $u_2 = U'$ and find

$$\begin{cases} u_1' &= u_2 \\ u_2' &= -\frac{\partial V}{\partial u_1}(u_1; v, \alpha) \end{cases}.$$

From our previous results, it follows immediately that

$$E(u_1, u_2; v, \alpha) = \frac{1}{2}u_2^2 + V(u_1; v, \alpha) = \beta \quad (5.7)$$

is a conserved quantity for the first-order dynamical system. Thus in the (u_1, u_2) -plane the trajectories of the system are confined to the level curves of $E(u_1, u_2; v, \alpha)$. Note that all equilibrium solutions (*i.e.*, solutions for which $(u_1', u_2') = (0, 0)$) are on the horizontal axis. Further, since (5.7) is invariant under $u_2 \rightarrow -u_2$, these level curves are symmetric with respect to the u_1 axis. Lastly, if $(u_1(t), u_2(t))$ is a solution, then so is $(u_1(-t), -u_2(-t))$. This is easily verified by direct substitution. Thus the phase portraits are symmetric with respect to the horizontal axis, except for the direction of the trajectories: when reflected with respect to the u_1 axis, the arrows turn in the other direction.

Let us look at some specific cases.

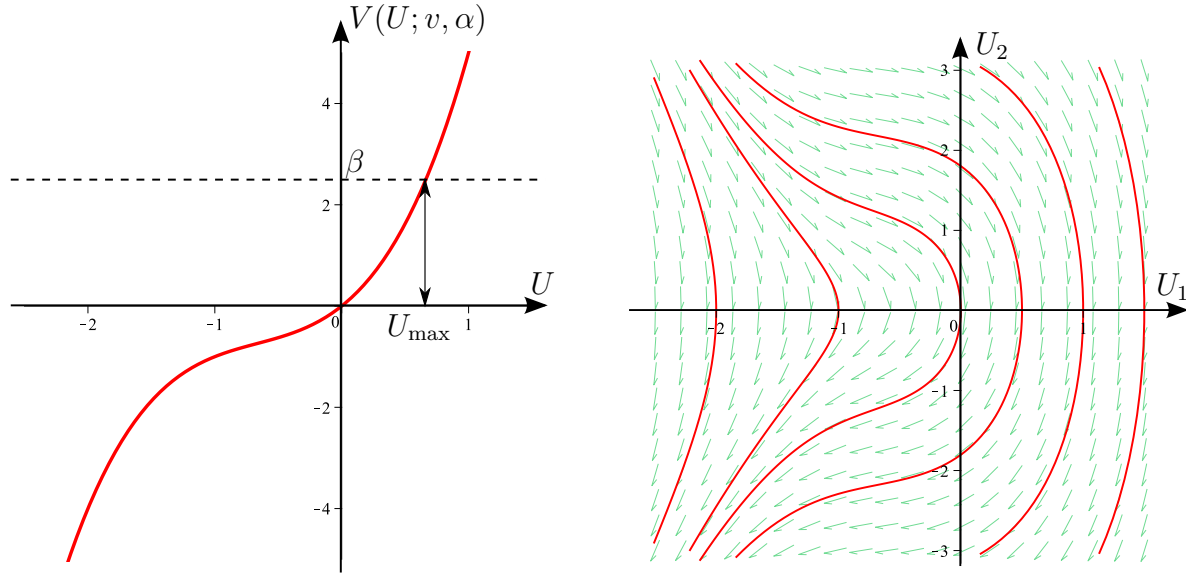


Figure 5.5: The potential $V(U; v, \alpha)$ for the KdV equation for $v^2 < 3\alpha/4$ (left). Here $v = 1$, $\alpha = 2$. The corresponding phase portrait is on the right.

The KdV equation, $p = 1$.

With $p = 1$ we obtain

$$V = U^3 + 2vU^2 + \alpha U,$$

or

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial U} = 3U^2 + 4vU + \alpha.$$

We know equilibrium solutions satisfy $\partial V / \partial U = 0$, thus the number of equilibrium solutions is determined by the discriminant of the above equation. This discriminant is

$$\Delta = 16v^2 - 12\alpha = 4(4v^2 - 3\alpha).$$

There are three possible scenarios: $v^2 < 3\alpha/4$, $v^2 = 3\alpha/4$, and $v^2 > 3\alpha/4$. We examine these cases in some detail.

- $v^2 < 3\alpha/4$:

In this case $V(U; v, \alpha)$ is a monotone increasing function of U . As discussed, there are real solutions for all values of the total energy β , but none of these are bounded. Such a potential and its corresponding phase plane are illustrated in Fig. 5.5. There are no equilibrium solutions.

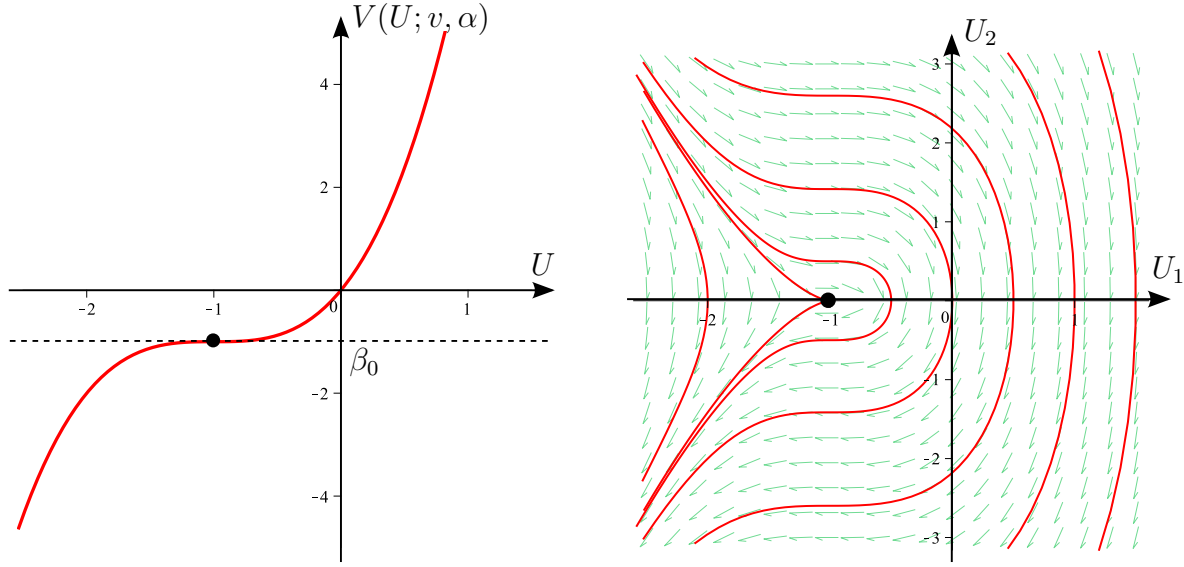


Figure 5.6: The potential $V(U; v, \alpha)$ for the KdV equation for $v^2 = 3\alpha/4$ (left). Here $v = 3/2$, $\alpha = 3$. The corresponding phase portrait is on the right.

- $v^2 = 3\alpha/4$:

Now $V(U; v, \alpha)$ is still a monotone increasing function of U , but with a single inflection point at U_0 , see Fig. 5.6. There are real solutions for all values of the total energy β , but none of these are bounded, as before. This potential and its corresponding phase plane are illustrated in Fig. 5.6. There is one equilibrium solution, but it is a degenerate one. It may be thought of as a coalescence of the center and the saddle from the next case.

- $v^2 > 3\alpha/4$:

Now $V(U; v, \alpha)$ is no longer monotone. It has one local minimum (at U_b , see Fig. 5.7), and one local maximum (at U_a , see Fig. 5.7). There are real solutions for all values of the total energy β , and some of these are bounded, namely if $V(U_b; v, \alpha) \leq \beta \leq V(U_a; v, \alpha)$. This potential and its corresponding phase plane are illustrated in Fig. 5.7. There are two equilibrium solutions. One is located at U_a and is unstable, giving rise to a saddle point in the phase plane. The other one is at U_b and is stable. It is a center in the phase plane. The center is surrounded by periodic solutions. The saddle gives rise to a homoclinic connection, enclosing all periodic solutions. This homoclinic connection is the separatrix between the periodic solutions and the unbounded solutions. As discussed before, this is where we find the soliton solution. Thus the soliton solution is obtained for $\beta = V(U_a; v, \alpha)$.

Lastly, we show that by the use of a Galilean transformation, the value of u as $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$

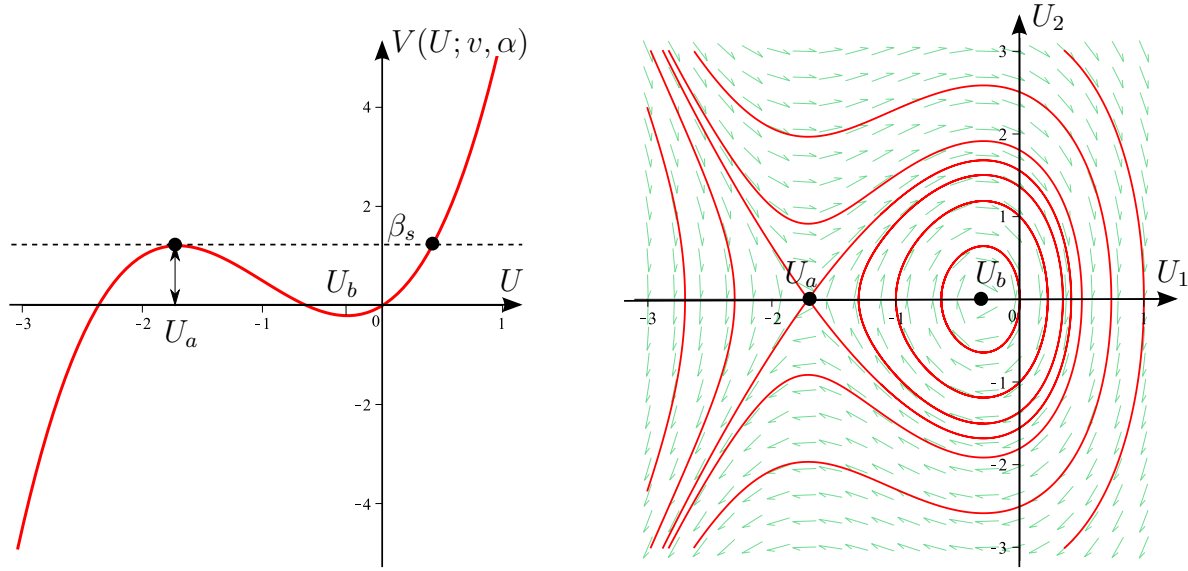


Figure 5.7: The potential $V(U; v, \alpha)$ for the KdV equation for $v^2 > 3\alpha/4$ (left). Here $v = 3/2 = \alpha$. The corresponding phase portrait is on the right.

may be chosen arbitrarily. Define new variables by

$$\hat{x} = x - ct, \quad \hat{t} = t, \quad u = \hat{u} + d.$$

Then

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial}{\partial \hat{x}}, \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial t} = -c \frac{\partial}{\partial \hat{x}} + \frac{\partial}{\partial \hat{t}}.$$

The KdV equation in the new coordinates becomes

$$4 \left(-c \frac{\partial \hat{u}}{\partial \hat{x}} + \frac{\partial \hat{u}}{\partial \hat{t}} \right) = 6(\hat{u} + d) \frac{\partial \hat{u}}{\partial \hat{x}} + \frac{\partial^3 \hat{u}}{\partial \hat{x}^3}.$$

Thus the KdV equation is invariant under this Galilean transformation if d is chosen to be $d = -2c/3$. Then the equation remains the same, but the transformation may be used to change the overall value of u : by choosing an appropriately translating Galilean frame, the asymptotic value of u (or the average value, if u is periodic) may always be chosen to be zero. Note that we have assumed here that the values of $u(x, t)$ as $x \rightarrow \infty$ and $u(x, t)$ as $x \rightarrow -\infty$ are the same. For the KdV equation this is indeed the case, as according to the phase plane analysis KdV solitons arise from homoclinic connections.

The Modified KdV equation, $p = 2$.

For the case of the modified KdV (mKdV) equation ($p = 2$) we find

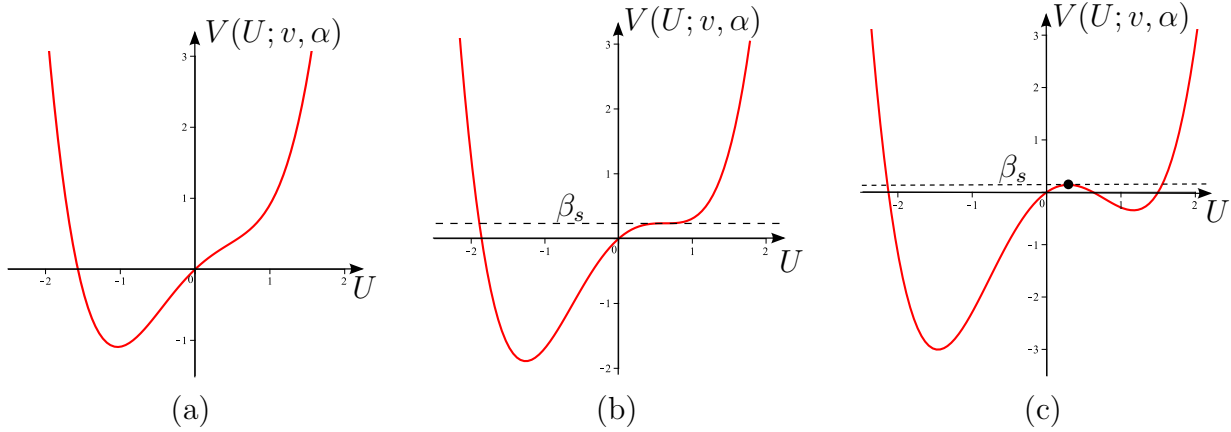


Figure 5.8: Possible potentials $V(U; v, \alpha)$ for the mKdV equation.

$$V(U; v, \alpha) = \frac{1}{2}U^4 + 2vU^2 + \alpha U.$$

As before, the equilibrium solutions are given by the critical points of the potential:

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial U} = 2U^3 + 4vU + \alpha = 0.$$

This is a cubic equation with real coefficients, thus there is always at least one real root. The possible scenarios are illustrated in Fig. 5.8, and correspond to (a) one stable equilibrium point, (b) one possibly degenerate stable equilibrium point and (c) two stable equilibrium points, respectively. This behavior is governed by the discriminant of the cubic: $\Delta = -512v^3 - 108\alpha^2$. If this discriminant is positive, two potential wells exist, see Fig. 5.8c. As the discriminant approaches zero, one of the potential wells ceases to exist ($4v = -3(\alpha^2/2)^{1/3}$, Fig. 5.8b), resulting in a horizontal tangent as its only remnant. For negative values of the discriminant, a single well exists, as shown in Fig. 5.8a.

(a) Three equilibrium points

This case is illustrated in Fig. 5.9. There are three equilibrium points. Two are at local minima of the potential well, the third one is at a local maximum, in between these two minima. Depending on the parameter values of α and V , this potential may be symmetric (if $\alpha = 0$) around the local maximum with equally deep wells on either side. Typically it is not symmetric, and the wells have different depths. For case (a) there are two different soliton solutions. One (at $\beta = \beta_s$, above the right well) is a soliton elevated above its background, whereas the other one (also at $\beta = \beta_s$, above the left well) is a soliton of depression in its background. If the wells are asymmetric, these solitons have different amplitudes and widths. In the phase plane, the solitons arise as homoclinic connections, separating two distinct classes of periodic solutions that exist for $\beta < \beta_s$. Note that even for $\beta > \beta_s$ the solutions are bounded and periodic.

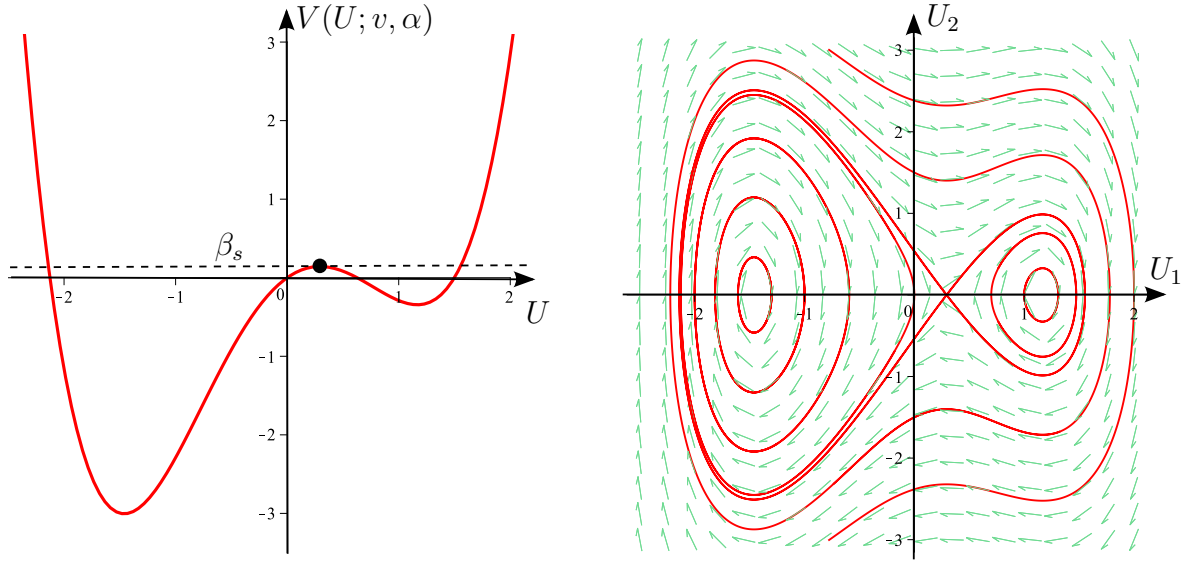


Figure 5.9: The potential $V(U; v, \alpha)$ (left) and phase plane (right) for stationary solutions of the mKdV equation, for case (a). Here $\alpha = 1$, $v = -3/4(2)^{1/3} - 0.3$.

(b) **One possibly degenerate equilibrium point**

This case is illustrated in Fig. 5.10. There is one stable equilibrium point. It is at the global minimum of the potential well. Further, there is a horizontal tangent at $\beta = \beta_s$ where a soliton solution can be found, provided $\alpha \neq 0$ (what happens when $\alpha = 0$?). At the horizontal tangent, the local maximum and one of the local minima have coalesced. Apart from the soliton solution, all solutions are bounded and periodic, as before.

• (a) **One equilibrium point**

This case is illustrated in Fig. 5.11. There is a single equilibrium point, at the global minimum of the potential well. There are no soliton solutions, as there are no local maxima. All real solutions are bounded and periodic. The equilibrium point in the phase plane is a center, surrounded by closed orbits.

5.1.3 Explicit integration: soliton solutions

To obtain the explicit functional form of the soliton solution we return to the energy equation:

$$\frac{1}{2}U'^2 + V(U; v, \alpha) = \beta,$$

which gives

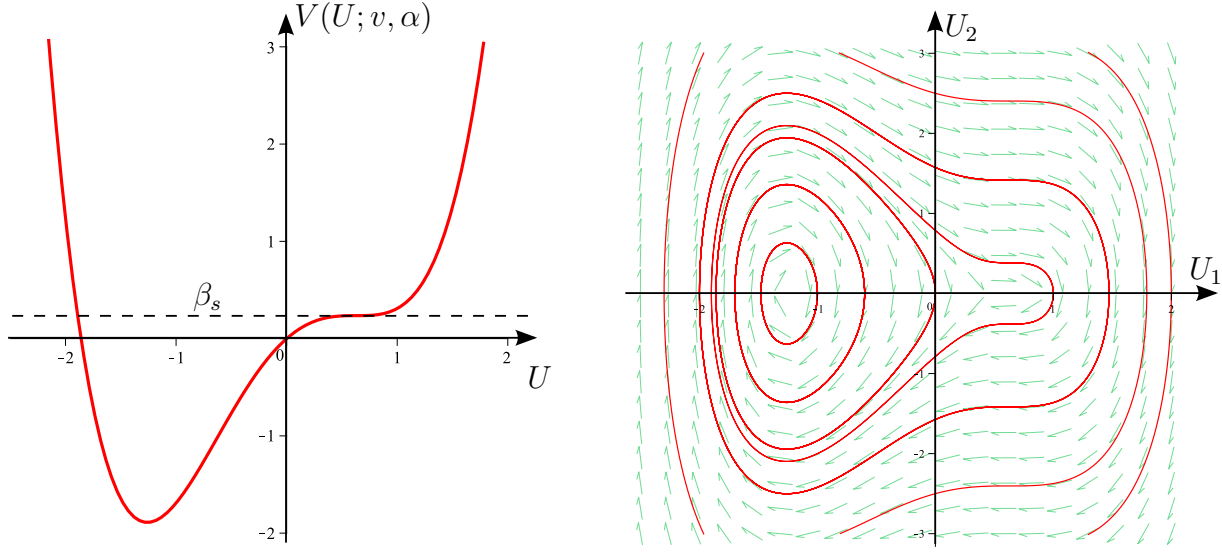


Figure 5.10: The potential $V(U; v, \alpha)$ (left) and phase plane (right) for stationary solutions of the mKdV equation, for case (b). Here $\alpha = 1$, $v = -3/4(2)^{1/3}$.

$$U' = \pm \sqrt{2(\beta - V(U; v, \alpha))}.$$

Separating variables gives an implicit solution

$$\int_{U_0}^U \frac{dU}{\sqrt{2(\beta - V(U; v, \alpha))}} = \pm \int_0^z dz = \pm z.$$

Written out, this implicit solution is

$$\pm z = \int_{U_0}^U \frac{dU}{\sqrt{2 \left(\beta - \frac{6}{(p+1)(p+2)} U^{p+2} - 2vU^2 - \alpha U \right)}}.$$

If $p = 0$ (linear equation, quadratic potential) this results in trigonometric or hyperbolic solutions. This is expected for solutions of linear equations with constant coefficients. If $p = 1$ or $p = 2$ (KdV or mKdV), the integral on the right-hand side has a polynomial of degree 3 or 4 under the square root, resulting in elliptic functions, see Appendix A. For any other value of $p \geq 3$, this integral results in hyperelliptic functions [Mar92]. Elliptic functions and their limits are meromorphic functions, whereas hyperelliptic functions are not typically meromorphic [AF03, Mar77]. **This is a first hint as to why KdV and mKdV are special and the other ($p \geq 3$) equations are not.**

Since we are specifically looking for soliton solutions that vanish at $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$, we restrict ourselves to putting $\alpha = 0$ and $\beta = 0$. This implies that the soliton solutions we will find

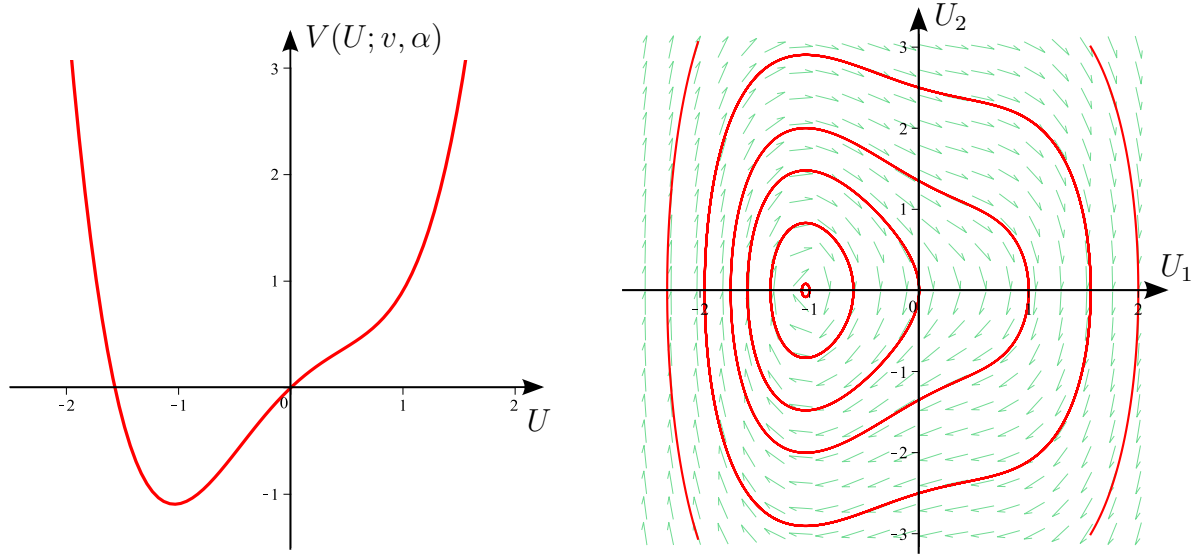


Figure 5.11: The potential $V(U; v, \alpha)$ (left) and phase plane (right) for stationary solutions of the mKdV equation, for case (c). Here $\alpha = 1$, $v = -3/4(2)^{1/3} + 0.3$.

have the same limits as $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$. The zero values of α and β are consequences of previous equations, expressing both α and β as differential polynomials of U . Further, assuming the same limit as $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$ is consistent with the phase portraits we studied above, where solitary wave solutions for these equations appear to come about from homoclinic connections. The implicit solution simplifies to

$$\pm z = \int_{U_0}^U \frac{dU}{\sqrt{2 \left(-\frac{6}{(p+1)(p+2)} U^{p+2} - 2vU^2 \right)}}.$$

As $z \rightarrow \pm\infty$, $U \rightarrow 0$. Thus, for a whole range of z values the second term under the square root dominates, requiring that v be negative. Thus we let

$$v = -a^2,$$

so that

$$\pm z = \int \frac{dU}{U \sqrt{4a^2 - \frac{12}{(p+1)(p+2)} U^p}}.$$

This integral may be calculated by substituting

$$w = \sqrt{4a^2 - \frac{12}{(p+1)(p+2)} U^p} \Rightarrow w^2 = 4a^2 - \frac{12}{(p+1)(p+2)} U^p.$$

Then

$$2wdw = \frac{-12pU^{p-1}dU}{(p+1)(p+2)}.$$

The implicit solution becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \pm z &= \int \frac{2wU^{1-p} \frac{(p+1)(p+2)}{-12p} dw}{Uw} \\ &= 2 \int \frac{(p+1)(p+2)}{-12pU^p} dw \\ &= \frac{2}{p} \int \frac{1}{w^2 - 4a^2} dw \\ &= \frac{1}{2ap} \int \left(\frac{dw}{w-2a} - \frac{dw}{w+2a} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2ap} \ln \left(C \frac{w-2a}{w+2a} \right). \end{aligned}$$

Here C is a constant of integration, which may be used to absorb the absolute value we would normally need inside the logarithm. Then

$$\begin{aligned} C \frac{w-2a}{w+2a} &= e^{\pm 2apz} \\ \Rightarrow \frac{w-2a}{w+2a} &= \frac{1}{C} e^{\pm 2apz} \\ \Rightarrow w &= 2a \frac{1 + \frac{1}{C} e^{\pm 2apz}}{1 - \frac{1}{C} e^{\pm 2apz}}. \end{aligned}$$

It follows that in order to have bounded solutions, we need $C < 0$, otherwise the denominator will be zero for some real z . Set

$$C = -e^{\pm 2ap\alpha}.$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} w &= 2a \frac{1 - e^{\pm(2apz-2ap\alpha)}}{1 + e^{\pm(2apz-2ap\alpha)}} \\ &= 2a \frac{e^{\mp ap(z-\alpha)} - e^{\pm ap(z-\alpha)}}{e^{\mp ap(z-\alpha)} + e^{\pm ap(z-\alpha)}} \\ &= 2a \tanh \mp ap(z-\alpha) \\ &= \mp 2a \tanh ap(z-\alpha). \end{aligned}$$

Solving for U , we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
w^2 &= 4a^2 \tanh^2 ap(z - \alpha) \\
\Rightarrow 4a^2 - \frac{12}{(p+1)(p+2)}U^p &= 4a^2 \tanh^2 ap(z - \alpha) \\
\Rightarrow \frac{12}{(p+1)(p+2)}U^p &= 4a^2 - 4a^2 \tanh^2 ap(z - \alpha) \\
&\Rightarrow \frac{12}{(p+1)(p+2)}U^p = 4a^2 \operatorname{sech}^2 ap(z - \alpha) \\
\Rightarrow U &= \left[\frac{(p+1)(p+2)}{3} a^2 \operatorname{sech}^2 ap(z - \alpha) \right]^{1/p}.
\end{aligned}$$

In the original variables, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
u(x, t) &= U(x - vt) \\
&= \left[\frac{(p+1)(p+2)}{3} a^2 \operatorname{sech}^2 ap(x - vt - \alpha) \right]^{1/p} \\
&= \left[\frac{(p+1)(p+2)}{3} a^2 \operatorname{sech}^2 ap(x + a^2 t - \alpha) \right]^{1/p}.
\end{aligned}$$

This is the solitary wave solution of the p -KdV equation. Some special cases are:

- $p = 1$ (**KdV**): $u(x, t) = 2a^2 \operatorname{sech}^2 a(x + a^2 t + \alpha)$,
- $p = 2$ (**mKdV**): $u(x, t) = \pm 2a \operatorname{sech} 2a(x + a^2 t + \alpha)$.

As expected, the KdV soliton has an elevation profile, while for the mKdV equation both elevation and depression solitons exist.

Let us investigate the solitary wave solution as a function of complex-valued x [Thi76, DS00]. Since $\operatorname{sech}(z)$ is $1/\cosh(z)$, we investigate the zeros of the hyperbolic cosine function. These are the same as the zeros of the cosine function, but multiplied by a factor of i . Thus, the set of these zeros is $\{i(2n+1)\pi/2, n \in \mathbb{Z}\}$. This implies that the solitary wave solution (5.8) has singularities at

$$x_n(t) = -\alpha - a^2 t - i(2n+1)\frac{\pi}{2ap}, \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}. \quad (5.8)$$

These singularities are located on a vertical line in the complex plane which crosses the real line at $-\alpha - a^2 t$. This is not a surprise, as this is where the profile (5.8) has its maximum for $x \in \mathbb{R}$. This line moves to the left with velocity $dx_n/dt = -a^2$. The singularity locations (5.8) are displayed in Fig. 5.12.

We discuss different scenarios.

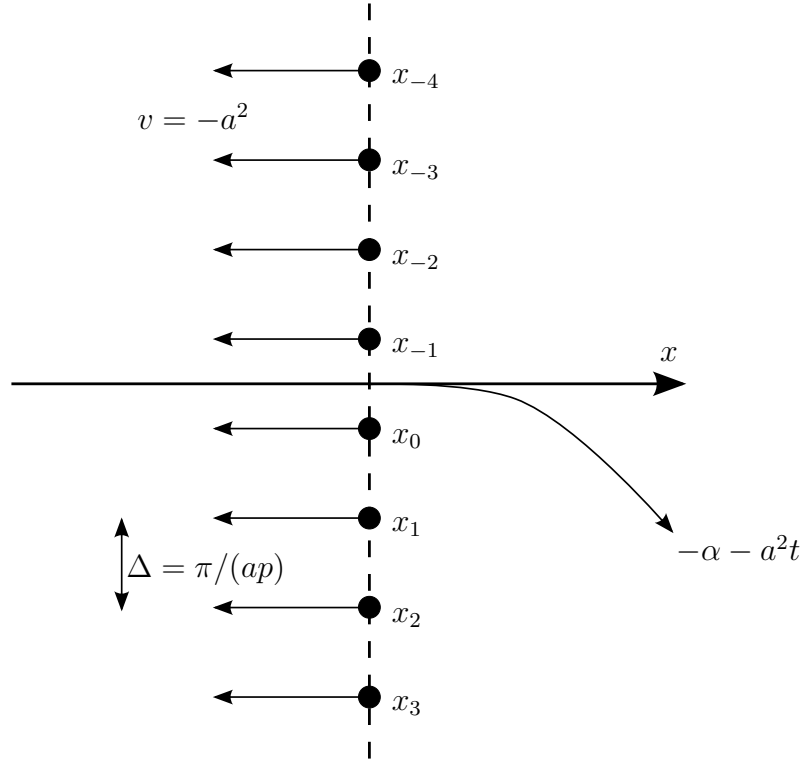


Figure 5.12: A vertical line of singularities with spacing $\Delta = \pi/(ap)$, moving to the left with velocity $v = -a^2$. The solution has its maximum value at $x = -\alpha - a^2t$.

- $p = 1$. For the KdV equation, the exponent in (5.8) is 2, and the singularities are double poles. Although the pole locations are singularities, the solution is single valued as a function of $x \in \mathbb{C}$. It is a meromorphic function [AF03] of x : analytic everywhere for $x \in \mathbb{C}$, except at its singularities which are poles.
- $p = 2$. The same is true for the mKdV equation, except now the exponent is 1 and the singularities are simple poles.
- $p \geq 3$. Now the exponent is positive, but rational. The singularities are branch poles. The solution is not single valued as a function of x : as one encircles a pole $x_n \in \mathbb{C}$, the solution takes on a countable number of values, made unique only by a choice of branch cut at x_n .

The above discussion is our first indication that $p = 1$ (KdV) and $p = 2$ (mKdV) are special among the p -KdV equations (5.2). We will return to this in Chapter 11.

5.2 Similarity solutions

Most of the partial differential equations we are interested in have been derived from an application problem through the use of a nondimensionalization and a reductive perturbation analysis. The original variables in this set-up have physical dimensions. There are choices made in the units used to measure these dimensions. For instance, length may be measured in meters, or in kilometers. Switching from kilometers to meters will introduce a scaling factor of 1000 in the equations. Clearly, choosing different units cannot affect the problem under considerations, which implies that the scaling factor has to disappear from the equations determining the solutions of the problem. This is one instance of a scaling symmetry that the reader is familiar with.

In general, an equation or a system of equations possesses a scaling symmetry if there is a scaling transformation on both the dependent and independent variables that leaves the equations invariant. It follows from the above observation that any system with physical units possesses a scaling symmetry. Going beyond this, it follows that every system derived from a system with dimensions through consistent nondimensionalization has a scaling symmetry. This scaling symmetry may be thought of as the remnant of the original dimensions.

In this section we learn how to find solutions that are constructed from specific multiplicative combinations of independent and dependent variables that are scaling independent. This is somewhat reminiscent of the Buckingham π Theorem [Wan89], where physical laws are expressed in terms of a minimal number of dimensionless quantities. In terms of these scaling independent groups, we find a reduced differential equation that has to be satisfied. The equation is reduced in that it depends on fewer independent variables. The most important case is that of a partial differential equation with one spatial variable, which reduces to an ordinary differential equation.

5.2.1 Scaling symmetries

An equation

$$u_t = N(u, u_x, u_{xx}, \dots, x, t)$$

possesses a scaling symmetry if it is invariant under the scaling transformation

$$x = \frac{\hat{x}}{a}, \quad t = \frac{\hat{t}}{b}, \quad u = c\hat{u},$$

where a , b and c are scalars, at least one of which can be chosen arbitrarily. The equation is invariant if the new variables \hat{x} , \hat{t} , and \hat{u} satisfy the same equation as the original variables. Thus

$$\hat{u}_{\hat{t}} = N(\hat{u}, \hat{u}_{\hat{x}}, \hat{u}_{\hat{x}\hat{x}}, \dots, \hat{x}, \hat{t}).$$

Example 5.1. *Let us consider the nonlinear Schrödinger equation (NLS)*

$$iq_t = -q_{xx} + \sigma|q|^2q.$$

It has the scaling symmetry

$$x = \frac{\hat{x}}{a}, \quad t = \frac{\hat{t}}{a^2}, \quad q = a\hat{q}.$$

which may be verified by direct substitution. How does one find such a scaling symmetry? Returning to the definition of a scaling symmetry, we have that

$$x = \frac{\hat{x}}{a}, \quad t = \frac{\hat{t}}{b}, \quad q = c\hat{q},$$

which implies that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x} = a \frac{\partial}{\partial \hat{x}}, \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial t} = b \frac{\partial}{\partial \hat{t}}.$$

This implies that the transformed equation becomes

$$\begin{aligned} ibc\hat{q}_{\hat{t}} &= -ca^2\hat{q}_{\hat{x}\hat{x}} + \sigma c^3|\hat{q}|^2\hat{q} \\ \Rightarrow \quad i\hat{q}_{\hat{t}} &= -\frac{a^2}{b}\hat{q}_{\hat{x}\hat{x}} + \sigma\frac{c^2}{b}|\hat{q}|^2\hat{q}, \end{aligned}$$

from which it follows by requiring invariance that

$$b = a^2, \quad c^2 = b \quad \Rightarrow \quad b = a^2, \quad c = a,$$

resulting in the scaling symmetry given above.

In Problem 1.2, we used a scaling transformation to rewrite the KdV equation with given coefficients to one with our favorite coefficients. Thus scaling transformations can be used for different means: to change coefficients as desired, or to establish the presence of a scaling symmetry. For the KdV equation, we can do both.

5.2.2 Scaling reductions

The scaling symmetries of differential equations may be used to construct special solutions, referred to as **similarity solutions**. These similarity solutions satisfy reduced differential equations, depending on fewer independent variables.

Example 5.2. Let us return to the NLS equation, and see how a simpler equation, satisfied by the similarity solution is obtained. From the scaling symmetry, it is clear that

$$z = xt^{-1/2}$$

and

$$t^{1/2}q$$

are both scaling invariant. This last grouping contains $q(x, t)$, which depends on both x and t . However, since both groups are scaling invariant, we may anticipate that solutions $q(x, t)$

exist for which $t^{1/2}q$ is a function of x and t through the combination $z = xt^{-1/2}$ only. Thus we impose that the two scaling invariant groups are functions of each other:

$$t^{1/2}q(x, t) = F(z) \Rightarrow q(x, t) = t^{-1/2}F(z).$$

This is an ansatz for a similarity solution. Substitution of this ansatz in the partial differential equation must result in an ordinary differential equation for the as yet unknown function $F(z)$, since $F(z)$ depends on one variable only. Let us proceed to determine this differential equation. We need:

$$\begin{aligned} q_t &= -\frac{1}{2}t^{-3/2}F(z) + t^{-1/2}F'(z)z_t = -\frac{1}{2}t^{-3/2}F(z) - \frac{1}{2}t^{-2}xF'(z), \\ q_x &= t^{-1/2}F'(z)z_x = t^{-1}F'(z), \\ q_{xx} &= t^{-3/2}F''(z). \end{aligned}$$

This gives

$$\begin{aligned} i \left(-\frac{1}{2}t^{-3/2}F(z) - \frac{1}{2}t^{-2}xF'(z) \right) &= -t^{-3/2}F''(z) + \sigma t^{-3/2}|F(z)|^2F(z) \\ \Rightarrow i \left(-\frac{1}{2}F(z) - \frac{1}{2}t^{-1/2}xF'(z) \right) &= -F''(z) + \sigma|F(z)|^2F(z) \\ \Rightarrow i \left(-\frac{1}{2}F(z) - \frac{1}{2}zF'(z) \right) &= -F''(z) + \sigma|F(z)|^2F(z), \end{aligned}$$

which is an ordinary differential equation, to be solved (in principle) for $F(z)$. It can be rewritten as

$$\left(F' - \frac{i}{2}zF \right)' = \sigma|F|^2F.$$

Note that it is possible to construct other scaling invariant combinations of the original independent and dependent variables. You should convince yourself that the choices we made are not restrictive in any way. All other choices result in the same ansatz we made, perhaps after a redefinition of the function $F(z)$, see Problem 5.4.

The next step would be to solve the ordinary differential equation we found, if possible. As the case is here, this is not easily done. However, one should realize that progress has been made, as we have reduced the original partial differential equation to an ordinary differential equation. From this equation many properties of the corresponding solutions may be deduced.

Example 5.3. *As a second example, consider the KdV equation*

$$u_t + uu_x + u_{xxx} = 0.$$

Since the calculations proceed similarly to the previous example, we only give the results.

- *First, we find the scaling symmetry to be*

$$x = \frac{\hat{x}}{a}, \quad t = \frac{\hat{t}}{a^3}, \quad u = a^2 \hat{u}.$$

- *Next, we determine a similarity ansatz to be*

$$u = t^{-2/3} F(z), \quad \text{with } z = xt^{-1/3}.$$

- *Lastly, substituting this ansatz in the KdV equation results in the ordinary differential equation*

$$-\frac{2}{3}F - \frac{1}{3}zF' + FF' + F''' = 0.$$

As before, we have constructed an ordinary differential equation whose solution specifies the similarity solution.

A special note is in order about similarity solutions of linear equations, or for that matter, for equations that are homogeneous in any of their dependent or independent variables. For the sake of explicitness, let us look at linear equations. When trying to determine the scaling symmetry, one finds that the scaling of the dependent variable is undetermined, as it appears once in every term of the equation. Therefore its scaling factors out. As a consequence, a two-parameter family of scaling symmetries is found (with an undetermined scaling parameter, and an undetermined exponent for the scaling of the dependent variable), instead of a one-parameter scaling symmetry (with merely an undetermined scaling parameter). Let us consider an example.

Example 5.4. *Consider the linear Schrödinger equation*

$$iq_t = -q_{xx}.$$

- *It has a scaling symmetry*

$$x = \frac{\hat{x}}{a}, \quad t = \frac{\hat{t}}{a^2}, \quad q = a^c \hat{q},$$

for any value of c .

- Next, we determine a similarity ansatz to be

$$q = t^{-c/2} F(z), \quad \text{with } z = xt^{-1/2}.$$

- Lastly, substituting this ansatz in the linear Schrödinger equation results in the ordinary differential equation

$$F'' - \frac{i}{2}(zF' + cF) = 0.$$

- This equation is linear and can be solved for any c in terms of Whittaker functions [DLMF, Chapter 13]. It suffices for us to note that

$$F = e^{iz^2/4}$$

is a solution for $c = 1$ (check!), so that

$$q(x, t) = \frac{1}{t^{1/2}} e^{-ix^2/4t}$$

is a solution of the linear Schrödinger equation.

This example illustrates an important fact about similarity solutions: they are often outside of the function space in which we might want to solve the problem. A natural function space for this linear equation would be $L^2(\mathbb{R})$, the space of square integrable functions on the whole line. Note that the explicit solution found in the last example is not square integrable, although it is bounded for all real $t > 0$. As a consequence, it is a solution we would not have found using the standard technique of separation of variables.

5.3 Ansatz-based methods: guessing the functional form of solutions

As mentioned in the introduction, our favorite method for finding solutions of nonlinear problems is to guess them: like the method of undetermined coefficients for forced linear constant-coefficient ordinary differential equations, a functional form for the solution is proposed, depending on a number of parameters. Substitution of the functional form in the equation results in algebraic equations for the parameters, provided that the functional form is consistent with the equations: guessing a Gaussian solution form for an equation that does not have any Gaussian solutions will not work, no matter how many parameters are in the solution expression: square peg, round hole, etc. This guessing game is simultaneously powerful and pitiful. On the one hand, a good guess can result in a solution formula with relatively little effort. On the other hand, one needs a good guess, and the results obtained are worth what you paid for them: you have obtained all solutions consistent with the original ansatz, but it is not clear how general this solution form is, how it fits in with the

infinite-dimensional dynamics of the PDE, *etc.* Robert Conte [Con08] refers to ansatz-based solution methods as “street light” methods: you look for your car keys underneath the street light, not because that is where you lost them, but because it is the only place where you could find them if they were there.

One should be hesitant to label the idea of guessing a solution form a *method*. It is easy to find papers (no references, on purpose) where the authors guess a form of a solution that is in essence the form of the solution, with one or two parameters, to be determined. Guessing that solutions are of the form $A \sin^N(kx - \omega t)$ does not constitute the “sine”-method! It merely constitutes a good (lucky?) guess if it works, and it has the appearance of hindsight more than anything. That said, any good ansatz-based method worth its salt, probably appears as hindsight to some extent. This is to be expected: a good guess is based on experience of working with similar equations. Its value derives from the number of problems to which it can be applied, and from the importance of the solution class that it leads to: a method producing the soliton solution of the KdV equation $4u_t = 6uu_x + u_{xxx}$ is more valuable than one resulting in the solution² $u = 2/x^2$. Below we introduce without much detail two methods, both relatively young, that apply to a large class of problems and that are systematic to use.

5.3.1 The tanh method and its relatives

The tanh method was so dubbed by Hereman, Malfliet and others [Mal92, MH96, BGsH⁺04], although its origins can be traced further back (*e.g.*, [HK90]), as might be expected from an idea this natural. Of course, ideas like this have a large impact exactly because they are easy to understand and straightforward to be used by others.

The method relies on two main observations: (i) many nonlinear problems have whole-line solutions that are expressed in terms of the hyperbolic tangent function \tanh or functions that are easily expressed in terms of \tanh (like sech), and (ii) all derivatives of \tanh can be expressed as polynomials in \tanh . It follows that the substitution of a solution ansatz depending only on \tanh in a nonlinear PDE will result in an equation where all functional dependence is contained in the \tanh function. Since different powers of \tanh are linearly independent, the coefficients of all powers of \tanh have to vanish identically, resulting in a system of equations involving all the parameters that were present in the ansatz. Most often, the original ansatz is polynomial in \tanh , but we will discuss some generalizations (see [BGsH⁺04]), including one that does not appear in the literature, but encompasses all the others.

The method consists of a few, very systematic steps [MH96, BGsH⁺04]. Consider the nonlinear PDE (5.1).

1. As before, we assume a traveling-wave ansatz, but we denote the argument as

²No exact solution of a nonlinear PDE is to be sneezed at, but typically we prefer our solutions to be non-singular and real-valued for real x .

$$\xi = k(x - vt),$$

so that v is the profile speed and k is a parameter related to the width of the profile. Such a parameter would have been superfluous before, as we did not enforce a solution profile. In what follows, ξ is the argument of \tanh and if the PDE under consideration does not have a scaling symmetry, the width of the profile may not be arbitrary. With $u(x, t) = U(\xi)$, the PDE becomes

$$-vkU_\xi = N(U, kU_\xi, k^2U_{\xi\xi}, \dots), \quad (5.9)$$

where we have written ξ derivatives explicitly as we will encounter derivatives with respect to different arguments below. If (5.9) can be integrated one or more times, it may be advantageous to do so, although it is not required. This will reduce the complexity of the calculations that follow.

2. We assume that $U(\xi) = S(y(\xi))$, where $y(\xi) = \tanh(\xi)$. It follows that

$$\begin{aligned} U_\xi &= \frac{dS}{d\xi} = \frac{dS}{dy} \frac{dy}{d\xi} = S'(y)(1 - y^2), \\ U_{\xi\xi} &= (S'(y)(1 - y^2))' (1 - y^2), \\ U_{\xi\xi\xi} &= ((S'(y)(1 - y^2))' (1 - y^2))' (1 - y^2), \\ &\dots \end{aligned} \quad (5.10)$$

where here and in what follows $'$ denotes derivative with respect to y . We have used that

$$\frac{dy}{d\xi} = \frac{d}{d\xi} \tanh(\xi) = \text{sech}^2(\xi) = 1 - \tanh^2(\xi) = 1 - y^2.$$

Substitution of these results in (5.9) results in an expression containing no derivatives, depending on the parameters k and v , y , and the functional form chosen for $S(y)$.

3. At this point, we assume that $S(y)$ is polynomial in y :

$$S(y) = \sum_{j=0}^M a_j y^j,$$

where a_j , $j = 0, \dots, M$ are undetermined constants. If (5.1) is a differential polynomial in $u(x, t)$, then our expression is a polynomial in y . Our first task is to determine the

positive integer M . It suffices to substitute $S = a_M Y^M$, as we examine the leading order behavior for large y . Note that it is no concern of ours that $-1 < y(\xi) < 1$ now that we have reduced the problem to a polynomial in y that needs to vanish identically. We group all terms with exponents that can be maximal, depending on the choice of M . Next all possibilities for maximal exponent are equated pairwise (since we are seeking solutions that balance the effects of different terms), resulting in a number of choices for M . Only the positive integer choices are retained. The algorithm below proceeds separately for each choice of M .

4. Having determined how many coefficients a_j , $j = 0, \dots, M$ need to be determined, we equate all coefficients of all powers of y to zero, resulting in a set of (nonlinear) algebraic equations for k , v and a_j , $j = 0, \dots, M$. These equations are solved with the help of a computer algebra system, resulting in many different solution branches, all of which may result in solutions. In many cases not all parameters are determined and a solution expression is obtained with one or more degrees of freedom. For instance, if the equation has a scaling symmetry, k will not be determined.

If desired, the system of equations may be augmented with one or two boundary conditions at $\xi \rightarrow \pm\infty$.

5. For all solutions found, a traveling wave solution of the original PDE has been constructed.

We illustrate the tanh method and some of its generalizations on a few examples.

Example 5.5. Consider the so-called KdV-Burgers equation [MH96]

$$u_t + uu_x + \alpha u_{xxx} - \beta u_{xx} = 0. \quad (5.11)$$

If $\alpha = 0$, we obtain the Burgers equation, while for $\beta = 0$ we get the KdV equation. We wish to find traveling-wave solutions that $\rightarrow 0$ as $x \rightarrow \infty$. Since the Burgers equation has shock-like solutions, it seems prudent to not simultaneously impose that $u \rightarrow 0$ as $x \rightarrow -\infty$. The reader should follow the calculations below using Maple, Mathematica, or any other computer algebra system.

1. Equation (5.9) becomes

$$-kvU_\xi + kUU_\xi + \alpha k^3 U_{\xi\xi\xi} - \beta k^2 U_{\xi\xi} = 0,$$

which may be integrated once:

$$-vU + \frac{1}{2}U^2 + \alpha k^2 U_{\xi\xi} - \beta k U_\xi = 0, \quad (5.12)$$

where we have equated the integration constant to zero, using the boundary condition at $+\infty$. We have also divided through by one common factor of k .

2. Using (5.10), (5.12) becomes

$$-vS + \frac{1}{2}S^2 + \alpha k^2((1-y^2)S')'(1-y^2) - \beta k(1-y^2)S' = 0. \quad (5.13)$$

3. We let $S = a_M y^M$. The left-hand side of (5.13) gives

$$\frac{a_M^2}{2}y^{2M} + a_M k^2 M(M+1)\alpha y^{M+2} + (\dots)y^{M+1} + (\dots)y^M + (\dots)y^{M-1} + (\dots)y^{M-2},$$

of which the highest-order terms need to vanish. There are only two candidates to have maximal exponent: y^{2M} and y^{M+2} . Thus

$$2M = M + 2 \Rightarrow M = 2.$$

The coefficient of this highest-order term should vanish, so that

$$\frac{a_M^2}{2} + a_M k^2 M(M+1)\alpha = 0 \Rightarrow a_M = a_2 = -2\alpha k^2 M(M+1) = -12\alpha k^2,$$

where we have ignored the $a_2 = 0$ solution. It follows that

$$S(y) = -12\alpha k^2 y^2 + a_1 y + a_0.$$

4. Substitution of this form of $S(y)$ in (5.13) gives algebraic equations involving k , v , a_2 , a_1 , and a_0 :

$$\begin{aligned} -a_0 v + \frac{1}{2}a_0^2 - 24\alpha^2 k^4 - a_1 \beta k &= 0, \\ 12\alpha k^2 v - 12a_0 \alpha k^2 + \frac{1}{2}a_1^2 + 96\alpha^2 k^4 + a_1 \beta k &= 0, \\ 24\alpha \beta k^3 - 2a_1 \alpha k^2 + a_0 a_1 - a_1 v &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

To these equations we may add the boundary condition

$$-12\alpha k^2 + a_1 + a_0 = 0,$$

imposing that $y \rightarrow 1$ as $\xi \rightarrow \infty$. These equations have one solution branch that does not lead to a trivial solution:

$$k = \frac{\beta}{10\alpha}, v = \frac{6\beta^2}{25\alpha}, a_0 = \frac{9\beta^2}{25\alpha}, a_1 = -\frac{6\beta^2}{25\alpha}.$$

5. Finally, we have constructed the solution

$$\begin{aligned}
 u(x, t) &= U(\xi) \\
 &= -\frac{3\beta^2}{25\alpha} (\tanh^2(\xi) + 2 \tanh(\xi) - 3) \\
 &= \frac{3\beta^2}{25\alpha} (\operatorname{sech}^2(\xi) - 2 \tanh(\xi) + 2), \tag{5.14}
 \end{aligned}$$

with $\xi = \beta(x - vt)/10\alpha$ and v as above.

This final form of the solution presents a tantalizing interpretation as a superposition of a KdV soliton (sech^2) and a Burgers shock wave (\tanh , see Problem 1.6), but this is misleading: our derivation above clearly assumes that both $\alpha \neq 0$ and $\beta \neq 0$. The case of the KdV equation or the Burgers equation should be considered separately, see Problems 5.9 and 5.10.

A few remarks are in order. The solution we have constructed has *no* free parameters. This is perhaps less surprising once you realize that the equation has no scaling symmetry, for instance. Of course, one free parameter x_0 can be inserted by changing ξ to $\xi = c(x - x_0 - vt)$, since the equation is autonomous.

- The \tanh method in the form used above applies equally well to equations that have higher-than-first order t derivatives, or to systems of equations, see Problem 5.11, or to equations with more than one spatial dimension. For multidimensional PDEs, the problem is, in essence, made one-dimensional, by the imposition that solutions depend only on $\xi = kx - ly - \omega t$.
- In many instances, the use of the \tanh method may result in restrictions on the parameters appearing in the PDE in order for \tanh method solutions to exist.

We already know (see Page 111) that the mKdV equation has solitary wave solutions that are given, up to multiplicative constants, by sech . Unlike sech^2 , sech can not be written as a polynomial in \tanh . In other words, the \tanh method as given above cannot be used to find this solution. Various authors have proposed various ways of modifying the \tanh method so it will successfully capture odd-power profiles in sech . Somewhat predictably, an answer is to put the sech profile explicitly in the ansatz, see [BGsH⁺04]. Note that only the first power of sech is necessary, as all other powers are even powers of sech multiplied by the first power.

Another approach stays with the ansatz containing only \tanh , but we allow $S(y)$ to be a rational function of y instead of a polynomial:

$$S(y) = \frac{\sum_{j=0}^M a_j y^j}{\sum_{j=0}^L b_j y^j}.$$

Indeed,

$$\operatorname{sech}(2\xi) = \frac{1 - \tanh^2(\xi)}{1 + \tanh^2(\xi)}.$$

Thus, provided the PDE considered has a scaling symmetry (and the scaling factor of its argument is irrelevant), the rational tanh method should find profiles with odd powers of sech . Now there are two maximal degrees M and L to be determined. This is approached in the same way one looks for a Padé approximant: one chooses the degree L of the denominator, after which the degree of the numerator M follows as before. If the results obtained are not satisfactory, one can repeat the process with a higher value of L . We demonstrate the rational tanh method below for the mKdV equation. The complexity of the rational tanh method is higher than for the regular tanh method, but this is the price to be paid for a more powerful method.

Example 5.6. *Consider the mKdV equation*

$$4u_t = 6u^2u_x + u_{xxx}.$$

1. *We can integrate the mKdV equation restricted to traveling waves twice so that*

$$-2vU^2 = \frac{1}{2}U^4 + \frac{k^2}{2}U_\xi^2,$$

where $u(x, t) = U(\xi)$, with $\xi = k(x - vt)$. We have imposed decaying boundary conditions as $x \rightarrow \infty$.

2. *Using (5.10), this equation becomes*

$$-2vS^2 = \frac{1}{2}S^4 + \frac{k^2}{2}(1 - y^2)S'.$$

3. *We let $S = a_M y^M$ and balance maximal powers as before. This results in $M = 1$. It follows that any rational expansion used should have a numerator of degree one more than the denominator.*
4. *First we try $S(y) = a_1 y + a_0$, but this results in only the trivial (constant solution). Next, we use*

$$S(y) = \frac{a_2 y^2 + a_1 y + a_0}{y + b_0},$$

which again gives only the trivial solution, albeit it with a much greater effort. We try

$$S(y) = \frac{a_3 y^3 + a_2 y^2 + a_1 y + a_0}{y^2 + b_1 y + b_0},$$

which provides more excitement. We obtain 13 equations for the 9 unknowns $a_3, a_2, a_1, a_0, b_2, b_1, b_0, v$ and k . With the help of any computer algebra system, two nontrivial solution branches are found, corresponding to the elevation and depression solitary waves, given below. Notably $a_3 = 0$, which would not have been allowed using the polynomial tanh method.

5. Finally, we have found

$$u(x, t) = \pm 2k \frac{\tanh^2(\xi) - 1}{\tanh^2(\xi) + 1} = \mp 2k \operatorname{sech}(2k(x + k^2 t)),$$

and k is a free parameter. A second free parameter x_0 , shifting the solution argument, could be inserted as well.

The tanh method is further extended in [BGsH⁺04] to find functions in terms of Jacobi elliptic functions (see Appendix A). The main idea is the same as for the tanh method: derivatives of the Jacobi elliptic functions can be expressed in terms of the same elliptic function, albeit not polynomially. For instance for the Jacobi elliptic sine function $\operatorname{sn}(x, k)$ [DLMF] with argument x and elliptic modulus k , we have

$$\operatorname{sn}'(x, k) = \pm \sqrt{(1 - \operatorname{sn}^2(x, k))(1 - k^2 \operatorname{sn}^2(x, k))},$$

using the identities in Section A.2. In many cases, simple algebraic manipulation of the equation allows us to avoid square roots and reduce the problem, as for the tanh method, to one involving polynomials only. We forego illustrating this with an example, as we discuss the more powerful method of Conte and Musette next.

5.3.2 The Conte-Musette method

As has been indicated above, many solutions of nonlinear PDEs are expressed in terms of elliptic functions (Appendix A) and limits of these: hyperbolic or trigonometric functions, or rational functions. A method due to Robert Conte and Micheline Musette [CM08] exists that systematically finds all such solutions. As for the tanh method, we present no more than the overall flavor of the method, with a few examples.

Since elliptic functions are defined by the location and multiplicity of their poles in the complex plane, it is no surprise that the method begins by examining the singularity structure of potential solutions. Once this has been established, a theorem of Briot & Bouquet [BB75, CM08] posits a form for a first-order ODE satisfied by these potential solutions. At this point, the problem has been reduced to linear algebra: only the undetermined coefficients in the form of the ODE need to be found. Once this is done, an algorithmic procedure produces the form of the elliptic solutions, or their limits.

The steps of the method are detailed below [CM08]. As described here, the method assumes the problem has been reduced to an autonomous, scalar N -th order ODE $u^{(N)} =$

$F(u, u', u'', \dots, u^{(N-1)})$, where F is a polynomial function in all its arguments. This is obtained, for instance, by looking for traveling-wave or similarity solutions. In its full generality, the method applies to systems of ODEs that are not necessarily polynomial in their arguments.

1. Determine the singularity structure of the solution and the elliptic order.

Let $y = x - x_0$. Assume the form of a Laurent series for $u(y)$:

$$u = y^p (a_0 + a_1 y + \dots),$$

where p should be a negative integer, since we are assuming pole singularities. By substituting this ansatz in $u^{(N)} = F(u, u', u'', \dots, u^{(N-1)})$ and balancing dominant terms (much like we did for the tanh method), we find suitable values for p : p_1, \dots, p_r . Note that values of p may be repeated in this list, as long as they are associated with a different value of their corresponding a_0 . Non-negative and non integer values of p_j are omitted from this list. At this point, we have determined the *maximal elliptic order* M , the maximal number of poles in each period parallelogram of the solution:

$$M = - \sum_{j=1}^r p_j.$$

2. Calculate “enough” terms in each Laurent series. Next, for $j = 1, \dots, r$, we substitute

$$u = y^{p_j} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n^{(j)} y^n,$$

in $u^{(N)} = F(u, u', u'', \dots, u^{(N-1)})$, and we determine as many of the $a_n^{(j)}$ as are required for the next two steps. For each Laurent series, no more than $(M+1)^2$ coefficients need to be determined. These terms satisfy a nonlinear recurrence relation (see also Chapter 11) and they are easily found using a computer algebra system. Some of the coefficients $a_n^{(j)}$ may be undetermined. They correspond to the so-called resonances in the Laurent series, at locations n , the Fuchs indices [CM08]. As a consequence, the remainder of this process below may depend on these arbitrary constants, and we determine a family of solutions depending on these constants.

3. Using the Briot-Bouquet Theorem, write down a form for the ODE satisfied by the solution.

For each Laurent series, *i.e.*, for each p_j , we use the following theorem, due to Briot & Bouquet [BB75]:

Theorem (Briot-Bouquet). *Any elliptic function of order m satisfies a first-order ODE of the form*

$$G(u, u') \equiv \sum_{j_2=0}^m \sum_{j_1=0}^{2m-2j_2} b_{j_1 j_2} u^{j_1} (u')^{j_2} = 0. \quad (5.15)$$

It is possible that all found Laurent series are representations of the same solution in a neighborhood of different poles, or it may be that all of them represent different solutions. Thus we cannot simply let $m = M$. Any $m \in [-p, M]$ is allowed. We start by assuming that $m = -p$, the lowest possible value. This assumes that all other Laurent expansions correspond to different solutions.

With this value of m , the ODE (5.15) can be written down, depending on $(m + 1)^2$ undetermined coefficients $b_{j_1 j_2}$.

4. **Impose that each Laurent series satisfies this ODE.** Since the Laurent series constructed in Step 2 satisfies (5.15), we substitute this series into the ODE. This turns $G(u, u')$ into a Laurent series in its own right. This series has to vanish identically. Equating the different orders of y to zero results in a linear system of equations for the undetermined coefficients $b_{j_1 j_2}$. By calculating more terms in the Laurent series of u , this system can be made as overdetermined as one desires.

If the system for the coefficients $b_{j_1 j_2}$ has no solution, we return to Step 3 and repeat the process with an increased value of m , until m exceeds M . If no solution is found for any of these m values, the particular Laurent series with p_j does not give rise to an elliptic solution. If at some point a solution for the coefficients is found, it is not necessary to repeat the process with increased values of m .

5. **Solve each ODE found.** If successful, the previous steps result in a number of ODEs (at most one for each p_j in our list from Step 1) to be solved for $u(y)$. Each such ODE is typically nonlinear in both u' and u , and solving it seems like a daunting task. However, because we know from the Briot-Bouquet Theorem that the equation has elliptic solutions, we may proceed in a more systematic way. A bit of the material on Riemann surfaces in Appendix B may be useful for what follows, although the steps can be executed without this knowledge.

- (a) Consider the algebraic curve $G(u, v) = 0$: it corresponds to a two-dimensional subset of $\mathbb{C} \times \mathbb{C}$, implicitly defined. Because of the Briot-Bouquet Theorem, we know this algebraic curve is elliptic or possibly degenerate elliptic (if there are no elliptic solutions, but only solutions in terms of limits of elliptic functions). In other words, regarded as a Riemann surface, the algebraic curve has genus 1 (it has one hole and topologically looks like a donut) or genus 0 (no holes, and looks like a Riemann sphere). In what follows, we work out the details for the harder genus 1 case only.

For an algebraic curve $G(u, v) = 0$ of genus 1, a standard result in classical (*i.e.*, 19th century) algebraic geometry [Bak95] states that the curve can be written in *Weierstrass normal form*

$$q^3 = 4p^3 - g_2 p - g_3,$$

through the use of a *birational* transformation:

$$u = R(p, q), \quad v = S(p, q), \quad (5.16)$$

with inverse

$$p = \tilde{R}(u, v), \quad q = \tilde{S}(u, v),$$

and all of $R, S, \tilde{R}, \tilde{S}$ are rational functions of their arguments. This result is turned into an algorithm in [vH95], which is implemented in Maple, through the command `algcurves[Weierstrassform]`.

(b) with $R(q, p)$ and $S(q, p)$ known, we have that³

$$p = \wp(z(y)), \quad q = \wp'(z(y)),$$

see Appendix A. Here $z(y)$ is any function of y . At this point, u and v are determined as functions of $z(y)$ through (5.16).

(c) It remains to impose that $u' = v$. We get

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{d}{dy} R(\wp(z), \wp'(z)) = S(\wp(z), \wp'(z)) \\ \Rightarrow & R_p \wp'(z) \frac{dz}{dy} + R_q \wp''(z) \frac{dz}{dy} = S(\wp(z), \wp'(z)) \\ \Rightarrow & z'(R_p \wp'(z) + (6\wp^2(z) - g_2/2)R_q) = S(\wp(z), \wp'(z)) \\ \Rightarrow & z' = \frac{S(\wp(z), \wp'(z))}{R_p \wp'(z) + (6\wp^2(z) - g_2/2)R_q}, \quad (5.17) \end{aligned}$$

where we have used $\wp''(z) = 6\wp^2(z) - g_2/2$, see Appendix A. This ODE is solved using separation of variables, resulting in an implicit solution $z = F(y)$, which needs to be inverted to finalize our closed-form solution formula. In order to simplify this equation as much as possible, all powers of $\wp'(z)$ higher than one should be reduced using the differential equation for $\wp(z)$: $(\wp'(z))^2 = 4\wp^3(z) - g_2\wp(z) - g_3$.

Remark. If the algebraic curve $G(u, v) = 0$ has genus 0, it may be parameterized [Bak95], so that

$$u = f(z(y)), \quad v = g(z(y)),$$

where f and g are rational functions of $z(y)$. As before, imposing that $v' = u$ results in a separable equation for $z(y)$, see Example 5.8.

We proceed with some examples.

³Here \wp' denotes derivative with respect to its argument z .

Example 5.7. Consider the (defocusing) **Modified Korteweg - deVries equation**

$$u_t - 6u^2u_x + u_{xxx} = 0.$$

Its traveling-wave reduction is

$$-cu_x - 6u^2u_x + u_{xxx} = 0. \quad (5.18)$$

We follow the steps in the algorithm above. Note that we could integrate the above ODE twice, which would make the method somewhat simpler [DN11]. We illustrate the power of the method by pretending we do not notice this.

1. We Let $u = y^p(a_0 + \dots)$. The terms of lowest degree originate from the second and third term in mKdV. The individual terms cannot dominate (this would require $p = 1$ or $p = 1/3$, both unallowable choices). Balancing the two terms we obtain

$$3p - 1 = p - 3 \Rightarrow p = -1,$$

an allowable choice. With this choice, we find $a_0 = \pm 1$. Thus $p_1 = -1$, $p_2 = -1$ and the maximal elliptic order $M = 2$.

2. Working with $p_1 = -1$, $a_0 = 1$, we determine additional terms in the Laurent series

$$u = \frac{1}{y} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n y^n. \quad (5.19)$$

Per Step 2, no more than $(M + 1)^2 = 9$ terms should be required. Substitution of the expansion (5.19) in (5.18) results in a left-hand side of order -4 . Equating all coefficients to 0, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} 6a_0^3 - 6a_0 &= 0, \\ 12a_0^2a_1 &= 0, \\ ca_0 - 6a_0^2a_2 + 6(2a_0a_2 + a_1^2) &= 0, \\ &\dots \end{aligned}$$

With our choice $a_0 = 1$, this is a triangular system: with a_0 , the second equation determines a_1 , the third equation determined a_2 , and so on. We find

$$u = \frac{1}{y} \left(1 - \frac{c}{6}y^2 + a_3y^3 + a_4y^4 - \frac{ca_3}{6}y^5 + \left(-\frac{ca_4}{14} + \frac{3a_3^2}{7} - \frac{c^3}{1512} \right) y^6 + \dots \right), \quad (5.20)$$

and we easily find as many terms as desired. Note that a_3 and a_4 are not determined. They are the resonances for this problem.

3. We have two choices for m : $m \in [1, 2]$. We begin with $m = 1$. According to the Briot-Bouquet Theorem, the first-order ODE for the solution is

$$\sum_{j_2=0}^1 \sum_{j_1=0}^{2-2j_2} b_{j_1 j_2} u^{j_1} (u')^{j_2} = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow b_{00} + b_{10}u + b_{20}u^2 + b_{01}u' = 0.$$

4. The reader should verify that substitution of (5.20) in this first attempt at an ODE results in inconsistent equations: we may chose $b_{10} = 0$, from which at order -2 it follows that $b_{20} = 1$, leading to the inconsistency $1 = 0$ at order -1 . Thus $m = 1$ is not a good choice⁴.

- 3' Thus we attempt $m = 2$. The Briot-Bouquet ODE is

$$\sum_{j_2=0}^2 \sum_{j_1=0}^{4-2j_2} b_{j_1 j_2} u^{j_1} (u')^{j_2} = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow b_{00} + b_{10}u + b_{20}u^2 + b_{30}u^3 + b_{40}u^4 + b_{01}u' + b_{11}uu' + (u')^2 = 0,$$

where we have chosen $b_{02} = 1$.

- 4' Upon substitution of (5.20), we obtain

$$G(u, u') = (u')^2 - u^4 - cu^2 + 8a_3u + 10a_4 - \frac{7c^2}{36} = 0.$$

This is the same first-order ODE we could have obtained by integrating twice! Of course, the integration constants appear differently than they would have. For simplicity, we let

$$\alpha = 8a_3, \quad -\beta^2 = 10a_4 - \frac{7c^2}{36}.$$

- 5 We apply the Maple command (to date, Maple appears to be the only widely used computer algebra system to offer this functionality) `algcurves[Weierstrassform]`

```
>restart;
>g:=v^2-u^4-c*u^2+alpha*u-beta^2:
>result:=algcurves[Weierstrassform](g,u,v,p,q, Weierstrass);
>result[1];
```

⁴This is not surprising. As is argued in Appendix A it is impossible for an elliptic function to have a single pole in its period parallelogram. Thus both Laurent series are representations of the same solution and $m = 2$.

$$q^2 - 4p^3 + 16p\beta^2 + \frac{4}{3}pc^2 - 4\alpha^2 + \frac{32}{3}\beta^2c - \frac{8}{27}c^3$$

The first command restarts the kernel, clearing all previous calculations. The second line defines the starting curve. Next, we apply the `algcures[Weierstrassform]` command to this curve, with variables u and v , and we are choosing the transformed variables to be called p and q . The transformed curve is given by the first component `result[1]` of `result`, which also contains the transformation and its inverse. Note that `:`'s at the end of a line in maple suppress the output. Next we define g_2 and g_3 by picking off the coefficient of p^1q^0 and of p^0q^0 `coeff(in result[1])`.

```
>g2:=coeff(coeff(result[1],p,1),q,0);
>g3:=coeff(coeff(result[1],p,0),q,0);
```

$$g_2 := 16\beta^2 + \frac{4c^2}{3}$$

$$g_3 := -4\alpha^2 + \frac{32}{3}\beta^2c - \frac{8}{27}c^3$$

The fourth and fifth components of `result` give $R(p, q)$ and $S(p, q)$. The second and third component give their inverses, which we do not need. We suppress the output for $S(p, q)$, which is quite long.

```
>R:=result[4];
>S:=result[5]:
```

$$R := \frac{-3\alpha c + 9\alpha p + 9\beta q}{36\beta^2 - c^2 + 6cp - 9p^2}$$

Last, we calculate the right-hand side of (5.17).

```
>zt:=normal(S/(q*diff(R,p)+diff(R,q)*(6*p^2-g2/2))):
```

In the above, `diff` is the differentiation command with respect to the second input, while `normal` attempts to write the fraction in the form we would write it: eliminate common factors, etc. This is a length expression, and we suppress its output. However it depends on q^2 and we use the equation of the transformed curve to eliminate this dependence, using the substitution command `subs`.

```
>normal(subs(q^2=4*p^3-g2*p-g3,zt));
```

$$\frac{1}{2}$$

and we simply have to solve $z' = 1/2$, so that $z = y/2$ (the integration constant can be absorbed in the choice of x_0 : $z = (x - x_0)/2$).

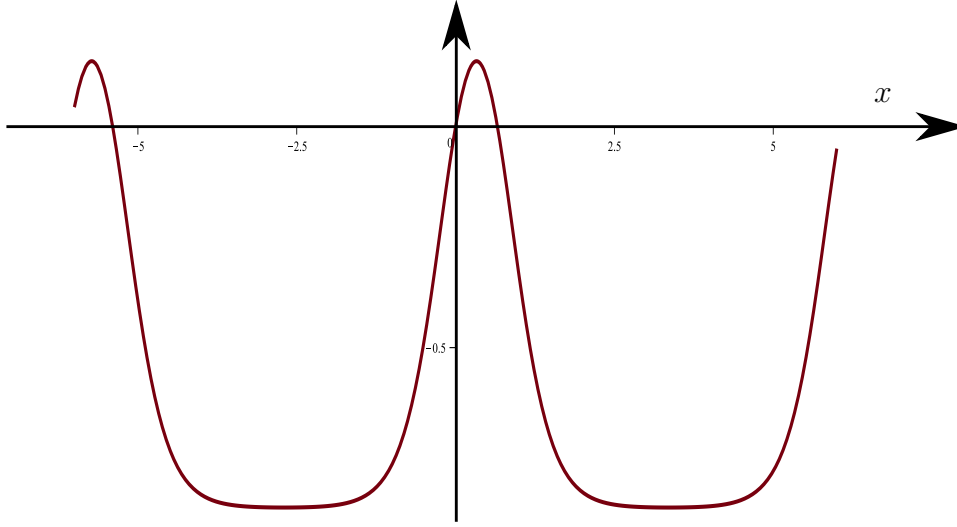


Figure 5.13: Two periods of (5.21) with $x_0 = 0$, $\alpha = 0.881632$, $\beta = 0.41714$ and $c = -2$. These parameters have been chosen so that $\omega_1 = 3$, $\omega_3 = I$ (see Appendix A).

It remains to summarize the solutions we have found. With $p \rightarrow \wp(y/2)$, $q \rightarrow \wp'(y/2)$, and periods determined by g_2 and g_3 (see Appendix A),

$$u(x) = \frac{-3\alpha c + 9\alpha\wp((x - x_0)/2) + 9\beta\wp'((x - x_0)/2)}{36\beta^2 - c^2 + 6c\wp((x - x_0)/2) - 9\wp^2((x - x_0)/2)}, \quad (5.21)$$

and we have obtained a four-parameter (x_0 , α , β and c) family of traveling-wave solutions of the defocusing mKdV equation, through systematic means. The final step would be to examine this expression and figure out for which values of the parameters relevant solutions are obtained: real-valued and nonsingular for real argument, etc. Similarly, it is interesting to examine the limit solutions hiding in (5.21): special values of the parameters for which the expression simplifies, or degenerates to a solitary wave, and so on. We forego this here. A sample plot of one of these solutions is given in Fig. 5.13.

In principle, we should repeat all calculations with $p_2 = -1$. This merely results in finding $-u(x)$. Not only have we found solutions whose functional form would have been near-impossible to guess, we also know that we have found all solutions that are expressible in terms of elliptic functions or their limits.

Example 5.8. We return to the Example of the KdV-Burgers equation on Page 120,

$$u_t + uu_x + \alpha u_{xxx} - \beta u_{xx} = 0.$$

Using the tanh method, we have found the solution (5.14). Here we use the Conte-Musette method to see if we can systematically (i.e., without guessing the functional form of the solution) reproduce this solution, potentially finding others in the process. Our only assumption

is that we are trying to find solutions that are assumed to be elliptic, or are limits of elliptic functions.

Our starting point is the traveling-wave reduction

$$-cu_x + uu_x + \alpha u_{xxx} - \beta u_{xx} = 0,$$

which can be integrated once to give

$$-cu + \frac{1}{2}u^2 + \alpha u_{xx} - \beta u_x = 0. \quad (5.22)$$

We could allow for an integration constant on the right-hand side. This is not much harder, but does produce expressions that are more complicated. Due to the imposed boundary condition in Example 5.5, this constant was omitted before. We omit it here as well.

1. We Let $u = y^p(a_0 + \dots)$. The terms of lowest degree originate from the second and third term above. Balancing these two terms we obtain

$$2p = p - 2 \Rightarrow p = -2,$$

an allowable choice. With this choice, we find $a_0 = -12\alpha$. Thus the maximal elliptic order $M = 2$.

2. Working with $p = -2$, $a_0 = 1$, we determine additional terms in the Laurent series

$$u = \frac{1}{y} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n y^n. \quad (5.23)$$

Per Step 2, no more than $(M + 1)^2 = 9$ terms should be required. Substitution of the expansion (5.19) in (5.18) results in a left-hand side of order -4 . Equating all coefficients to 0, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 &= -\frac{12\beta}{\alpha}, & a_2 &= \frac{7\beta^2}{25\alpha}, & a_3 &= -\frac{\beta^3}{125\alpha^2}, \\ a_4 &= -\frac{\beta^4}{12500\alpha^3}, & a_5 &= \frac{\beta^5}{187500\alpha^4}, & v &= \frac{6\beta^2}{25\alpha}, \\ & & & \dots & & \end{aligned}$$

Note that a_6 is not determined. It is the sole resonances for this problem. On the other hand, this process does select a value for the velocity v of the traveling-wave profile.

3. We have only one choice for m : $m = 2$. According to the Briot-Bouquet Theorem, the first-order ODE for the solution is

$$\sum_{j_2=0}^2 \sum_{j_1=0}^{4-2j_2} b_{j_1 j_2} u^{j_1} (u')^{j_2} = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow b_{00} + b_{10}u + b_{20}u^2 + b_{30}u^3 + b_{40}u^4 + b_{01}u' + b_{11}uu' + (u')^2 = 0, \quad (5.24)$$

where we have chosen $b_{02} = 1$.

- 4 Upon substitution of (5.20), we obtain

$$G(u, u') = (u')^2 + b_{11}uu' + b_{01}u' + b_{30}u^3 + b_{20}u^2 + b_{10}u = 0,$$

where

$$b_{11} = -\frac{4\beta}{5\alpha}, \quad b_{01} = \frac{48\beta^3}{125\alpha^2}, \quad b_{30} = \frac{1}{3\alpha},$$

$$b_{20} = -\frac{8\beta^2}{25\alpha^2}, \quad b_{10} = \frac{48\beta^4}{625\alpha^3}, \quad a_6 = \frac{\beta^6}{7875000\alpha^5}.$$

At this point, the resonance coefficient a_6 is determined, so that we can, at best, hope to construct a family of solutions depending on one parameter, since we are solving the first-order ODE (5.24).

- 5 Once again, we turn to Maple. Assuming the values of the constants $b_{j_1 j_2}$ have been defined already, as above, we first calculate the genus of the algebraic curve $G(u, v) = 0$.

```
>g:=v^2+b[1,1]*u*v+b[0,1]*v+b[3,0]*u^3+b[2,0]*u^2+b[1,0]*u:
>algcures[genus](g,u,v);
```

0

Since the genus of $g(u, v) = 0$ is zero⁵, as opposed to 1, we know that the curve can be parameterized in terms of rational functions:

$$u = f(z), \quad v = g(z),$$

with parameter z , which will likely depend on x . We use Maple's `algcures[parameterization]` command to obtain the parametrization with parameter z .

⁵We should have started the last step of Example 5.5 by calculating the genus of $G(u, v)$ as well. However, if this genus $\neq 1$, the command `algcures[Weierstrassform]` would have thrown an error flag.

```

>result:=alcurves[parametrization](g,u,v,z):
>f:=result[1];
>g:=result[2]:

```

$$f := -\frac{15\alpha z(48\beta^3 z + 125\alpha^2 z - 100\alpha\beta)}{144\beta^4 z^2 - 600\alpha\beta^2 z + 625\alpha^2}$$

We suppress the output for $g(z)$, which is quite long. Next we determine the dependence of z on x . Since $u = f(z(x))$ and $u' = v = g(z(x))$, we need

$$f'(z) \frac{dz}{dx} = g(z) \quad \Rightarrow \quad \frac{dz}{dx} = \frac{g(z)}{f'(z)}.$$

For our example, we find

$$z' = \frac{z}{250\alpha^2} ((24\beta^3 + 125\alpha^2)z - 50\alpha\beta),$$

which is easily solved using separation of variables. We find

$$z = \frac{50\alpha\beta}{c\alpha\beta e^{\beta t/5\alpha} + 24\beta^3 + 125\alpha^2},$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. This expression is substituted in $u = f(z)$, resulting in the solution expression

$$u = \frac{12\beta^2 (1 + 4c\beta e^{\beta t/5\alpha})}{25\alpha (1 + 2c\beta e^{\beta t/5\alpha})^2}.$$

Some minor algebraic manipulation, including redefining $2\beta c = e^\theta$, confirm that this is exactly the solution (5.14).

Although this example did not lead to new solutions, we were able to derive the previously “guessed” solution by algorithmic means. Further, we may conclude that no (nondegenerate) elliptic solutions exist.

5.4 Symmetry solutions of differential equations

The traveling-wave or stationary solutions and the similarity solutions are two of the simplest examples of classes of symmetry solutions. Before we talk about symmetry solutions in general, we need to discuss symmetries of differential equations in some detail.

Definition. Consider the equation $u_t = N(x, u, u_x, \dots)$. The transformation

$$\begin{cases} x &= x(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}) \\ t &= t(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}) \\ u &= u(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}) \end{cases},$$

is a symmetry of this equation if it leaves the equation invariant. In other words, the new dependent variable \hat{u} satisfies the equation $\hat{u}_{\hat{t}} = N(\hat{x}, \hat{u}, \hat{u}_{\hat{x}}, \dots)$.

This definition is given specifically for the case of a scalar partial differential equation. It generalizes in an obvious way to systems of equations, with more dependent or independent variables. Alternatively, we can also state it for ordinary differential equations and systems of such.

Example 5.9. Let

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = f(x),$$

an autonomous ordinary differential equation. The transformation

$$\begin{cases} x &= \hat{x} \\ t &= \hat{t} + \epsilon \end{cases},$$

where $\epsilon \in \mathbb{R}$ is a free parameter, is a symmetry of the equation. Showing this is an easy calculation:

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = \frac{d\hat{x}}{d\hat{t}} = f(\hat{x}).$$

Example 5.10. Consider the system of ordinary differential equations

$$\begin{cases} \frac{dx}{dt} &= x^2 + y^2 \\ \frac{dy}{dt} &= 2xy \end{cases}.$$

It has the symmetry

$$\begin{cases} x &= \hat{x} \\ y &= -\hat{y} \\ t &= \hat{t} \end{cases}.$$

This is also an almost trivial calculation.

There is a fundamental difference between the symmetries in these two examples. The symmetry for the first example depends on an arbitrary real parameter. By letting this parameter be zero, our symmetry becomes the identity transformation. Thus it is correct to say that the symmetry of the first example is a continuous deformation of the identity. Such a statement is not possible for the symmetry for the second example: it contains no

free parameter, and it is fundamentally different from the identity transformation. Because of this difference, the first symmetry is referred to as a *continuous* symmetry, whereas the second symmetry is called a *discrete* symmetry. Continuous symmetries are also called *Lie symmetries*. Lie symmetries are members of one- or more-parameter families of symmetries, whereas discrete symmetries are isolated. Lie symmetries are the only symmetries we will consider in the remainder of this section.

Remarks

- The Lie symmetries we discuss in this chapter are so-called Lie point symmetries, because the transformation from (u, x, t) to $(\hat{u}, \hat{x}, \hat{t})$ does not depend on any of the derivatives of u at the point (x, t) , but only on the values of u at (x, t) . The more general symmetries where the transformation does depend on derivatives are referred to as nonclassical.
- As with many topics in this book, there is much more to the theory of Lie symmetries than we cover here. Excellent sources to dig deeper are Olver's classic text [Olv93], Stephani's more application oriented [Ste89], and Bluman, Cheviakov and Anco's [BCA10]. Olver's book [Olv93] includes a wealth of information on classical and generalized symmetries, connections with differential geometry, applications to Lagrangian and Hamiltonian systems, *etc.* Stephani's text [Ste89] has lots of interesting example, and is a good place to start. Bluman *et al's* [BCA10] has lots of information on results (*Noether's Theorem*) whose details may be hard to find elsewhere, and focuses extensively on conserved quantities, see Chapter 7.

5.4.1 Transformation groups and their generators

Consider a transformation which depends on one continuous parameter ϵ

$$\begin{cases} x &= x(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}, \epsilon) \\ t &= t(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}, \epsilon) \\ u &= u(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}, \epsilon) \end{cases}.$$

We assume that this transformation is analytic with respect to ϵ , in a neighborhood of $\epsilon = 0$. Further, at $\epsilon = 0$, the transformation is assumed to be the identity transformation. From

$$\begin{cases} x &= x(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}, 0) + \epsilon \frac{\partial x}{\partial \epsilon}(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}, 0) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\ t &= t(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}, 0) + \epsilon \frac{\partial t}{\partial \epsilon}(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}, 0) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\ u &= u(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}, 0) + \epsilon \frac{\partial u}{\partial \epsilon}(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}, 0) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \end{cases},$$

we get

$$\begin{cases} x &= \hat{x} + \epsilon X(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\ t &= \hat{t} + \epsilon T(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\ u &= \hat{u} + \epsilon U(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \end{cases},$$

where we have defined

$$\begin{cases} X(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}) &= \frac{\partial x}{\partial \epsilon}(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}, 0) \\ T(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}) &= \frac{\partial t}{\partial \epsilon}(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}, 0) \\ U(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}) &= \frac{\partial u}{\partial \epsilon}(\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u}, 0) \end{cases}.$$

The functions X , T and U are called the *generators* of the transformation group.

Theorem. *The ϵ -dependent transformation $(x, t, u) \rightarrow (\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u})$ may be recovered from its generators, for ϵ in some interval containing zero.*

Proof. Given the generators X , T and U , consider the system of ordinary differential equations

$$\begin{cases} \frac{\partial x}{\partial \epsilon} &= X(x, t, u) \\ \frac{\partial t}{\partial \epsilon} &= T(x, t, u) \\ \frac{\partial u}{\partial \epsilon} &= U(x, t, u) \end{cases},$$

with “initial conditions” $x(\epsilon = 0) = \hat{x}$, $t(\epsilon = 0) = \hat{t}$, and $u(\epsilon = 0) = \hat{u}$. The standard existence theorem for ordinary differential equations (ϵ is the only independent variable in these equations) guarantees the existence of a solution for some interval of ϵ values, around these initial conditions. ■

Before we move on to an example, it should be noted that the near-identity transformation $(x, t, u) \rightarrow (\hat{x}, \hat{t}, \hat{u})$ may be formally inverted to give

$$\begin{cases} \hat{x} &= x - \epsilon X(x, t, u) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\ \hat{t} &= t - \epsilon T(x, t, u) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\ \hat{u} &= u - \epsilon U(x, t, u) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \end{cases}.$$

Example 5.11. Consider the one-parameter family of (linear) transformations

$$\begin{cases} x &= \hat{x} \cos \epsilon + \hat{t} \sin \epsilon \\ t &= -\hat{x} \sin \epsilon + \hat{t} \cos \epsilon \\ u &= \hat{u} \end{cases}.$$

Note that $\epsilon = 0$ gives rise to the identity transformation. The generators of this transformation may be found by Taylor expanding around $\epsilon = 0$:

$$\begin{cases} x &= \hat{x} + \epsilon \hat{t} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\ t &= \hat{t} - \epsilon \hat{x} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\ u &= \hat{u} \end{cases},$$

from which it follows that the generators are

$$X = \hat{t}, \quad T = -\hat{x}, \quad U = 0.$$

We could have found these as well by taking a derivative of the transformation with respect to ϵ , and equating ϵ to zero.

The transformation is recovered from its generators by solving the differential equations

$$\begin{cases} \frac{\partial x}{\partial \epsilon} &= t, \\ \frac{\partial t}{\partial \epsilon} &= -x, \\ \frac{\partial u}{\partial \epsilon} &= 0, \\ x(0) &= \hat{x}, \quad t(0) = \hat{t}, \quad u(0) = \hat{u}. \end{cases}$$

It is an easy check to see that the original transformation is indeed the only solution of this system.

In general, the transformation determines a Lie group of symmetries of the underlying differential equation, whereas the generators determine its associated Lie algebra. The process of recovering the group from its algebra is a standard formal exponentiation [Olv93].

5.4.2 Finding symmetries

In this section we illustrate the algorithmic way of finding symmetries by considering two examples. From these two examples, it should be clear how to proceed in general. One aspect learned from these examples is that the calculations to determine the Lie symmetries are tedious, but algorithmic. Many software packages exist to assist with these calculations, and some have automated them completely (see Chapter 13 of [AAD⁺94] for a somewhat dated review). We stay away from the main tools used in the implementations of these algorithms, like prolongations and jets. Rather, we introduce just what we need.

The Lane-Emden-Fowler equation

This equation originates in astrophysics [Lan70]. It reads

$$x^2 \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} + 2x \frac{du}{dx} + x^2 u^5 = 0.$$

This is a nonlinear ODE instead of a PDE. Because of this, our set-up from the previous section may be downsized a little. We look for symmetries, or rather their generators, in the form

$$\begin{cases} \hat{x} &= x + \epsilon X(x, u) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\ \hat{u} &= u + \epsilon U(x, u) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \end{cases}.$$

Imposing that the hatted variables \hat{x} and \hat{u} satisfy the same Lane-Emden-Fowler equation, we have

$$\hat{x}^2 \frac{d^2 \hat{u}}{d\hat{x}^2} + 2\hat{x} \frac{d\hat{u}}{d\hat{x}} + \hat{x}^2 \hat{u}^5 = 0.$$

We rewrite this equation using our near-identity transformation. To this end we need to compute both $d\hat{u}/d\hat{x}$ and $d^2\hat{u}/d\hat{x}^2$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d\hat{u}}{d\hat{x}} &= \frac{d\hat{u}/dx}{d\hat{x}/dx} \\ &= \frac{du/dx + \epsilon dU/dx}{1 + \epsilon dX/dx} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\ &= \left(\frac{du}{dx} + \epsilon \frac{dU}{dx} \right) \left(1 - \epsilon \frac{dX}{dx} \right) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\ &= \frac{du}{dx} + \epsilon \left(\frac{dU}{dx} - \frac{du}{dx} \frac{dX}{dx} \right) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\ &= u' + \epsilon \left(\frac{\partial U}{\partial x} + u' \frac{\partial U}{\partial u} - u' \left(\frac{\partial X}{\partial x} + u' \frac{\partial X}{\partial u} \right) \right) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\ &= u' + \epsilon (U_x + u' U_u - u' X_x - u'^2 X_u) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \end{aligned}$$

where we have used primes to denote derivatives of u with respect to x , and indices to denote partial derivatives of X and U with respect to x and u . Note that $d/dx = \partial_x + u' \partial_u$, when applied to $U(x, u)$, $X(x, u)$. In general, d/dx is a material derivative and the chain rule is used, when it is applied to functions of multiple variables.

Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d^2 \hat{u}}{d\hat{x}^2} &= \frac{d \frac{d\hat{u}}{d\hat{x}} / dx}{d\hat{x} / dx} \\
&= \frac{u'' + \epsilon \frac{d}{dx} (U_x + u'U_u - u'X_x - u'^2X_u)}{1 + \epsilon dX/dx} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\
&= (u'' + \epsilon (U_{xx} + 2u'U_{xu} + u''U_u + u'^2U_{uu} - u''X_x - u'X_{xx} \\
&\quad - 2u'^2X_{xu} - 2u'u''X_u - u'^3X_{uu})) \left(1 - \epsilon \frac{dX}{dx}\right) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\
&= u'' + \epsilon (U_{xx} + 2u'U_{xu} + u''U_u + u'^2U_{uu} - 2u''X_x - u'X_{xx} \\
&\quad - 2u'^2X_{xu} - 3u'u''X_u - u'^3X_{uu}) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2).
\end{aligned}$$

These two expressions and the near-identity transformation are substituted in

$$\hat{x}^2 \frac{d^2 \hat{u}}{d\hat{x}^2} + 2\hat{x} \frac{d\hat{u}}{d\hat{x}} + \hat{x}^2 \hat{u}^5 = 0,$$

and the coefficients of different powers of ϵ are equated to zero. At order zero in ϵ we recover the Lane-Emden-Fowler equation expressed using the independent variable x and the dependent variable u . This is no surprise. The coefficient of the first-order term is

$$\begin{aligned}
&u'' (2xX + x^2U_u - 2x^2X_x - 3u'x^2X_u) \\
&\quad + u'^3 (-x^2X_{uu}) \\
&\quad + u'^2 (x^2U_{uu} - 2x^2X_{xu} - 2xX_u) \\
&+ u' (2x^2U_{xu} - x^2X_{xx} + 2xU_u - 2xX_x + 2X) \\
&\quad + x^2U_{xx} + 2xU_x + 2xu^5X + 5x^2u^4U = 0.
\end{aligned}$$

Conveniently, we have sorted the terms by their dependence on the derivatives of $u(x)$. First note that the quantity u'' appears in this equation. It should be eliminated by using the Lane-Emden-Fowler equation: $u'' = (-2u' - xu^5)/x$. This gives

$$\begin{aligned}
&u'^3 (-x^2X_{uu}) \\
&\quad + u'^2 (x^2U_{uu} - 2x^2X_{xu} + 4xX_u) \\
&+ u' (2x^2U_{xu} - x^2X_{xx} + 2xX_x - 2X + 3x^2u^5X_u) \\
&\quad + x^2U_{xx} + 2xU_x + 5x^2u^4U - x^2u^5U_u + 2x^2u^5X_x = 0.
\end{aligned}$$

We have already used the differential equation to eliminate u'' , which implies that u and u' are independent quantities at this point. Since X and U are functions of x and u only,

but not of u' , we may interpret the above equation as a third-order polynomial in u' , which has to vanish identically. As a consequence, its coefficients have to vanish:

$$\begin{cases} -x^2 X_{uu} = 0 \\ x^2 U_{uu} - 2x^2 X_{xu} + 4x X_u = 0 \\ 2x^2 U_{xu} - x^2 X_{xx} + 2x X_x - 2X + 3x^2 u^5 X_u = 0 \\ x^2 U_{xx} + 2x U_x + 5x^2 u^4 U - x^2 u^5 U_u + 2x^2 u^5 X_x = 0 \end{cases}.$$

The main idea is to solve these equations one-by-one, breaking down the u - and x -dependence of X and U as we go. For instance, from the first equation

$$X = A(x) + uB(x).$$

This solves the first equation, leaving us with the last three. Substituting this result in the second equation results in

$$U = u^2 B'(x) - \frac{2u^2}{x} B(x) + C(x)u + D(x).$$

At this point we have completely determined the u -dependence of both X and U . This means that upon substitution in the remaining equations we may also equate powers of u , leaving us to determine the x -dependence. The third equation separates in the following equations:

$$\begin{aligned} u^5 : & & B &= 0, \\ u^1 : & & 4x^2 B_{xx} - 8x^2 \left(\frac{B}{x} \right)_x - x^2 B_{xx} + 2x B_x - 2B &= 0, \\ u^0 : & & 2x^2 C_x - x^2 A_{xx} + 2x A_x - 2A &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad (5.25)$$

In order to find these equations, x and u are treated as independent variables: $(A(x) + uB(x))_x = A_x + uB_x$. The x -dependence of u has already been taken into account by using the material derivative above. From the first of these equations,

$$B = 0,$$

and the second equation is satisfied. Turning to the fourth of the original equations, it separates in four parts:

$$\begin{aligned} u^5 : & & 4x^2 C + 2x^2 A_x &= 0, \\ u^4 : & & D &= 0, \\ u^1 : & & x^2 C_{xx} + 2x C_x &= 0, \\ u^0 : & & x^2 D_{xx} + 2x D_x &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad (5.26)$$

From the second equation, the fourth one is automatically satisfied. The first equation gives

$$C = -\frac{1}{2}A_x.$$

The remaining two equations (5.25) and (5.26) may be written as equations for A only. They are both Euler equations. Their common solution is

$$A = x,$$

up to a multiplicative constant which may be absorbed in ϵ . Using $C = -A_x/2$, it follows that

$$U = -\frac{u}{2}.$$

This last step where we had to solve two equations for one function $A(x)$ should make it clear that not every equation has symmetries: the conditions to be satisfied for symmetries to exist are typically overdetermined and some cancelation has to occur for these overdetermined equations to have a solution, as happened here.

We are now in a position to state the infinitesimal symmetry transformation of the Lane-Emden-Fowler equation:

$$\hat{x} = x(1 + \epsilon) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \quad \hat{u} = u \left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\epsilon\right) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2).$$

Its full form (obtained by solving the ϵ differential equations) is

$$\hat{x} = xe^\epsilon, \quad \hat{u} = ue^{-\epsilon/2}.$$

We see that this is nothing but a regular scaling symmetry. Using the results from the previous section, we could use it to obtain a similarity solution of the Lane-Emden-Fowler equation (Exercise 5.15).

The KdV equation

As a second example, we find the Lie-point symmetries of the **KdV equation**

$$u_t = uu_x + u_{xxx}.$$

We look for a symmetry transformation of the form

$$\begin{cases} \hat{x} &= x + \epsilon X(x, t, u) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{t} &= t + \epsilon T(x, t, u) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{u} &= u + \epsilon U(x, t, u) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2). \end{cases}$$

Imposing that the hatted variables \hat{x} , \hat{t} and \hat{u} satisfy the same KdV equation, we have

$$\hat{u}_{\hat{t}} = \hat{u}\hat{u}_{\hat{x}} + \hat{u}_{\hat{x}\hat{x}\hat{x}}.$$

We now rewrite this equation using our near-identity transformation. We need to compute $\hat{u}_{\hat{x}}$, $\hat{u}_{\hat{t}}$ and $\hat{u}_{\hat{x}\hat{x}\hat{x}}$. To this end, we check how the derivatives of a function $\hat{f}(\hat{x}, \hat{t})$ transform. Suppose that $\hat{f}(\hat{x}, \hat{t}) = f(x, t) + \epsilon F(x, t) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2)$. We have

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial \hat{f}}{\partial x} &= \frac{\partial \hat{f}}{\partial \hat{x}} \frac{\partial \hat{x}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \hat{f}}{\partial \hat{t}} \frac{\partial \hat{t}}{\partial x}, \\ \frac{\partial \hat{f}}{\partial t} &= \frac{\partial \hat{f}}{\partial \hat{x}} \frac{\partial \hat{x}}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial \hat{f}}{\partial \hat{t}} \frac{\partial \hat{t}}{\partial t},\end{aligned}$$

from which it follows by Cramer's Rule that

$$\frac{\partial \hat{f}}{\partial \hat{x}} = \frac{\frac{\partial \hat{f}}{\partial x} \frac{\partial \hat{t}}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial \hat{f}}{\partial t} \frac{\partial \hat{x}}{\partial x}}{\frac{\partial \hat{x}}{\partial x} \frac{\partial \hat{t}}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial \hat{x}}{\partial t} \frac{\partial \hat{x}}{\partial x}}, \quad \frac{\partial \hat{f}}{\partial \hat{t}} = \frac{\frac{\partial \hat{f}}{\partial t} \frac{\partial \hat{x}}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial \hat{f}}{\partial x} \frac{\partial \hat{x}}{\partial t}}{\frac{\partial \hat{x}}{\partial x} \frac{\partial \hat{t}}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial \hat{x}}{\partial t} \frac{\partial \hat{x}}{\partial x}}.$$

Expanding the first expression results in

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial \hat{f}}{\partial \hat{x}} &= \frac{(f_x + \epsilon F_x)(1 + \epsilon T_t) - (f_t + \epsilon F_t)(\epsilon T_x)}{(1 + \epsilon X_x)(1 + \epsilon T_t) - \epsilon T_x \epsilon X_t} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\ &= \frac{f_x + \epsilon F_x + \epsilon f_x T_t - \epsilon f_t T_x}{1 + \epsilon X_x + \epsilon T_t} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\ &= (f_x + \epsilon F_x + \epsilon f_x T_t - \epsilon f_t T_x)(1 - \epsilon X_x - \epsilon T_t) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\ &= \hat{f}_x - \epsilon(f_t T_x + f_x X_x) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2).\end{aligned}$$

During the above derivation we have assumed that f , X and T depend explicitly on x and t only, and not through any dependence on u and its derivatives. If such is the case, the above formula needs to be modified by replacing all derivatives by material derivatives:

$$\hat{f}_{\hat{x}} = D_x \hat{f} - \epsilon(D_t f D_x T + D_x f D_x X) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2),$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}D_x &= \partial_x + u_x \partial_u + u_{xx} \partial_{u_x} + u_{xxx} \partial_{u_{xx}} + \dots, \\ D_t &= \partial_t + u_t \partial_u + u_{tt} \partial_{u_t} + u_{ttt} \partial_{u_{tt}} + \dots,\end{aligned}$$

and u , u_x , u_t , *etc.* are all regarded as independent variables. In other words: $D_x u = (\partial_x + u_x \partial_u + u_{xx} \partial_{u_x} + u_{xxx} \partial_{u_{xx}} + \dots)u = u_x$, with the only contribution coming from the

second term. There is no contribution from the first term since x and u are considered independent at this stage.

Applying this formula to $\hat{f} = \hat{u} = u + \epsilon U(x, t, u) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2)$ gives

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{u}_{\hat{x}} &= D_x \hat{u} - \epsilon(D_t u D_x T + D_x u D_x X) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\ &= D_x(u + \epsilon U(x, t, u)) - \epsilon(D_t u D_x T + D_x u D_x X) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\ &= u_x + \epsilon(U_x + u_x U_u) - \epsilon(u_t(T_x + u_x T_u) + u_x(X_x + u_x X_u)) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2) \\ &= u_x + \epsilon(U_x + (U_u - X_x)u_x - T_x u_t - X_u u_x^2 - T_u u_x u_t) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2).\end{aligned}$$

We may now apply the same formula to find $\hat{u}_{\hat{x}\hat{x}}$ using $\hat{f} = \hat{u}_{\hat{x}}$, having determined $f = u_x$ and $F = U_x + (U_u - X_x)u_x - T_x u_t - X_u u_x^2 - T_u u_x u_t$ above. Note that F explicitly depends on u_x and u_t , making the use of the derivative rules a little more complicated. Once this is done, we may iterate again to find $\hat{u}_{\hat{x}\hat{x}\hat{x}}$. We could continue this, but no more x -derivatives are needed for the treatment of the KdV equation. As you can and should check, we find

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{u}_{\hat{x}\hat{x}} &= u_{xx} + \epsilon(U_{xx} + (2U_{xu} - X_{xx})u_x - T_{xx}u_t + (U_{uu} - 2X_{xu})u_x^2 \\ &\quad - 2T_{xu}u_x u_t - X_{uu}u_x^3 - T_{uu}u_x^2 u_t + (U_u - 2X_x)u_{xx} \\ &\quad - 2T_x u_{xt} - 3X_u u_x u_{xx} - T_u u_{xx} u_t - 2T_u u_x u_{xt}) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2),\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{u}_{\hat{x}\hat{x}\hat{x}} &= u_{xxx} + \epsilon(U_{xxx} + (3U_{xuu} - X_{xxx})u_x - T_{xxx}u_t + (3U_{xuu} - 3X_{xuu})u_x^2 \\ &\quad - 3T_{xuu}u_x u_t + (-3X_{xuu} + U_{uuu})u_x^3 - 3T_{xuu}u_x^2 u_t - X_{uuu}u_x^4 \\ &\quad + (3U_{xu} - 3X_{xx})u_{xx} - T_{xxx}u_x^3 u_t - 3T_{xx}u_{xt} + (2U_{uu} - 7X_{xu})u_x u_{xx} \\ &\quad - 6X_{uu}u_x^2 u_{xx} - 3T_{xu}u_{xx} u_t - 6T_{xu}u_x u_{xt} - 3T_{uu}u_x^2 u_{xt} - 3T_{uu}u_{xx} u_x u_t \\ &\quad - 3X_u u_{xx}^2 - 3T_u u_{xx} u_{xt} + (U_u - 3X_x)u_{xxx} - 4X_u u_x u_{xxx} - T_u u_{xxx} u_t \\ &\quad - 3T_x u_{xxt} - 3T_u u_x u_{xxt}) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2).\end{aligned}$$

Proceeding the same way for \hat{f}_t , we obtain

$$\hat{u}_{\hat{t}} = u_t + \epsilon(U_t - X_t u_x + (U_u - T_t)u_t - X_u u_x u_t - T_u u_t^2) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2).$$

The collection of these results allows us to express the KdV equation in the hatted variables. Doing this results in the KdV equation in terms of the original variables at order ϵ^0 , as expected. The first-order condition determines the infinitesimal symmetries. This first-order condition depends on x , t and u through its dependence on $X(x, t, u)$, $T(x, t, u)$ and $U(x, t, u)$. However, it also explicitly depends on u_x , u_t , u_{xx} , u_{xt} , u_{xxx} , u_{xxt} and u_{5x} . As a first step, the dependence on u_t , u_{xt} and u_{xxt} is eliminated by letting

$$\begin{aligned}
u_t &= uu_x + u_{xxx}, \\
u_{xt} &= u_x^2 + uu_{xx} + u_{xxxx}, \\
u_{xxt} &= 3u_x u_{xx} + uu_{xxx} + u_{5x}.
\end{aligned}$$

Having eliminated all t derivatives of u , we obtain an equation that explicitly depends on the x derivatives of u , up to order 5. Since the PDE has been used already to eliminate the t derivatives of u , which depend of its x derivatives through this PDE, all remaining quantities $x, t, u, u_x, \dots, u_{5x}$ are independent. Moreover, the explicit dependence on the x derivatives of u is polynomial. This implies that the coefficients of all different powers of these derivatives must vanish, resulting in many differential equations to be satisfied by $X(x, t, u)$, $T(x, t, u)$ and $U(x, t, u)$.

Equating the coefficients of u_{5x} to zero, we find two conditions:

$$\begin{aligned}
T_x &= 0, \\
T_u &= 0,
\end{aligned}$$

from which it follows that

$$T = T(t),$$

without any dependence on x or u . The remaining condition is

$$\begin{aligned}
&-X_t u_x + (U_u - T_t)(uu_x + u_{xxx}) - X_u u_x(uu_x + u_{xxx}) + U_t = \\
&\quad Uu_x + uU_x + uu_x U_u - uu_x X_x - uu_x^2 X_u + U_{xxx} + \\
&\quad (3U_{xxu} - X_{xxx})u_x + (3U_{xuu} - 3X_{uux})u_x^2 + (-3X_{xuu} + U_{uuu})u_x^3 - \\
&\quad X_{uuu}u_x^4 + (3U_{ux} - 3X_{xx})u_{xx} + (2U_{uu} - 7X_{xu})u_x u_{xx} - 6X_{uu}u_x^2 u_{xx} - \\
&\quad 3X_u u_{xx}^2 + (U_u - 3X_x)u_{xxx} - 4X_u u_x u_{xxx}.
\end{aligned}$$

Now we equate coefficients of u_{xxx} , to find that

$$\begin{aligned}
X_u &= 0, \\
T_t &= 3X_x,
\end{aligned}$$

from which it follows that X only depends on x and t , and since T is a function of t only, we obtain that X is linear in x :

$$X = a(t) + xb(t),$$

and

$$T_t = 3b(t).$$

Next we peel off the terms with u_{xx} contributions. These result in

$$\begin{aligned}
U_{uu} &= 0, \\
U_{ux} &= 0,
\end{aligned}$$

giving rise to

$$U = c(x, t) + u d(t).$$

Proceeding by eliminating terms with u_x we finally get that

$$\begin{aligned} X &= -\alpha t + \beta - \frac{1}{2}\gamma x, \\ T &= -\frac{3}{2}\gamma t + \delta, \\ U &= \alpha + \gamma u, \end{aligned}$$

where α , β , γ and δ are arbitrary constants. We conclude that the Lie point symmetry group of the KdV equation is 4-dimensional. Thus, this group contains 4 fundamentally independent symmetries. Let us examine these in more detail. Each fundamental symmetry may be obtained by equating 3 of the 4 parameters to zero, and the other one to 1.

1. $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) = (1, 0, 0, 0)$: the infinitesimal symmetry is

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{u} &= u + \epsilon + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{x} &= x - \epsilon t + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{t} &= t + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2). \end{aligned}$$

We integrate the symmetry group equations to recover the symmetry for finite values of ϵ . We find

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{u} &= u + \epsilon, \\ \hat{x} &= x - \epsilon t, \\ \hat{t} &= t, \end{aligned}$$

for $\epsilon \in \mathbb{R}$. This is a Galilean boost: putting the solution in a moving coordinate frame results in a change of the background level of the solution: if $u(x, t)$ is a solution, then so is $u(x + \epsilon t, t) + \epsilon$.

2. $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) = (0, 1, 0, 0)$: the infinitesimal symmetry is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{u} &= u(1 + \epsilon) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{x} &= x(1 - \epsilon/2) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{t} &= t(1 - 3\epsilon/2) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \end{aligned}$$

leading to the symmetry group equations for finite values of ϵ :

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{u} &= ue^\epsilon, \\ \hat{x} &= xe^{-\epsilon/2}, \\ \hat{t} &= te^{-3\epsilon/2}, \end{aligned}$$

for $\epsilon \in \mathbb{R}$. This is a scaling transformation: if $u(x, t)$ is a solution, then so is $e^\epsilon u(xe^{\epsilon/2}, te^{3\epsilon/2})$.

3. $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) = (0, 0, 1, 0)$: the infinitesimal symmetry is

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{u} &= u + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{x} &= x + \epsilon + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{t} &= t + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2),\end{aligned}$$

so that the symmetry group equations are

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{u} &= u, \\ \hat{x} &= x + \epsilon, \\ \hat{t} &= t,\end{aligned}$$

for $\epsilon \in \mathbb{R}$. This is spatial translational invariance: if $u(x, t)$ is a solution, then so is $u(x - \epsilon, t)$. Thus the choice of spatial origin does not matter.

4. $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) = (0, 0, 0, 1)$: the infinitesimal symmetry is

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{u} &= u + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{x} &= x + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{t} &= t + \epsilon + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2).\end{aligned}$$

We may integrate the symmetry group differential equations to recover the symmetry for finite values of ϵ . We find

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{u} &= u, \\ \hat{x} &= x, \\ \hat{t} &= t + \epsilon,\end{aligned}$$

for $\epsilon \in \mathbb{R}$. This is a temporal translational invariance: if $u(x, t)$ is a solution, then so is $u(x, t - \epsilon)$. In other words, it does not matter when we start our clock.

Next, we consider some more examples, but with less detail.

Example 5.12. *For linear homogeneous partial differential equations with constant coefficients, we know that if $u(x, t)$ and $U(x, t)$ are both solutions, then so is*

$$\hat{u}(\hat{x}, \hat{t}) = u(x, t) + \epsilon U(x, t),$$

where $\hat{x} = x$ and $\hat{t} = t$. Thus, linear homogeneous partial differential equations with constant coefficients have infinite-dimensional families of point symmetries. In other words, these symmetries depend on free functions. For instance, for the heat equation

$$u_t = \sigma u_{xx},$$

one finds the infinitesimal symmetries

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{u} &= u + \epsilon \left((x\eta(t) + \chi(t))u + \frac{x^3}{12\sigma}T''(t) + \frac{x^2}{2\sigma}A'(t) + x\gamma(t) + \delta(t) \right) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{x} &= x + \epsilon \left(\frac{x}{2}T'(t) + A(t) \right) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{t} &= t + \epsilon T(t) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2),\end{aligned}$$

as the reader can (and should) check, using the formulas for \hat{u}_t and $\hat{u}_{\hat{x}\hat{x}}$ from the previous example. Thus, the point symmetries for the heat equation depend on six arbitrary functions of t (Exercise 5.17).

Example 5.13. Consider the Burgers equation

$$u_t + uu_x = \sigma u_{xx}.$$

The reader may verify that looking for the Lie point symmetries of this equation results in a 5-dimensional set of infinitesimal symmetries (Exercise 5.18). The usual culprits are encountered: translation in x , translation in t , a scaling transformation, a Galilean shift. The fifth symmetry is more complicated, but of no direct interest to us right now.

Let us rewrite the Burgers' equation in its potential form: introduce $v(x, t)$ by

$$u(x, t) = v_x(x, t).$$

Substitution in the Burgers equation and integrating once results in

$$v_t + \frac{1}{2}v_x^2 = \sigma v_{xx},$$

where we have equated the integration constant to zero. We look for Lie-point symmetries of this equation. We may use the formulae we derived and used for the KdV example.

To first order in ϵ we find

$$\begin{aligned}&v_t + \epsilon \left((V_t - X_t v_x + (V_v - T_t)v_t - X_v v_x v_t - T_v v_t^2) + \right. \\ &\quad \left. \frac{1}{2}v_x^2 + \epsilon v_x (V_x - T_x v_t + (V_v - X_x)v_x - X_v v_x^2 - T_v v_x v_t) = \right. \\ &\quad \sigma v_{xx} + \sigma \epsilon (V_{xx} + (2V_{xv} - X_{xx})v_x - T_{xx}v_t + (V_{vv} - 2X_{xv})v_x^2 - \\ &\quad 2T_{xv}v_x v_t - X_{vv}v_x^3 - T_{vv}v_x^2 v_t + (V_v - 2X_x)v_{xx} - 2T_x v_{xt} - \\ &\quad \left. 3X_v v_x v_{xx} - T_v v_{xx} v_t - 2T_v v_x v_{xt}) \right) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2).\end{aligned}$$

We replace

$$\begin{aligned}v_t &= \sigma v_{xx} - \frac{1}{2}v_x^2, \\v_{xt} &= \sigma v_{xxx} - v_v v_{xx}.\end{aligned}$$

This imports dependence on v_{xxx} in the equation determining the infinitesimal symmetries. Equating its coefficients to zero results in

$$T_u = 0, \quad T_x = 0,$$

so that T depends only on t . This simplifies the remaining expression significantly. Equating its coefficients of v_{xx} gives

$$X = \frac{x}{2}T'(t) + A(t).$$

Continuing this way, the coefficients of the different powers of v_x give rise to

$$\begin{aligned}V_v &= 2\sigma V_{vv}, \\-\frac{x}{2}T''(t) - A'(t) + V_x &= 2\sigma V_{xv}, \\V_t &= \sigma V_{xx}.\end{aligned}$$

The first of these equations may be solved:

$$V = B(x, t) + C(x, t)e^{v/2\sigma}.$$

Substituting this in the second equation determines $B(x, t)$,

$$B(x, t) = \frac{1}{4}x^2T''(t) + xA'(t) + D(t),$$

whereas the third equation states that $C(x, t)$ solves the heat equation:

$$C_t = \sigma C_{xx}.$$

Rounding up the remaining equations, finally we find

$$\begin{aligned}V &= \frac{\gamma}{2}x^2 + \delta x + \sigma\gamma t + \chi + C(x, t)e^{v/2\sigma}, \\X &= \frac{\beta}{2}x + \gamma xt + \delta t + \eta, \\T &= \alpha + \beta t + \gamma t^2.\end{aligned}$$

Here α , β , γ , δ , η , and χ are arbitrary real constants. The function $C(x, t)$ is any solution of the heat equation. We conclude that the Lie-point symmetry group of Burgers' equation in its potential form is infinite-dimensional: it is determined by six arbitrary constants, and any solution of the heat equation. We can examine the point-symmetry group in more detail.

1. $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \eta, \chi, C(x, t)) = (1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0)$: the infinitesimal symmetry is

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{v} &= v + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{x} &= x + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{t} &= t + \epsilon + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2).\end{aligned}$$

This corresponds to translation in t , which is expected as the potential Burgers' equation is autonomous in t . If $v(x, t)$ is a solution, then so is $v(x, t + \epsilon)$, for any $\epsilon \in \mathbb{R}$.

2. $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \eta, \chi, C(x, t)) = (0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0)$: the infinitesimal symmetry is

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{v} &= v + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{x} &= x(1 + \epsilon/2) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{t} &= t(1 + \epsilon) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2).\end{aligned}$$

Integrating the group equations gives

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{v} &= v, \\ \hat{x} &= xe^{\epsilon/2}, \\ \hat{t} &= te^{\epsilon},\end{aligned}$$

which is a scaling transformation. It is a little peculiar, since v does not scale, despite it solving a nonlinear problem.

3. $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \eta, \chi, C(x, t)) = (0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0)$: the infinitesimal symmetry is given by

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{v} &= v + \epsilon \left(\frac{x^2}{2} + \sigma t \right) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{x} &= x + \epsilon xt + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{t} &= t + \epsilon t^2 + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2).\end{aligned}$$

This is the analog for the potential Burgers' equation of the previously mentioned fifth point symmetry of the Burgers' equation.

4. $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \eta, \chi, C(x, t)) = (0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0)$: the infinitesimal symmetry is

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{v} &= v + \epsilon x + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{x} &= x + \epsilon t + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{t} &= t + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2).\end{aligned}$$

This is the infinitesimal version of the Galilean boost.

5. $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \eta, \chi, C(x, t)) = (0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0)$: the infinitesimal symmetry reads

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{v} &= v + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{x} &= x + \epsilon + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{t} &= t + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2),\end{aligned}$$

which corresponds to a translation of the x variable. This is expected since the potential Burgers' equation is autonomous in x .

6. $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \eta, \chi, C(x, t)) = (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0)$: the infinitesimal symmetry is given by

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{v} &= v + \epsilon + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{x} &= x + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{t} &= t + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2),\end{aligned}$$

which corresponds to a translation of the v variable. This one is also expected since the potential Burgers' equation depends only on derivatives of v .

7. $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \eta, \chi, C(x, t)) = (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, C(x, t))$: the infinitesimal symmetry is

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{v} &= v + \epsilon C(x, t) e^{v/2\sigma} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{x} &= x + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2), \\ \hat{t} &= t + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^2).\end{aligned}$$

Recall that $C(x, t)$ is any solution of the heat equation. Integrating the group equations results in

$$\hat{v} = -2\sigma \ln \left(e^{-v/2\sigma} - \frac{\epsilon}{2\sigma} C(x, t) \right).$$

This relationship may be viewed as our first example of a Bäcklund transformation, see Chapter 9: a transformation from solutions of one equation to solutions of another. In this case, we find a new solution (\hat{v}) of the potential Burgers' equation from a known one (v) given any solution $C(x, t)$ of the heat equation. In particular, by letting $v \rightarrow +\infty$ and choosing $\epsilon = -2\sigma$, we obtain (dropping the hats)

$$v = -2\sigma \ln C(x, t),$$

where $C(x, t)$ solves the heat equation. Transforming back to the variables for the Burgers equation, we have

$$u = v_x = -2\sigma \frac{C_x}{C},$$

*the **Cole-Hopf transformation!** The use of Lie-point symmetries has allowed us to systematically construct the Cole-Hopf transformation, hence establishing that the Burgers' equation may be linearized and related to the heat equation. It should be noted that our detour via the potential Burgers' equation was required to do this, as in the original variables, the Bäcklund transformation leading to the Cole-Hopf transformation depends not only on u but also on its anti-derivative and therefore cannot be found using point symmetries⁶.*

As all these examples illustrate, the explicit determination of the generators of symmetries is a tedious task, albeit a systematic one. Indeed, it should be clear that the steps taken above are easily automated and computer algorithms have been developed to facilitate these calculations [AAD⁺94], as mentioned before. Even more complicated calculations one encounters in the case of higher-dimensional equations or systems of equations. Further, the determination of non-classical symmetries where the generators may explicitly depend on derivatives of the dependent variable is equally easily automated.

5.4.3 Using symmetries

The examples from the previous section have already illustrated the main ways symmetries may be used to analyze nonlinear equations.

- **Generalizing solutions.** Symmetries allow us to generalize entire classes of solutions, from knowing a single solution: if $u(x, t)$ is a solution of the differential equation, then the action of the symmetry group on this solution gives rise to a more general solution, depending on free parameters, or even free functions.

Example 5.14. *Consider the KdV equation $u_t = uu_x + u_{xxx}$. It is straightforward to check that*

$$u(x, t) = 12\text{sech}^2(x - 4t)$$

is a solution. It contains no free parameters. Using the scaling symmetry $\hat{u} = ue^\epsilon$, $x = \hat{x}e^{\epsilon/2}$, $t = \hat{t}e^{3\epsilon/2}$, we obtain that

$$\hat{u}(\hat{x}, \hat{t}) = 12k^2\text{sech}^2(k\hat{x} - 4k^3\hat{t})$$

is a one-parameter family of solutions of the same equation, so the hats may safely be dropped. Note that we have set $k = e^{\epsilon/2}$.

It should be noted that the Lie-point symmetries are statements about the differential equation only. They do not take nonlocal considerations such as boundary conditions

⁶This is easily seen by taking an x -derivative of the transformation, which results in $\hat{u} = \hat{u}_x$. Using the chain rule on the right-hand side brings in u and v , without derivatives. Eliminating v gives rise to integrals over x of u .

into account. Specifically, it is quite common for Lie-point symmetries to transform solutions to new solutions of the differential equations that are not in the function space of interest, or that do not satisfy the imposed boundary conditions. For instance, applying the Galilean boost to the KdV solution given above results in a new solution that approaches a non-zero constant as $|x| \rightarrow \infty$.

- **Group-invariant solutions.** Having found the Lie-point symmetries, we may look for solutions of the differential equation that are invariant under the action of the symmetry group, or under the action of some of its subgroups. For instance, we have already considered similarity solutions of the differential equations, namely solutions that are invariant under the action of a scaling transformation. For partial differential equations with one spatial variable that are autonomous with respect to x and t both, we have looked for stationary or equilibrium solutions. These are solutions that depend only on the specific combination $z = x - Vt$, *i.e.*, they are invariant under the action $x \rightarrow x + \epsilon V$, $t \rightarrow t + \epsilon$. This is a particular combination of the actions of the two translation symmetries, with respect to x and t respectively.

Since the restriction of invariance under the action of any subgroup imposes conditions among the independent and dependent variables, the group-invariant solutions satisfy equations that depend on fewer variables, and may be easier to analyze. In some cases they may even be solved, leading to exact solutions of the differential equation.

- **Conserved quantities.** As we will see in the next chapter, Noether's Theorem states that there is an intimate connection between symmetries of Lagrangian differential equations and conserved quantities of these equations. We have seen here that the construction of the Lie-point symmetries proceeds in an algorithmic way, due to the determining equations of the infinitesimal symmetries being linear. Similarly, Noether's Theorem allows for the algorithmic construction of their corresponding conserved quantities, given the infinitesimal symmetries.
- **Transformation of the differential equation.** As the Burgers' equation example has demonstrated, the construction of Lie-point symmetries may be used to systematically establish transformations between the equation under investigation and other, hopefully simpler equations. In the ideal case, we may establish a connection between the original equation and one that we know how to solve explicitly. Whenever a symmetry depends on functions, instead of mere parameters, these functions will satisfy linear differential equations, since the equations determining the infinitesimal symmetries are linear in the generators of the symmetries.

In all fairness, it should be mentioned that most often the transformation to a simpler differential equation will depend not only on the values of the dependent variables, but also on one or more derivatives of these, and often in a nonlinear way. Because of this, Lie-point symmetries will usually not accomplish the goal of effectively linearizing

(without approximation) the given PDE, provided such a symmetry depending on solutions of other equations exists at all. This also was illustrated by the construction of the Cole-Hopf transformation for the Burgers' equation. Only by choosing to write the equation in potential form were we able to achieve a form where Lie-point symmetries were adequate for the task at hand. This judicious choice of variables for the underlying equation is non-algorithmic. It could have been avoided by considering nonclassical Lie symmetries where the generators are allowed to explicitly depend on derivatives of the dependent variables as well.

5.5 Numerical methods

We briefly discuss some methods

5.5.1 The imaginary time-step method

5.5.2 Renormalization methods

5.5.3 Numerical continuation

5.6 Exercises

- 5.1. The mKdV equation considered in the text is known as the *focusing* mKdV equation, because of the behavior of its soliton solutions. This behavior is similar to that of the focusing NLS equation, see below. In this problem, we study the *defocusing* mKdV equation

$$4u_t = -6u^2u_x + u_{xxx}.$$

You have already seen (Problem 1.2) that you can scale the coefficients of this equation to your favorite values, except for the ratio of the signs of the two terms on the right-hand side.

- (a) Examine, using the potential energy method and phase plane analysis, the traveling-wave solutions.
- (b) If you have found any homoclinic or heteroclinic connections, find the explicit form of the profiles corresponding to these connections.

- 5.2. For the Nonlinear Schrödinger equation (NLS)

$$i\phi_t = -\phi_{xx} + \sigma|\phi|^2\phi,$$

examine the behavior of solutions of the form

$$\phi(x, t) = e^{-i\omega t}\psi(x),$$

where $\psi(x)$ is real.

- a) Do this using phase-plane analysis and the potential energy method; consider different cases: $\sigma = -1$ (focusing, or attractive case), and $\sigma = 1$ (defocusing, or repulsive case). Indicate for which values of the parameters you will find soliton solutions.
- b) Find the explicit expression for the soliton solutions, using the appropriate boundary conditions as $|x| \rightarrow \infty$.

5.3. Consider the so-called Derivative NLS equation (DNLS) [HKB89]

$$b_t + \alpha (b|b|^2)_x - ib_{xx} = 0.$$

This equation arises in the description of quasi-parallel waves in space plasmas [Rog71, MH97]. Here $b(x, t)$ is a complex-valued function.

- (a) Using a polar decomposition

$$b(x, t) = B(x, t)e^{i\theta(x, t)},$$

with B and θ real-valued functions, and separating real and imaginary parts (after dividing by the exponential), show that you obtain the system

$$\begin{aligned} B_t + 3\alpha B^2 B_x + \frac{1}{B}(B^2 \theta_x)_x &= 0, \\ \theta_t + \alpha B^2 \theta_x + \theta_x^2 - \frac{1}{B}B_{xx} &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

- (b) Assuming a traveling-wave envelope, $B(x, t) = R(z)$, with $z = x - vt$ and constant v , show that $\theta(x, t) = \Phi(z) - \Omega t$, with constant Ω , is consistent with these equations. You can show (but you don't have to) that assuming a traveling-wave amplitude results in only this possibility for $\theta(x, t)$. At this point, we have reduced the problem of finding solutions with traveling envelope to that of finding two one-variable functions $R(z)$ and $\Phi(z)$. The problem also depends on two parameters v (envelope speed) and Ω (frequency like).
- (c) Substituting these ansatz in the first equation of the above system, show that

$$\Phi' = \frac{C + vs - 3s^2}{2s},$$

where C is a constant and $s = \alpha R^2/2$.

- (d) Lastly, by substituting your results in the second equation of the system, show that $s(z)$ satisfies

$$\frac{1}{2}s'^2 + V(s) = E,$$

the equation for the motion of a particle with potential $V(s)$. Find the expression for $V(s)$ and for E .

In [HKB89], the authors use this observation to classify the traveling-envelope solutions of the DNLS, in the same vein that we did at the beginning of this chapter for KdV, or as in Problem 5.2 above.

- 5.4. Consider the example on page 114. Check that $y = x^2/t$ and $t^{1/2}q$ are both scaling invariant. Find the ordinary differential equation satisfied by $G(y)$, for similarity solutions of the form $q(x, t) = t^{-1/2}G(y)$. Show that this results in the same similarity solutions as in the example.
- 5.5. One way to write the **Toda Lattice** [Fla74] is

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{da_n}{dt} &= a_n(b_{n+1} - b_n), \\ \frac{db_n}{dt} &= 2(a_n^2 - a_{n-1}^2),\end{aligned}$$

where $a_n, b_n, n \in \mathbb{Z}$, are functions of t .

- (a) Find a scaling symmetry of this form of the Toda lattice, *i.e.*, let⁷ $a_n = \alpha A_n$, $b_n = \beta B_n$, $t = \gamma \tau$, and determine relations between α, β and γ so that the equations for the Toda lattice in the (A_n, B_n, t) variables are identical to those using the (a_n, b_n, τ) variables.
- (b) Using this scaling symmetry, find a two-parameter family of similarity solutions of the Toda lattice. If necessary, find relations among the parameters that guarantee the solutions you found are real for all n and for $t > 0$.

The Toda Lattice was introduced originally by Toda [Tod67] in 1967 in the form

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dq_n}{dt} &= p_n, \\ \frac{dp_n}{dt} &= e^{-(q_n - q_{n-1})} - e^{-(q_{n+1} - q_n)},\end{aligned}$$

where $q_n, p_n, n \in \mathbb{Z}$, are functions of t . It is clear that this form does not lend itself to a scaling symmetry: the quantities q_n show up as arguments of the exponential function,

⁷In principle, we could let α, β and γ depend on n . If you did this, you quickly discover that a scaling symmetry only exists if they do not

and they cannot be scaled. This can be remedied by returning to the physical setting of the derivation, where a constant would multiply these exponents. This constant, being a dimensional quantity, scales in its own way under a scaling transformation.

5.6. Consider the equation

$$u_t = 30u^2u_x + 20u_xu_{xx} + 10uu_{xxx} + u_{5x},$$

which we will encounter more in later chapters, due to its relation to the KdV equation. Show that it has a scaling symmetry.

When we look for the scaling symmetry of the KdV equation, we have two equations for three unknowns: we have three quantities (x, t, u) to scale, and after normalizing one coefficient to 1, two remaining terms that need to remain invariant. Thus it is no surprise that we find a one-parameter family of scaling symmetries. The above equation has two more terms, and it should be clear that some “luck” is needed in order for there to be a scaling symmetry.

5.7. Consider a Modified KdV equation

$$u_t - 6u^2u_x + u_{xxx} = 0.$$

- Find its scaling symmetry.
- Using the scaling symmetry, write down an ansatz for any similarity solutions of the equation.
- Show that your ansatz is compatible with $u = (3t)^{-1/3}w(z)$, with $z = x/(3t)^{1/3}$.
- Use the above form of u to find an ordinary differential equation for $w(z)$. This equation will be of third order. It can be integrated once (do this) to obtain a second-order equation. The second-order equation you obtain this way is known as the second of the Painlevé equations. We will see more about these later.

5.8. For the linear KdV equation

$$u_t + u_{xxx} = 0,$$

use the similarity ansatz

$$u = F(z), \quad z = x(3t)^{-1/3},$$

to show that $G(z) = F'(z)$ satisfies the Airy equation [DLMF]

$$G'' = zG.$$

Note the similarity of the behavior of the Airy function (or its integral, plotted in Fig. 5.14) to the long-time asymptotics of the linear KdV equation in the example on Page 34, where the functions are plotted depending on negative x . Although we will not quantify this further here, this is an illustration of the earlier claim in the introduction of this chapter that similarity solutions are important for the analysis of the long-time behavior of the solution of the equation.

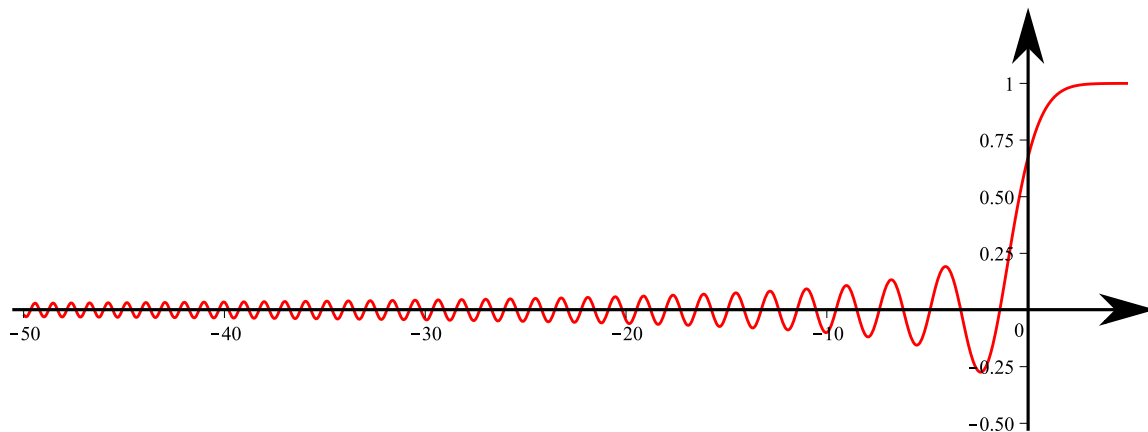


Figure 5.14: The integral of the Airy function: $2/3 + \int_0^x \text{Ai}(x)dx$.

5.9. Use the tanh method to find the soliton solution of the KdV equation

$$u_t + uu_x + u_{xxx} = 0.$$

Feel free to integrate your original ODE as many times as you can to simplify your calculations.

5.10. Use the tanh method to find a shock-like solution of the Burgers equation

$$u_t + uu_x = \sigma u_{xx},$$

where σ is a positive constant.

5.11. Consider the Boussinesq equation

$$u_{tt} - u_{xx} + 3uu_x + 3u_x^2 + \alpha u_{xxxx} = 0.$$

Use the tanh method to find solitary wave solutions (decaying at $\pm\infty$) of this equation. You can do this either directly, or by rewriting the equation as a first-order system in t .

5.12. Use the tanh method to find solitary wave solutions (decaying at $\pm\infty$) of the BBM equation

$$u_t + cu_x + uu_x - u_{xxt} = 0.$$

5.13. Use the Conte-Musette method to find the elliptic solutions of the KdV equation

$$u_t = 6uu_x + u_{xxx}.$$

5.14. Repeat Example 5.7, but for the focusing mKdV equation

$$u_t + 6u^2u_x + u_{xxx} = 0.$$

5.15. Consider the Emden-Fowler equation

$$x^2 \frac{d^2u}{dx^2} + 2x \frac{du}{dx} + x^2 u^5 = 0.$$

Use the scaling symmetry found in this chapter to construct a similarity solution for this equation.

5.16. Find the Lie-point symmetries of the nonlinear Schrödinger equation

$$iq_t = -\frac{1}{2}q_{xx} + \alpha|q|^2q,$$

where $\alpha = \pm 1$.

5.17. Construct the Lie-point symmetries for the heat equation

$$u_t = \sigma u_{xx}, \quad \text{with } \sigma > 0,$$

and compare your answers with the results given in Example 5.12. Next, integrate, if possible, the symmetry group differential equations to obtain the symmetries for finite parameter values. Interpret your results.

5.18. Find all five Lie-point symmetries of Burgers' equation

$$u_t + uu_x = \sigma u_{xx},$$

and interpret them, when possible.

Chapter 6

An overview of Hamiltonian systems

One of the main questions we wish to answer in this course is “What is an integrable system?” In the finite-dimensional case, the answer to this question is well understood in the context of Hamiltonian systems. In this chapter, we review aspects of finite-dimensional Hamiltonian systems that are important for our purpose of generalizing the theory to infinite-dimensional systems. We end this chapter by demonstrating that the KdV equation is an infinite-dimensional Hamiltonian system, with non-canonical Poisson structure.

6.1 Finite-dimensional Hamiltonian systems

6.1.1 Definition of a finite-dimensional Hamiltonian system

Let $z : D \subset \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$. Further, let $H(z)$ be a function defined on \mathbb{R}^n . We refer to this function as the Hamiltonian. Next, define a bilinear operation $\{\cdot, \cdot\}$ on the space of functions of \mathbb{R}^n . This bilinear operation is called the Poisson bracket. The Poisson bracket of two functions is another function, such that

- $\{z_i, az_j + bz_k\} = a\{z_i, z_j\} + b\{z_i, z_k\}$, for all $1 \leq i, j, k \leq n$, and $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$, constant. Thus the Poisson bracket is linear in its second component.
- $\{z_i, z_j\} = -\{z_j, z_i\}$, for all $1 \leq i, j \leq n$. Thus the Poisson bracket is antisymmetric. Together with the first property this shows that the Poisson bracket is also linear in its second component. Thus the Poisson bracket is indeed bilinear.
- $\{z_i, z_j z_k\} = z_j\{z_i, z_k\} + z_k\{z_i, z_j\}$, for all $1 \leq i, j, k \leq n$. This is known as the Leibniz property, because of its similarity to the product rule. Indeed, this property makes the Poisson bracket a formal derivative in an algebraic sense.
- $\{z_i, \{z_j, z_k\}\} + \{z_j, \{z_k, z_i\}\} + \{z_k, \{z_i, z_j\}\} = 0$, for all $1 \leq i, j, k \leq n$. This is the Jacobi identity.

Using the Poisson bracket and the Hamiltonian $H(z)$, one may define dynamics on any function $f(z)$ on \mathbb{R}^n by

$$f'(z) = \{f(z), H(z)\}.$$

For convenience, we assume that $f(z)$ is analytic in the components of z . The above equation then holds for any analytic function on \mathbb{R}^n . In particular, it holds for the coordinate functions z_i , $i = 1, \dots, n$. Thus

$$z'_i = \{z_i, H(z)\}.$$

Thus given a Poisson bracket, any function $H(z)$ on \mathbb{R}^n defines a Hamiltonian system, using the above differential equations.

6.1.2 Elementary properties of finite-dimensional Hamiltonian systems

- By the Leibniz property, the above two definitions of Hamiltonian dynamics are equivalent.

- Clearly the first set of differential equations implies the second set, as the first equation holds for any function defined on \mathbb{R}^n .
- From the Leibniz property, it follows easily using induction that $\{z_i^l, g(z)\} = l z_i^{l-1} \{z_i, g(z)\}$, for any $1 \leq i \leq n$, l a natural number, and any function $g(z)$ defined on \mathbb{R}^n . (Check this!) For analytic functions, it follows that $\{f(z), g(z)\} = \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{\partial f}{\partial z_k} \{z_k, g(z)\}$, using the power series representation. Note that this can be interpreted as a chain rule.

In general $f'(z) = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{\partial f}{\partial z_i} z'_i = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{\partial f}{\partial z_i} \{z_i, H(z)\} = \{f(z), H(z)\}$, where we have used the above chain rule. Thus indeed, one may use either set of differential equations to define Hamiltonian dynamics.

- Using the Leibniz property, we have

$$z'_i = \sum_{j=1}^n \{z_i, z_j\} \frac{\partial H}{\partial z_j} = \sum_{j=1}^n \omega_{ij}(z) \frac{\partial H}{\partial z_j},$$

for all i , or equivalently

$$f'(z) = \sum_{i,j=1}^n \omega_{ij}(z) \frac{\partial f}{\partial z_i} \frac{\partial H}{\partial z_j} = (\nabla f)^T \cdot \omega \cdot (\nabla H).$$

Thus the matrix $\omega = (\omega_{ij})_{i,j=1}^n$, with $\omega_{ij} = \{z_i, z_j\}$ determines the coordinate representation of the Poisson bracket.

- $H'(z) = \{H(z), H(z)\} = 0$, using the antisymmetry of the Poisson bracket. Thus the Hamiltonian is a constant of the motion, *i.e.*, a conserved quantity of the dynamics.
- If a function $G(z)$ Poisson commutes with the Hamiltonian, *i.e.*, $\{G(z), H(z)\} = 0$, for all $z \in \mathbb{R}^n$, then $G(z)$ is a constant of the motion: $G'(z) = \{G(z), H(z)\} = 0$.
- A function $C(z)$ such that

$$\{f(z), C(z)\} = 0,$$

for any function $f(z)$ defined on \mathbb{R}^n is called a Casimir function of the Poisson bracket. Thus a Casimir of the Poisson bracket Poisson commutes with any other function. It is clear that the existence of any Casimirs is indeed a property of the Poisson bracket (the geometry of the system), and has nothing to do with the Hamiltonian (the dynamics of the system). It follows from the previous property that a Casimir is trivially a conserved quantity of the Hamiltonian system. As a matter of fact, it is a conserved quantity for any Hamiltonian system with the given Poisson structure, independent of what the Hamiltonian is. The defining equation for the Casimir function may be written as

$$(\nabla f)^T \omega (\nabla C) = 0.$$

Since this holds for any function $f(z)$, this is equivalent to

$$\omega \nabla C = 0,$$

implying that the Poisson matrix $\omega = (\omega_{ij})_{i,j=1}^n$ is singular. The number of independent Casimirs is equal to the co-rank of ω .

6.1.3 Darboux's theorem

Next, we present Darboux's theorem, without proof. We will not use the results of this theorem, but it is too important to ignore. Further, it allows us to connect our rather unconventional definition of what a Hamiltonian system is to any other definitions you may have seen in physics, optimization, *etc.*

Theorem (Darboux) Given a Hamiltonian structure defined by a Poisson structure ω and a Hamiltonian $H(z)$, it is always possible to find a coordinate transformation $z \rightarrow (q, p, C_1, \dots, C_r)$, where r denotes the co-rank of the Poisson matrix ω , and q and p are

N -dimensional vectors with $2N + r = n$, such that in these new variables the Hamiltonian system has Poisson matrix

$$\omega = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1_N & 0 \\ -1_N & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

where 1_N is the identity matrix of size $N \times N$ and 0 denotes the zero matrix of suitable size. The $C_i(z)$'s are the Casimirs of the original Poisson structure.

Note that ω is antisymmetric, thus its co-rank r will be odd if n is odd, and even if n is so. Thus $n - r$ is indeed even. This preferred set of coordinates is usually referred to as canonical variables. The variables q and p are referred to as mutually conjugate. In canonical variables the dynamical equations are

$$\begin{cases} q'_i = \frac{\partial \hat{H}}{\partial p_i}, & i = 1, \dots, N, \\ p'_i = -\frac{\partial \hat{H}}{\partial q_i}, & i = 1, \dots, N, \\ C'_i = 0, & i = 1, \dots, r, \end{cases}$$

where $\hat{H} = H(z((q, p, C_1, \dots, C_r)))$ is the transformed Hamiltonian.

In this new coordinate system

$$\{q_i, q_j\} = 0, \quad \{p_i, p_j\} = 0, \quad \{q_i, p_j\} = \delta_{ij},$$

for all $i, j = 1, \dots, N$. In canonical variables, the Casimirs may be ignored and the dimension of the phase space is reduced from n to $2N = n - r$ dimensions. Then

$$\omega = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1_N \\ -1_N & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

and

$$\{f, g\} = \sum_{i=1}^N \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial q_i} \frac{\partial g}{\partial p_i} - \frac{\partial f}{\partial p_i} \frac{\partial g}{\partial q_i} \right),$$

for any two functions f and g of the canonical variables q and p .

6.1.4 Some examples

Mechanical systems

Let

$$H = \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{p_i^2}{2m_i} + V(q_1, \dots, q_N),$$

and

$$\omega = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1_N \\ -1_N & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Then we may use this choice of ω and $H(q, p)$ to define a Hamiltonian system with canonical variables. Its equations of motion are:

$$\begin{cases} q'_i = \frac{\partial H}{\partial p_i} = \frac{p_i}{m_i}, \\ p'_i = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial q_i} = -\frac{\partial V}{\partial q_i}, \end{cases}$$

for $i = 1, \dots, N$. Eliminating the momentum variables p_i from these equations results in

$$m_i q''_i = -\frac{\partial V}{\partial q_i}, \quad i = 1, \dots, N.$$

These are Newton's equations of motion for N (one-dimensional) particles of different mass in a conservative force field. The Hamiltonian is the total energy, being the sum of the kinetic and the potential energy. Thus we see that Newton's equations are a special case of a Hamiltonian system. It was indeed in this context (and that of geometric optics) that Hamilton first proposed his equations. The setting of Hamilton's equations is to be preferred over that of the Newtonian formulation for many reasons: the equations may all be derived from a scalar quantity, namely the Hamiltonian; the equations can be derived from a variational principle (see below), offering the advantage that geometrical constraints on the dynamics may be taken into consideration without changing the form of the equations of motion. This is in sharp contrast to the Newtonian form, where such situations require the use of d'Alembert's principle to eliminate unknown reaction forces, which is cumbersome, to put it mildly.

The Heisenberg magnet

Consider the equations of motion of the Heisenberg magnet

$$S' = J \times S,$$

where the vector $S = (S_x, S_y, S_z)^T$, and the magnetic momentum J is constant. Written out explicitly, we obtain

$$\frac{d}{dt} \begin{pmatrix} S_x \\ S_y \\ S_z \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -J_z & J_y \\ J_z & 0 & -J_x \\ -J_y & J_x & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} S_x \\ S_y \\ S_z \end{pmatrix}.$$

This system is Hamiltonian with (check this!)

$$\omega = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -J_z & J_y \\ J_z & 0 & -J_x \\ -J_y & J_x & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

and

$$H(S) = \frac{1}{2} S^2 = \frac{1}{2} (S_x^2 + S_y^2 + S_z^2).$$

With this ω the Poisson bracket is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \{f, g\} &= (\nabla f)^T \omega (\nabla g) \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial f}{\partial S_x} & \frac{\partial f}{\partial S_y} & \frac{\partial f}{\partial S_z} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -J_z & J_y \\ J_z & 0 & -J_x \\ -J_y & J_x & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial g}{\partial S_x} \\ \frac{\partial g}{\partial S_y} \\ \frac{\partial g}{\partial S_z} \end{pmatrix} \\ &\stackrel{\text{Check!}}{=} [\nabla f, J, \nabla g], \end{aligned}$$

where $[A, B, C]$ denotes the triple product of the vectors A , B and C : $[A, B, C] = A \cdot (B \times C)$. As this system is odd dimensional, there has to be at least one Casimir (why?). One easily sees that there is indeed only one Casimir, as ω has rank 2. Since the gradient of the Casimir with respect to the components of S is in the kernel of ω , we find

$$C = J \cdot S = J_x S_x + J_y S_y + J_z S_z.$$

This is easily verified:

$$\{f, C\} = [\nabla f, J, J] = (\nabla f)^T \cdot (J \times J) = 0.$$

According to Darboux's theorem there exist canonical coordinates q and p (scalar in this case) such that the system is Hamiltonian with the canonical Poisson structure. However, finding these coordinates in practice is not easy, even for a simple case as the one considered here. For the Heisenberg magnet the canonical variables are the coordinates parametrizing the plane $J \cdot S = \text{constant}$. The formulation of the problem in these new variables loses a lot of symmetry. For this reason, one often prefers to continue working in non-canonical variables, even if the transformation to canonical variables may be worked out.

6.1.5 More properties of finite-dimensional Hamiltonian systems

For cultural reasons, we finish this fast overview of finite-dimensional Hamiltonian system by mentioning a few more properties of Hamiltonian systems, mostly without proof.

- A **canonical transformation** is a transformation on a Hamiltonian system specified by the canonical Poisson structure ω and $H(z)$ that leaves the canonical Poisson structure invariant. In other words, the Poisson brackets of the new variables are equal to those of the corresponding old variables:

$$\{Z_i, Z_j\} = \{z_i, z_j\},$$

with $Z=Z(z)$. For instance, for a mechanical system this means that any transformation on the coordinates q is allowed, but this then implies a transformation on the momentum variables p :

$$q \rightarrow Q = Q(q) \Rightarrow p \rightarrow P = P(q, p).$$

Such a special canonical transformation where the new coordinates Q only depend on the old coordinates and not on the old momenta is called a contact transformation. A general canonical transformation may mix old coordinates and old momenta in the new variables.

Given a Hamiltonian system with canonical coordinates, one usually does not allow any transformations that are not canonical. Note that the transformation mentioned in Darboux's theorem is obviously not canonical, as it changes the Poisson structure which is canonical in the new variables, but not in the old ones.

- The flow of a Hamiltonian system preserves volume. Phrased differently, the flow is divergence free. Thus, if a set of initial conditions is chosen in phase space, the volume of this set does not change under time evolution.

We demonstrate this here for Hamiltonian systems that are given with canonical Poisson structure. If one regards the solutions of the Hamiltonian system $z(0) \rightarrow z(t)$ as a transformation on the variables (it is the best kind of transformation, as it solves the system), then one can show that this transformation is canonical. The divergence of the flow is given by

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla \cdot z' &= \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{\partial q'_i}{\partial q_i} + \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{\partial p'_i}{\partial p_i} \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{\partial^2 H}{\partial q_i \partial p_i} - \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{\partial^2 H}{\partial p_i \partial q_i} \\
&= 0,
\end{aligned}$$

thus the flow is divergence free from which it follows that the Jacobian of the transformation from initial conditions to solutions is

$$J = \det \left(\frac{\partial(q(t), p(t))}{\partial(q(0), p(0))} \right) = 1,$$

and phase space volume is conserved.

- A canonical Hamiltonian system is derivable from Hamilton's variational principle:

$$\delta \int \left(H - \sum_{i=1}^N p_i q'_i \right) dt = 0.$$

We will review variational methods later.

- One can show that equilibrium solutions of Hamiltonian systems are at best neutrally stable. Thus, in the case of a neutrally stable equilibrium point, all eigenvalues of the linearized problem are pure imaginary. If not all eigenvalues are pure imaginary, the spectrum is symmetric accross the imaginary line. If the system is also real-valued on the real line, one ends up with a spectrum that has four-fold symmetry, both accross the real and the imaginary line. Thus, for every growing mode, there is a decaying mode. This implies that a Hamiltonian system cannot have sources or sinks.

Specifically, in two dimensions, this implies that the equilibrium points are either centers (neutrally stable) or saddles (unstable).

- **Poincaré recurrence**

We have seen that a Hamiltonian system preserves the Hamiltonian. We refer to the surface $H(z) = E = H(z(0))$ (constant) as the energy surface. It is an $(n - 1)$ -dimensional surface in phase space. Poincaré showed that if this surface is compact, then the motion of the Hamiltonian system is recurrent, for arbitrary initial conditions. In mathematical ϵ, δ language:

$$\forall \epsilon, \delta > 0, \exists T > \delta : |z(T) - z(0)| < \epsilon.$$

Returning to the FPU problem, it was hypothesized at first that the recurrence of Hamiltonian systems was responsible for the recurrence observed in the FPU numerics. This was quickly dismissed, as the estimated recurrence times for a system with that many degrees of freedom were several orders of magnitude larger than those observed.

6.2 Integrability of finite-dimensional Hamiltonian systems

Let us talk about integrability of any arbitrary system of ordinary differential equations. To solve an N -th order system

$$x' = f(x)$$

requires $N - 1$ integration constants. The last one is provided by the arbitrariness of the initial t_0 : if $x(t)$ is a solution, so is $x(t - t_0)$, as the differential system is autonomous. At an existence-uniqueness level, these integration constants are just the initial conditions for the initial-value problem. A differential equation is called **solvable** if its solution can be written down in terms of quadratures. As stated, this requires the existence of N constants of the motion.

Hamiltonian systems are very special. Let us assume that we have used Darboux's theorem to obtain a set of canonical variables. This leaves us with two sets of mutually canonically conjugate variables q_1, \dots, q_N and p_1, \dots, p_N . By using canonical transformations, these may be transformed to new canonical variables Q_1, \dots, Q_N and P_1, \dots, P_N . The main idea is to find a canonical transformation so that in these new variables the equation for one of the P variables read

$$P'_k = 0,$$

for some $1 \leq k \leq N$. This will happen if the new transformed Hamiltonian no longer depends on the new coordinate variable Q_k . In that case we say that Q_k is a cyclic coordinate. Every time we manage to transform to a system of canonical coordinates so that one of the new coordinates is cyclic (*i.e.*, the new Hamiltonian does not depend on it), the corresponding equation for the new conjugate momentum variable may be trivially integrated. Hence we effectively reduce the number of degrees of freedom on which our dynamical system depends. As stated, for a general dynamical system with $2N$ variables, we would expect to have to do this $2N$ times.

One can show (but we won't do this here) that for every variable J_k (the new momentum variable) for which $J'_k = 0$, we may write for the canonically conjugate variable θ_k :

$$\theta'_k = \Omega_k = \text{constant} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \theta_k = \Omega_k t + \theta_k(0),$$

thus the equation for the conjugate variable is also easily integrated. In summary, we find that in order to completely solve a Hamiltonian system, we are required to find N variables J_k , $k = 1, \dots, N$ such that

$$\begin{cases} J'_k = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial \theta_k} \\ \theta'_k = \frac{\partial H}{\partial J_k} = \Omega_k \end{cases},$$

and thus $H = \sum_{k=1}^N \Omega_k J_k$. Lastly, we need

$$\{J_i, J_k\} = 0,$$

for $i, k = 1, \dots, N$. This condition is necessary, since we are requiring the variables J_k , $k = 1, \dots, N$ to act as new momentum variables. With the canonical Poisson structure, the momentum variables have mutually vanishing Poisson brackets. Two variables whose Poisson bracket vanishes are said to be in involution.

We find that a Hamiltonian system with canonical Poisson structure is solvable if we can find N conserved quantities that are mutually in involution. Such a system is called integrable.

The new variables J_1, \dots, J_N are called action variables, and their conjugate variables $\theta_1, \dots, \theta_N$ are angle variables. Finding action-angle variables for a given Hamiltonian system is the topic of Hamilton-Jacobi theory. Action-angle variables have added importance, as they are the preferred starting point of any perturbation approach of a near-integrable system, *i.e.*, a system with an ϵ -perturbation that is integrable in the $\epsilon = 0$ limit.

6.2.1 The Liouville-Arnol'd theorem

Consider the $2N$ -dimensional Hamiltonian system specified by the Hamiltonian H and the canonical Poisson structure. Let F_1, \dots, F_N be a set of functionally independent conserved quantities for this system, so that all elements are mutually in involution:

$$\{F_j, F_k\} = 0,$$

for $j, k = 1, \dots, N$. Note that these conserved quantities are not necessarily action variables. We are not imposing that the Hamiltonian is a linear function of the F_1, \dots, F_N . Next, consider the level set of these functions:

$$M = \{(q, p) : F_j(q, p) = F_{j0}(\text{constant}), \text{ for } j = 1, \dots, N\}.$$

Then the Liouville-Arnol'd theorem states that for almost all¹ values of F_1, \dots, F_N :

- M is a manifold.
- If M is compact and connected, it is topologically an N -dimensional torus $T^{(N)}$

$$T^{(N)} = \{(\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_N) \bmod 2\pi\}.$$

- The flow of the Hamiltonian system is quasi-periodic on this torus. In angle variables:

$$\theta'_j = \Omega_j(F_1, \dots, F_N),$$

for $j = 1, \dots, N$ with quasi-periods $2\pi/\Omega_j(F_1, \dots, F_N)$ for $j = 1, \dots, N$.

- The Hamiltonian system can be solved in terms of quadratures, and is thus solvable in the ordinary sense of solvability of a dynamical system.

6.2.2 Example: the harmonic oscillator

Consider the Hamiltonian (total energy)

$$H = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2}kq^2$$

of a particle under the influence of a Hooke's law type force, resulting in a Harmonic oscillator. In this case $N = 1$, thus we need only one conserved quantity. Since the Hamiltonian is conserved, we may use it as the only required conserved quantity. The set M is given by

$$M = \left\{ (q, p) : \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2}kq^2 = E \right\},$$

for some constant E , determined by the initial conditions. Thus M is the set of all points on an ellipsoid in the (q, p) -plane, as shown in Fig. 6.1. It is immediately obvious that M is indeed a manifold, for all possible initial conditions. Further, indeed M is topologically a 1-dimensional torus $T^{(1)}$, *i.e.*, a circle. We proceed to prove the last two statements of the Liouville-Arnol'd Theorem for this example.

The equations of motion are

$$\begin{cases} q' = \frac{\partial H}{\partial p} = p/m \\ p' = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial q} = -kq \end{cases},$$

¹This "almost all" statement is to be taken in a measure theory sense.

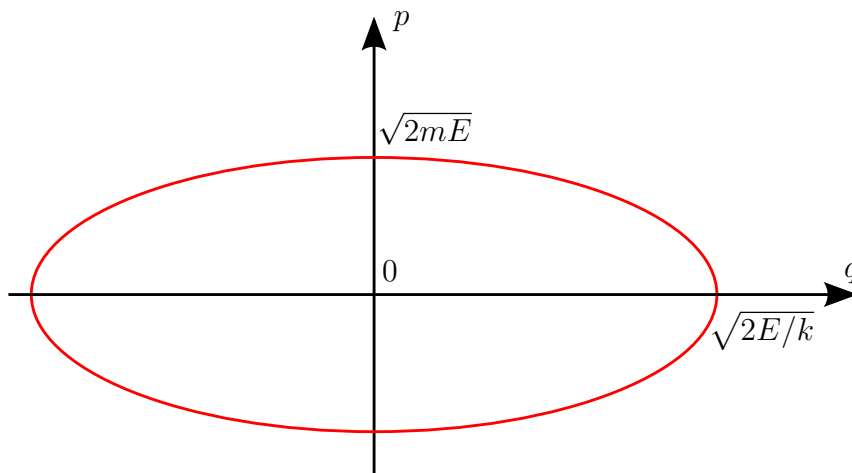


Figure 6.1: The energy surface for the harmonic oscillator.

which gives

$$q'' + \omega^2 q = 0,$$

with $\omega = \sqrt{k/m}$ (not to be confused with the Poisson structure). This equation is easily solved, resulting in

$$q = A \sin(\omega t + \phi_0), \quad p = A \sqrt{k m} \cos(\omega t + \phi_0),$$

where A and ϕ_0 are arbitrary constants. This demonstrates that the equations may indeed be integrated, and in this case the integrals (quadratures) may be worked out explicitly. It is also clear that the motion is quasi-periodic, as it is periodic.

Lastly, we find the action-angle variables (θ, J) for this problem, and check that (1) the transformation from $(q, p) \rightarrow (\theta, J)$ is canonical. Since the Hamiltonian is a linear combination of the action variables in general, we find in this case

$$H = \Omega J.$$

For this example there is an obvious candidate for the angle variable, namely $\theta = \omega t + \phi_0$, or $\theta' = \omega$, from which $\Omega = \omega$. Thus

$$J = \frac{H}{\omega} = \frac{A^2}{2} \sqrt{k m}.$$

Thus the transformation from (q, p) to action-angle variables is given by

$$\begin{cases} q = \sqrt{\frac{2J}{\sqrt{k m}}} \sin \theta \\ p = \sqrt{2J \sqrt{k m}} \cos \theta \end{cases},$$

with inverse

$$\begin{cases} J = \frac{1}{\omega} \left(\frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2} k q^2 \right) \\ \theta = \arctan \left(\frac{q \sqrt{k m}}{p} \right) \end{cases}.$$

This allows us to calculate the Poisson bracket $\{\theta, J\}$:

$$\{\theta, J\} = \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial q} \frac{\partial J}{\partial p} - \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial p} \frac{\partial J}{\partial q} \stackrel{\text{Check!}}{=} 1.$$

6.3 The calculus of variations

In order to generalize the concept of a Hamiltonian system to partial differential equations, we need the essentials of the calculus of variations. Consider two points $P = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$ and $Q = (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n)$, both in \mathbb{R}^n . Next, consider the set of all smooth curves joining these two points:

$$\gamma : t \in [a, b] \rightarrow x(t) = (x_1(t), \dots, x_n(t)),$$

such that $x(a) = P$ and $x(b) = Q$, as illustrated in Fig. 6.2. In what follows we assume that γ is sufficiently smooth so that all derivatives make sense.

Define the functional

$$S[\gamma] = \int_a^b L(x, x', x'', \dots, x^{(N)}) dt,$$

where $L(x, x', x'', \dots, x^{(N)})$ is a function of $x(t)$ and its first N derivatives, referred to as the Lagrangian. Sometimes the notation $S[x]$ is used, instead of $S[\gamma]$. It is referred to as the action. Thus γ (or $x(t)$) is the input, resulting in a scalar output S .

6.3.1 The fundamental theorem of the calculus of variations

In the calculus of variations the goal is to characterize for which γ the action $S[\gamma]$ has a critical value. With some additional conditions that we will ignore, a critical point of $S[\gamma]$ is

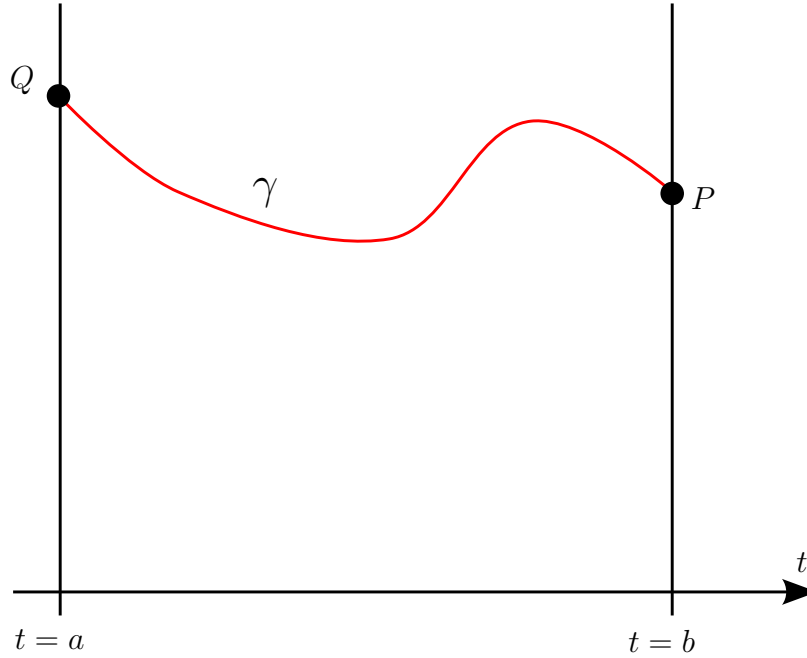


Figure 6.2: The set-up of the classical variational problem.

a local minimum or maximum value of $S[\gamma]$, attained at some extremizer $x(t)$. The following is the fundamental theorem of the calculus of variations.

Theorem [Fundamental theorem of the calculus of variations]: If $\gamma_0 : t \in [a, b] \rightarrow x(t)$ is a critical point of the action $S[\gamma]$ then along γ_0

$$0 = \frac{\delta S}{\delta x_i} = \frac{\partial L}{\partial x_i} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial x'_i} + \frac{d^2}{dt^2} \frac{\partial L}{\partial x''_i} - \dots + (-1)^N \frac{d^N}{dt^N} \frac{\partial L}{\partial x_i^{(N)}},$$

for all $i = 1, \dots, n$. Conversely, if these equations are satisfied, then γ_0 is a critical point of the action $S[\gamma]$.

These equations are known as the Euler-Lagrange equations. In the case where the Lagrangian depends on more than first derivatives of the unknown function, the equations may also be referred to as the Ostrogradskii equations. The expression on the right is referred to as the functional or variational derivative of S . Sometimes, we will loosely refer to it as the variational derivative of L . The Euler-Lagrange equations are differential equations for the components of $x(t)$. They give necessary and sufficient conditions to characterize a critical point of the action.

Proof. First, we prove that the Euler-Lagrange equations give sufficient conditions to

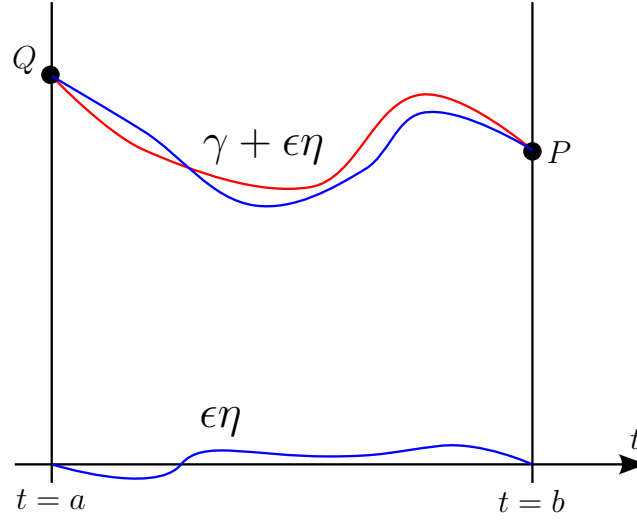


Figure 6.3: A small variation $\epsilon\eta(t)$ of the path γ specified by $x(t)$.

characterize a critical point of the action. To this end, we consider a small variation of the path γ , as indicated in Fig. 6.3.

Here ϵ is a real number, thought of as small. Further, $\eta(t)$ is a curve $t \in [a, b] \rightarrow \eta(t)$, such that $\eta(a) = 0 = \eta(b)$ so that the end points of the path from a to b are fixed. Then we calculate

$$\left. \frac{dS}{d\epsilon} [x(t) + \epsilon\eta(t)] \right|_{\epsilon=0} = \lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0} \frac{S[x + \epsilon\eta] - S[x]}{\epsilon}.$$

First, consider

$$S[x(t) + \epsilon\eta(t)] = \int_a^b L(x + \epsilon\eta, x' + \epsilon\eta', x'' + \epsilon\eta'', \dots, x^{(N)} + \epsilon\eta^{(N)}) dt.$$

In order to calculate the above derivative, we expand this in a Taylor series in ϵ :

$$\begin{aligned} S[x(t) + \epsilon\eta(t)] &= \int_a^b L(x + \epsilon\eta, x' + \epsilon\eta', x'' + \epsilon\eta'', \dots, x^{(N)} + \epsilon\eta^{(N)}) dt \\ &= \int_a^b L(x, x', x'', \dots, x^{(N)}) dt + \\ &\quad \epsilon \sum_{i=1}^n \int_a^b \left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial x_i} \eta_i + \frac{\partial L}{\partial x'_i} \eta'_i + \dots + \frac{\partial L}{\partial x_i^{(N)}} \eta_i^{(N)} \right) dt + \theta(\epsilon^2). \end{aligned}$$

Here all partial derivative terms in the $\theta(\epsilon)$ term are evaluated at $\epsilon = 0$. Now consider the second one of these terms. For each $i = 1, \dots, n$

$$\int_a^b \frac{\partial L}{\partial x'_i} \eta'_i dt = \eta_i \frac{\partial L}{\partial x'_i} \Big|_a^b - \int_a^b \eta_i \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial x'_i} dt,$$

using integration by parts. The first term vanishes due to the fixed boundaries ($\eta_i(a) = 0 = \eta_i(b)$, for all i), thus

$$\int_a^b \frac{\partial L}{\partial x'_i} \eta'_i dt = - \int_a^b \eta_i \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial x'_i} dt,$$

Similarly for the second term, after two integration by parts steps,

$$\int_a^b \frac{\partial L}{\partial x''_i} \eta''_i dt = (-1)^2 \int_a^b \eta_i \frac{d^2}{dt^2} \frac{\partial L}{\partial x''_i} dt,$$

and so on for the other terms. Note that these calculations require that higher-order derivatives of $\eta(t)$ vanish at $t = a$ and $t = b$ as well. Thus

$$S[x + \epsilon \eta] = S[x] + \epsilon \sum_{i=1}^n \int_a^b \eta_i \left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial x_i} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial x'_i} + \dots + (-1)^N \frac{d^N}{dt^N} \frac{\partial L}{\partial x_i^{(N)}} \right) dt + \theta(\epsilon^2)$$

Now we may calculate our derivative:

$$\left. \frac{dS}{d\epsilon} [x + \epsilon \eta] \right|_{\epsilon=0} = \sum_{i=1}^n \int_a^b \eta_i \left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial x_i} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial x'_i} + \dots + (-1)^N \frac{d^N}{dt^N} \frac{\partial L}{\partial x_i^{(N)}} \right) dt.$$

It follows immediately that if the Euler-Lagrange equations are satisfied, then the action $S[x]$ has a critical point.

Next we show that these conditions are also necessary for the action $S[x]$ to have a critical point. Assume that the Euler-Lagrange equations are not satisfied, but the action has a critical point nonetheless so that

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial x_i} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial x'_i} + \dots + (-1)^N \frac{d^N}{dt^N} \frac{\partial L}{\partial x_i^{(N)}} \neq 0,$$

at least not identically. Assume that the left-hand side of this equation has a finite number of zeros at a finite number of t values in $[a, b]$. Then away from these zeros, the left-hand side is either positive or negative. The equation

$$0 = \left. \frac{dS}{d\epsilon} [x + \epsilon \eta] \right|_{\epsilon=0} = \sum_{i=1}^n \int_a^b \eta_i \left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial x_i} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial x'_i} + \dots + (-1)^N \frac{d^N}{dt^N} \frac{\partial L}{\partial x_i^{(N)}} \right) dt$$

holds for arbitrary η , as long as $N - 1$ derivatives of each component of $\eta(t)$ vanish at the boundary points. In particular, we may choose all components of $\eta(t)$ to vanish identically,

except the first one. The non-zero component may be chosen to be positive (negative) whenever the variational derivative with respect to the first component is positive (negative), resulting in an integrand that is strictly positive, except at a few isolated zeros. But the integral needs to vanish, as the left-hand side is zero. This is only possible if the first Euler-Lagrange equation holds. The argument may be repeated with any other component, leading to the conclusion that all Euler-Lagrange equations are satisfied.

In summary we find that the Euler-Lagrange equations are necessary and sufficient conditions for the action functional to have a critical point. This concludes the proof of the fundamental theorem.

6.3.2 Examples

1. Lagrangian mechanics

Let the Lagrangian be the difference between the kinetic energy and the potential energy for an n particle system moving in one-dimension, for convenience:

$$L = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{1}{2} m_i x_i'^2 - V(x_1, \dots, x_n).$$

The Euler-Lagrange equations for each $i = 1, \dots, n$ become

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial L}{\partial x_i} &= -\frac{\partial V}{\partial x_i}, \quad \frac{\partial L}{\partial x_i'} = m_i x_i' \\ \Rightarrow 0 &= -\frac{\partial V}{\partial x_i} - \frac{d}{dt} m_i x_i' \\ &\Rightarrow m_i x_i'' = -\frac{\partial V}{\partial x_i}, \end{aligned}$$

Newton's equations in a conservative force field! Thus Newton's equations may be derived from a variational principle. This specific principle is due to Lagrange. One of the many advantages of Lagrange's approach is the ease in which coordinate changes may be performed: the variational principle is independent of the choice of coordinates of the curve γ . A different parametrization $x(t)$ gives the same curve, but results in different Euler-Lagrange equations, namely those in the new coordinates. Thus, in order to transform coordinates on equations derivable from a variational principle it suffices to perform the coordinate transformations on the Lagrangian, followed by writing down the Euler-Lagrange equations for the new Lagrangian in the new variables. This allows us to take constraints on the dynamics into account easily, without having to resort to d'Alembert's principle to eliminate unknown reaction forces.

2. Hamilton's principle

Consider the action

$$S = \int_a^b \left(H(q_1, \dots, q_n, p_1, \dots, p_n) - \sum_{k=1}^n p_k q'_k \right) dt,$$

with Lagrangian

$$H(q_1, \dots, q_n, p_1, \dots, p_n) - \sum_{k=1}^n p_k q'_k.$$

The Euler-Lagrange equations become:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\delta S}{\delta q_i} &= \frac{\partial L}{\partial q_i} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial q'_i} = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow \frac{\partial H}{\partial q_i} - \frac{d}{dt}(-p_i) = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow p'_i = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial q_i}, \\ \frac{\delta S}{\delta p_i} &= \frac{\partial L}{\partial p_i} = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow \frac{\partial H}{\partial p_i} - q'_i = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow q'_i = \frac{\partial H}{\partial p_i}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus Hamilton's equations in canonical variables may be derived from a variational principle. At this point we can rephrase the definition of a canonical transformation: a canonical transformation is a transformation that leaves the form of Hamilton's variational principle invariant. In practice, this is the most convenient way to generate canonical transformations.

3. Generalization to functions of more than one variable

How should we generalize the Euler-Lagrange equations to deal with surfaces (maybe more than two-dimensional) instead of curves? The derivation of the fundamental theorem may be repeated, by using Green's theorem instead of integration by parts. Assume the Lagrangian depends only on one function of t_1, \dots, t_N and its first derivatives with respect to these variables

$$L = L(q, \nabla q),$$

then the Euler-Lagrange equation is given by

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial q} - \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{\partial}{\partial t_i} \frac{\partial L}{\partial q_{t_i}} = 0.$$

If multiple functions appear in the Lagrangian, then this prescription is repeated for every such function. As an example, consider the Lagrangian

$$L = \frac{1}{2}u_t^2 - \frac{1}{2}c^2(\nabla u)^2 = \frac{1}{2}u_t^2 - \frac{1}{2}c^2(u_x^2 + u_y^2 + u_z^2).$$

We obtain

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \frac{\partial L}{\partial u} - \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \frac{\partial L}{\partial u_t} - \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \frac{\partial L}{\partial u_x} - \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \frac{\partial L}{\partial u_y} - \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \frac{\partial L}{\partial u_z} \\ &= 0 - \frac{\partial}{\partial t} u_t - \frac{\partial}{\partial x} (-c^2 u_x) - \frac{\partial}{\partial y} (-c^2 u_y) - \frac{\partial}{\partial z} (-c^2 u_z) \\ &= -u_{tt} + c^2 \Delta u, \end{aligned}$$

the wave equation! Thus the wave equation may be derived from this variational principle. Thus, instead of solving the wave equation, we could prefer to look for critical points of its action. From a mathematical point of view this could be beneficial, as the Lagrangian involves only first derivatives whereas the equation involves second derivatives. Thus this allows us to find a “solution” of the wave equation that may not have enough regularity to be considered a solution of the equation, but can be considered a weak solution. In general, many equations arising in pure and applied mathematics and their applications are derived from variational principles. These may be used to find numerical solutions, as it may be more convenient to extremize one scalar quantity *vs.* solving a large number of coupled equations. As stated, this allows us to find weak solutions to the equations, as the variational principle involves fewer derivatives than the partial differential equations that are its Euler-Lagrange equations. One important application of this is the study of shock formation and propagation.

6.4 Infinite-dimensional Hamiltonian systems

6.4.1 Defining the Hamiltonian

In the framework of partial differential equations with one spatial variable x , a Hamiltonian is a functional

$$H(u) = \int \mathcal{H}(u) dx,$$

where the Hamiltonian density $\mathcal{H}(u)$ is a function of u and a finite number of its spatial derivatives u_x, u_{xx}, \dots . The bounds on the integral depend on the boundary conditions given for the partial differential equation: if the equation is defined on a finite domain $x \in [a, b]$ then a and b are the lower and upper bounds for the integral defining the Hamiltonian. If the equation is defined over all of \mathbb{R} , then the integration is over \mathbb{R} . Note that for both periodic boundary conditions (finite domain) and vanishing boundary conditions the integral vanishes if $\mathcal{H}(u)$ is a total derivative, *i.e.*, $\mathcal{H}(u) = \partial_x F(u)$. For this reason, Hamiltonian densities differing by a total derivative are considered to be equivalent.

6.4.2 Defining the Poisson bracket

In order to define a Poisson bracket, we use an antisymmetric differential operator B , instead of an antisymmetric matrix:

$$(f, Bg) = \int f Bg dx = - \int (Bf) g dx = -(Bf, g).$$

Then the Poisson bracket of any two functionals is defined by

$$\{F, G\} = \int \frac{\delta F}{\delta u} B \frac{\delta G}{\delta u} dx.$$

Bilinearity and antisymmetry follow immediately. The Leibniz rule is no longer required, as it does not make sense to talk about the product of two functionals. The Jacobi identity is still imposed and seriously restricts the set of possible antisymmetric differential operators B . Three commonly used B 's are

$$\begin{aligned} B &= \partial_x \\ B &= u\partial_x + \partial_x u = 2u\partial_x + u_x \\ B &= \partial_x^3 + 2(u\partial_x + \partial_x u). \end{aligned}$$

It is easy to verify that these are antisymmetric, but checking the Jacobi identity is much harder. We skip this here.

6.4.3 Hamiltonian dynamics for partial differential equations

Having defined a Poisson bracket and a Hamiltonian, Hamiltonian dynamics on any functional on the phase space may be defined as before:

$$\frac{\partial K}{\partial t} = \{K(u), H(u)\}.$$

The following result handily allows us to define dynamics on the coordinate functions themselves:

$$u(x, t) = \int \delta(x - y)u(y, t)dy \Rightarrow \frac{\delta u(x)}{\delta u(y)} = \delta(x - y),$$

where $\delta(x - y)$ denotes the Dirac delta function (whose name is unfortunately identical to the symbol used for the variational derivative). Then

$$\begin{aligned} u_t &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t}u(x, t) \\ &= \{u(x, t), H(u(x, t))\} \\ &= \int \frac{\delta u(x, t)}{\delta u(y, t)} B \frac{\delta H(u(x, t))}{\delta u(y, t)} dy \\ &= \int \delta(x - y) B \frac{\delta H(u(x, t))}{\delta u(y, t)} dy \\ &= B \frac{\delta H(u(x, t))}{\delta u(x, t)}, \end{aligned}$$

or in short:

$$u_t = B \frac{\delta H}{\delta u}.$$

In the above, we tacitly assumed that u is a scalar function. If the Hamiltonian density depends on more than one function, all the above concepts may be generalized for vector functions. For instance, if one can identify coordinate functions q and p such that the equations of motion are given by

$$\frac{\partial q}{\partial t} = \frac{\delta H}{\delta p}, \quad \frac{\partial p}{\partial t} = -\frac{\delta H}{\delta q},$$

then the system is Hamiltonian with canonical Poisson bracket

$$\{F, G\} = \int \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\delta F}{\delta q} & \frac{\delta F}{\delta p} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\delta G}{\delta q} \\ \frac{\delta G}{\delta p} \end{pmatrix} dx = \int \left(\frac{\delta F}{\delta q} \frac{\delta G}{\delta p} - \frac{\delta F}{\delta p} \frac{\delta G}{\delta q} \right) dx,$$

which is easily verified. In this case

$$B = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

just like for a finite-dimensional system. In this case B is an antisymmetric differential operator of order 0.

6.5 The KdV equation as a Hamiltonian system

The KdV equation

$$u_t + uu_x + u_{xxx} = 0$$

is Hamiltonian with Poisson structure given by

$$B = \partial_x,$$

and Hamiltonian

$$H = \int \left(\frac{1}{2}u_x^2 - \frac{1}{6}u^3 \right) dx.$$

This is easily shown:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\delta H}{\delta u} &= \frac{\partial \mathcal{H}}{\partial u} - \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \frac{\partial \mathcal{H}}{\partial u_x} \\ &= -\frac{1}{2}u^2 - \frac{\partial}{\partial x} u_x \\ &= -\frac{1}{2}u^2 - u_{xx}, \end{aligned}$$

hence the dynamics is given by

$$\begin{aligned} u_t &= \partial_x \frac{\delta H}{\delta u} \\ &= \partial_x \left(-\frac{1}{2}u^2 - u_{xx} \right) \\ &= -uu_x - u_{xxx}, \end{aligned}$$

the KdV equation!

Remarks

- Through all the machinery we have set up, we immediately obtain that the Hamiltonian $H = \int (\frac{1}{2}u_x^2 - \frac{1}{6}u^3) dx$ is a conserved quantity for the KdV equation.
- The Poisson operator B has Casimirs if $B(\delta C/\delta u) = 0$, in analogy with the finite-dimensional case. If such $C(u)$ may be found, it follows that every other functional, including the Hamiltonian, Poisson commutes with $C(u)$. With $B = \partial_x$, this requires C to be a linear functional of u and its derivatives. Since functional densities are considered equivalent if they are the same up to a total derivative, only

$$C = \int u dx$$

is important. Thus, $C = \int u dx$ is a Casimir for the KdV equation with Poisson structure ∂_x . It is also a conserved quantity, as it trivially Poisson commutes with the Hamiltonian.

This is easily verified directly: the KdV equation is rewritten as

$$\partial_t(u) + \partial_x \left(\frac{1}{2}u^2 + u_{xx} \right) = 0.$$

Integrating over all values of x (\mathbb{R} or a finite interval for the periodic boundary condition case) gives

$$\begin{aligned} & \int \left(\partial_t(u) + \partial_x \left(\frac{1}{2}u^2 + u_{xx} \right) \right) dx = 0 \\ \Rightarrow & \int (\partial_t u) dx = 0 \\ \Rightarrow & \frac{d}{dt} \int u dx = 0 \\ \Rightarrow & \frac{dC}{dt} = 0, \end{aligned}$$

and $C(u)$ is conserved. The integral of the x -derivative term vanishes because of the boundary conditions.

- Similarly, by multiplying the equation by u and integrating over all x -values, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
& uu_t + u^2 u_x + uu_{xxx} = 0 \\
\Rightarrow & \partial_t \left(\frac{1}{2} u^2 \right) + \partial_x \left(\frac{1}{3} u^3 + uu_{xx} - \frac{1}{2} u_x^2 \right) = 0 \\
\Rightarrow & \int \left(\partial_t \left(\frac{1}{2} u^2 \right) + \partial_x \left(\frac{1}{3} u^3 + uu_{xx} - \frac{1}{2} u_x^2 \right) \right) dx = 0 \\
\Rightarrow & \frac{d}{dt} \int \frac{1}{2} u^2 dx = 0,
\end{aligned}$$

so $\frac{1}{2} \int u^2 dx$ is a conserved quantity for the KdV equation as well.

Thus we have constructed three conserved quantities for the KdV equation:

$$\begin{aligned}
F_{-1} &= \int u dx, \\
F_0 &= \int \frac{1}{2} u^2 dx, \\
F_1 &= \int \left(\frac{1}{2} u_x^2 - \frac{1}{6} u^3 \right) dx = H(u).
\end{aligned}$$

These are not unexpected. In many physical applications where the KdV equation arises, these correspond to the conservation of mass, momentum and energy in the system that is being modeled. The real question is whether there are any others. If there are, how many? In the next chapter we will demonstrate that the KdV equation has an infinite number of conserved quantities, that are all functionally independent. By itself, this is not enough to prove integrability of the KdV equation, but it is a strong hint. In order to prove integrability, we also need to prove that the constructed set of conserved quantities is complete, *i.e.*, spans half the space of the canonical variables for the KdV equation. This is a far more technical matter, which is often ignored.

6.6 The NLS equation as a Hamiltonian system

The Nonlinear Schrödinger (NLS) equation describes the slow modulation of a wave train due to nonlinear effects and dispersion. The equation is given by

$$iq_t = -q_{xx} + \sigma |q|^2 q.$$

If $\sigma = 1$ the equation is known as the defocusing or repulsive NLS equation, whereas if $\sigma = -1$, the equation is said to be focusing or attractive.

The NLS equation may be embedded in the system of NLS-like equations

$$\begin{cases} iq_t &= -q_{xx} + \sigma q^2 p, \\ -ip_t &= -p_{xx} + \sigma p^2 q, \end{cases},$$

which contains the NLS equation using the consistent reduction $p = q^*$, the complex conjugate of q . Then the first equation is the NLS equation and the second equation is its complex conjugate equation.

This system of equations is Hamiltonian with canonical Poisson structure and Hamiltonian

$$H = \int \mathcal{H}(q, p, q_x, p_x) dx = -i \int \left(q_x p_x + \frac{\sigma}{2} q^2 p^2 \right) dx.$$

This is an easy calculation. We need to verify that the equations

$$\begin{pmatrix} q_t \\ p_t \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \delta H / \delta q \\ \delta H / \delta p \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} q_t &= \frac{\delta H}{\delta p} \\ p_t &= -\frac{\delta H}{\delta q} \end{cases}$$

are equivalent to the given NLS-like system. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\delta H}{\delta q} &= \frac{\partial \mathcal{H}}{\partial q} - \partial_x \frac{\partial \mathcal{H}}{\partial q_x} = -i (\sigma q p^2 - \partial_x p_x) = -i (\sigma q p^2 - p_{xx}), \\ \frac{\delta H}{\delta p} &= \frac{\partial \mathcal{H}}{\partial p} - \partial_x \frac{\partial \mathcal{H}}{\partial p_x} = -i (\sigma p q^2 - \partial_x q_x) = -i (\sigma p q^2 - q_{xx}), \end{aligned}$$

and, indeed, taking into account the $-$ sign in the definition of the dynamical equation for p , the NLS-like system is recovered, containing the NLS equation as a special case.

Since the Poisson structure for this Hamiltonian system is canonical, there are no Casimirs. However, one easily verifies that the following are conserved quantities:

$$\begin{aligned} F_0 &= \int q p \, dx, \\ F_1 &= i \int (q p_x - q_x p) \, dx, \\ F_2 &= -i \int \left(q_x p_x + \frac{\sigma}{2} q^2 p^2 \right) dx, \end{aligned}$$

where $F_2 = H$, the Hamiltonian. These imply conserved quantities for the NLS equation by letting $p = q^*$:

$$\begin{aligned}
F_0 &= \int |q|^2 dx, \\
F_1 &= i \int (qq_x^* - q^*q_x) dx, \\
F_2 &= -i \int \left(|q_x|^2 + \frac{\sigma}{2} |q|^4 \right) dx.
\end{aligned}$$

As for the KdV equation, the existence of these three conserved quantities is not a surprise. Depending on the application, they often correspond to the conservation of mass, momentum and energy. Again, the real question is whether any other conserved quantities exist. Like for the KdV equation, one may construct an infinite sequence of independent conserved quantities, of which F_0 , F_1 and F_2 are the first members.

6.7 Exercises

1. Consider the Modified Vector Derivative NLS equation

$$\mathbf{B}_t + (\|\mathbf{B}\|^2 \mathbf{B})_x + \gamma(\mathbf{e}_1 \times \mathbf{B}_0)(\mathbf{e}_1 \cdot (\mathbf{B}_x \times \mathbf{B}_0)) + \mathbf{e}_1 \times \mathbf{B}_{xx} = 0.$$

This equation describes the transverse propagation of nonlinear Alfvén waves in magnetized plasmas. Here $\mathbf{B} = (0, u, v)$, $\mathbf{e}_1 = (1, 0, 0)$, $\mathbf{B}_0 = (0, B_0, 0)$, and γ is a constant. The boundary conditions are $\mathbf{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{B}_0$, $\mathbf{B}_x \rightarrow 0$ as $|x| \rightarrow \infty$. By looking for stationary solutions $\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B}(x - Wt)$, one obtains a system of ordinary differential equations. Integrating once, one obtains a first-order system of differential equations for u and v .

- a) Show that this system is Hamiltonian with canonical Poisson structure, by constructing its Hamiltonian $H(u, v)$.
- b) Find the value of the Hamiltonian such that the boundary conditions are satisfied. Then $H(u, v)$ equated to this constant value defines a curve in the (u, v) -plane on which the solution lives. In the equation of this curve, let $U = u/B_0$, $V = v/B_0$, and $W_0 = W/B_0^2$. Now there are only two parameters in the equation of the curve: W_0 and γ .
- c) With $\gamma = 1/10$, plot the curve for $W_0 = 3$, $W_0 = 2$, $W_0 = 1.1$, $W_0 = 1$, $W_0 = 0.95$, $W_0 = 0.9$. All of these curves have a singular point at $(1, 0)$. This point is an equilibrium point for the Hamiltonian system, corresponding to the constant solution which satisfies the boundary condition. The curves beginning and ending at this equilibrium point correspond to soliton solutions of the Modified Vector Derivative NLS equation. How many soliton solutions are there for the different velocity values you considered? Draw a qualitatively correct picture of the solitons for all these cases.

2. Show that the canonical Poisson bracket

$$\{f, g\} = \sum_{j=1}^N \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial q_j} \frac{\partial g}{\partial p_j} - \frac{\partial f}{\partial p_j} \frac{\partial g}{\partial q_j} \right)$$

satisfies the Jacobi identity

$$\{\{f, g\}, h\} + \{\{g, h\}, f\} + \{\{h, f\}, g\} = 0.$$

3. Show that the Sine-Gordon equation

$$u_{tt} - u_{xx} + \sin(u) = 0$$

is Hamiltonian with canonical Poisson structure and Hamiltonian

$$H = \int \left(\frac{1}{2} p^2 + \frac{1}{2} q_x^2 + 1 - \cos(q) \right) dx,$$

where $q = u$, and $p = u_t$.

4. Check explicitly that the conserved quantities $F_{-1} = \int u dx$, $F_0 = \int \frac{1}{2} u^2 dx$, $F_1 = \int \left(\frac{1}{6} u^3 - \frac{1}{2} u_x^2 \right) dx$, $F_2 = \int \left(\frac{1}{24} u^4 - \frac{1}{2} u u_x^2 + \frac{3}{10} u_{xx}^2 \right) dx$ are mutually in involution with respect to the Poisson bracket defined by the Poisson structure given by ∂_x .
5. **Bi-Hamiltonian systems** We know that the KdV equation $u_t = uu_x + u_{xxx}$ is Hamiltonian with Poisson structure defined by ∂_x and Hamiltonian $F_1 = \int \left(\frac{1}{6} u^3 - \frac{1}{2} u_x^2 \right) dx$. Show that the KdV equation is also Hamiltonian with Poisson structure $\partial_{xxx} + \frac{1}{3}(u\partial_x + \partial_x u)$ and Hamiltonian $F_0 = \frac{1}{2} \int u^2 dx$. An equation which is Hamiltonian with two different Poisson structures is called Bi-Hamiltonian. One can show that the presence of a Bi-Hamiltonian structure implies the existence of an infinite number of conserved quantities, which are in involution under the Poisson Brackets defined by both Poisson structures.

Chapter 7

Conserved quantities and hierarchies of integrable equations

Throughout these notes the importance of conserved quantities has been emphasized. In this chapter we examine conserved quantities in detail. First, we examine direct methods to calculate them if they exist. Next, we prove the existence of an infinite sequence of conserved quantities for the KdV equation. Using this sequence of conserved quantities, we define the KdV hierarchy as an infinite sequence of equations whose flows commute with the flow of the KdV equation.

7.1 Calculating conserved quantities using the scaling symmetry

7.1.1 Generalities

Repeating the argument from the previous chapter,

$$F(u, u_x, \dots) = \int f(u, u_x, \dots) dx$$

is a conserved quantity for the equation

$$u_t = N(u, u_x, \dots, u_{nx})$$

if

$$\frac{dF}{dt} = 0 \Leftrightarrow \int \frac{\partial}{\partial t} f(u, u_x, \dots) dx = 0,$$

which occurs when

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}f(u, u_x, \dots) = -\frac{\partial}{\partial x}g(u, u_x, \dots),$$

(the $-$ sign is for convenience) for some function $g(u, u_x, \dots)$ of u and its x -derivatives. Conversely, if

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial g}{\partial x} = 0,$$

for some functions f and g depending on u and its x -derivatives then $F = \int f dx$ is a conserved quantity for the equation we are considering. The quantity f is referred to as the conserved density; j is called its corresponding flux. At this point, we should also note that if $f(u, u_x, \dots) = \partial_x h(u, u_x, \dots)$, then F is trivial and such conserved densities should be ignored. Thus, as for Hamiltonians and other functional densities, conserved densities are determined up to total x -derivatives.

7.1.2 Using the scaling symmetry

Following the scheme of the previous chapter, we could attempt to construct more conserved quantities by multiplying the KdV equation by increasingly large powers of u , but this fails quickly. How then do we proceed to construct further conserved quantities, if there are any?

At this point, we turn to the scaling symmetry of the KdV equation. The KdV equation is invariant under the scaling transformation (check!)

$$\begin{cases} x' &= \epsilon x \\ t' &= \epsilon^3 t \\ u' &= u/\epsilon^2 \end{cases},$$

implying that the KdV equation expressed in terms of the new function $u'(x', t')$ of the new variables x' and t' is identical to the KdV equation expressed in terms of its original variables x , t and $u(x, t)$. Thus, we see that u scales with a factor of ϵ^2 , ∂_x scales with a factor of ϵ and ∂_t scales with a factor of ϵ^3 . With this knowledge, a scaling factor may be associated with every term that is a combination of u , and its x - and t -derivatives. Since any conserved quantity statement of an equation should inherit the scaling symmetry of that equation, it is only sensible to add or subtract terms in a conserved density flux that scale in the same way. This statement is completely analogous to the physics statement that only quantities with the same units may be added or subtracted.

It is clear from the above argument that any combination of u and its x - and t -derivatives scales as a certain power of ϵ . At this point, we may forget about ϵ and focus on its exponent. We refer to the exponent of the scaling factor of a given term as the **weight** of that terms. Denoting the weight by square parentheses $[\cdot]$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} [\partial_x] &= 1, \\ [\partial_t] &= 3, \\ [u] &= 2. \end{aligned}$$

With this information, it is easy to see that all terms of the KdV equation do indeed have the same weight, *i.e.*, scale the same way:

$$\begin{aligned} [u_t] &= [u] + [\partial_t] = 2 + 3 = 5, \\ [uu_x] &= 2[u] + [\partial_x] = 4 + 1 = 5, \\ [u_{xxx}] &= [u] + 3[\partial_x] = 2 + 3 = 5. \end{aligned}$$

Weights are also an easy way to determine scaling symmetries of an equation. Suppose we don't know the scaling symmetry. Imposing that all terms of the KdV equation have the same weight, we obtain

$$[u] + [\partial_t] = 2[u] + [\partial_x] = [u] + 3[\partial_x].$$

These equations have the above weights as solutions. Since these equations are homogeneous, *i.e.*, $(0, 0, 0)$ is a solution, any multiple of $([\partial_x], [\partial_t], [u]) = \lambda(1, 3, 2)$ is a solution as well. This corresponds to using ϵ^λ as a scaling parameter, as opposed to ϵ .

7.1.3 Examples

Let us use the principle of equal weight to construct some conserved quantities for the KdV equation. Let us start with some results that we already know. Choosing a weight for f , $[f]$, in

$$f_t + g_x = 0$$

implies that $[g] = [f] + 2$. In what follows we construct conserved densities of weight 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 8.

- **$[f] = 2$.** What terms can appear in f , if $[f] = 2$? Since $[u] = 2$, the only possibility is $f = u$. Next we require g such that $[g] = 4$. Possible terms for such g are u^2 , u_{xx} . Thus

$$g = c_1 u^2 + c_2 u_{xx}.$$

Expressing the equality $f_t + g_x = 0$ gives an expression involving u and its x - and t -derivatives. All t -derivatives are replaced using the KdV equation, resulting in an

expression involving u and some of its x -derivatives. The coefficients of all the remaining terms necessarily cancel, resulting in linear algebraic equations for the unknown coefficients c_1 and c_2 :

$$\begin{aligned}
u_t + 2c_1 uu_x + c_2 u_{xxx} &= 0 \\
\Rightarrow -uu_x - u_{xxx} + 2c_1 uu_x + c_2 u_{xxx} &= 0 \\
\Rightarrow (-1 + 2c_1)uu_x + (-1 + c_2)u_{xxx} &= 0 \\
\Rightarrow -1 + 2c_1 = 0, \quad -1 + c_2 = 0 \\
\Rightarrow c_1 = 1/2, \quad c_2 = 1,
\end{aligned}$$

resulting in the conservation law

$$\partial_t u + \partial_x \left(\frac{1}{2} u^2 + u_{xx} \right) = 0,$$

and the conserved quantity $F_{-1} = \int u dx$.

- **[f] = 3.** With $[f] = 3$, only $f = u_x$ is possible. Since $u_x = \partial_x(u)$ is an x -derivative, this results in a trivial conservation law:

$$\partial_t(u_x) + \partial_x(-u_t) = 0,$$

and no nontrivial conservation law of weight 3 is found for the KdV equation.

- **[f] = 4.** With $[f] = 4$, only the terms u^2 and u_{xx} are possible. This second term is an x -derivative, and only has a trivial contribution. We may restrict ourselves to $f = u^2$. Then $[g] = 6$, with possible terms for g being u^3 , u_x^2 , uu_{xx} , u_{xxx} . Thus

$$g = c_1 u^3 + c_2 u_x^2 + c_3 uu_{xx} + c_4 u_{xxx},$$

resulting in

$$\begin{aligned}
\partial_t(u^2) + \partial_x(c_1 u^3 + c_2 u_x^2 + c_3 uu_{xx} + c_4 u_{xxx}) &= 0 \\
\Rightarrow 2uu_t + 3c_1 u^2 u_x + 2c_2 u_x u_{xx} + c_3 u_x u_{xx} + c_3 uu_{xxx} + c_4 u_{5x} &= 0 \\
\Rightarrow 2u(-uu_x - u_{xxx}) + 3c_1 u^2 u_x + 2c_2 u_x u_{xx} + c_3 u_x u_{xx} + c_3 uu_{xxx} + c_4 u_{5x} &= 0 \\
\Rightarrow (-2 + 3c_1)u^2 u_x + (-2 + c_3)uu_{xxx} + (2c_2 + c_3)u_x u_{xx} + c_4 u_{5x} &= 0 \\
\Rightarrow -2 + 3c_1 = 0, \quad -2 + c_3 = 0, \quad 2c_2 + c_3 = 0, \quad c_4 = 0 \\
\Rightarrow c_1 = 2/3, \quad c_2 = -1, \quad c_3 = 2, \quad c_4 = 0,
\end{aligned}$$

resulting in the conservation law

$$\partial_t (u^2) + \partial_x \left(\frac{2}{3} u^3 + -u_x^2 + 2uu_{xx} \right) = 0,$$

and the conserved quantity

$$F_0 = \frac{1}{2} \int u^2 dx.$$

The factor $1/2$ is for convenience. Clearly, any constant multiple of a conserved quantity is again a conserved quantity.

Note that the scaling symmetry approach reduces the problem of finding conserved quantities to one of solving a system of linear algebraic equations for the unknown coefficients c_i . This approach is highly algorithmic and is ideally suited for automation using a symbolic computation package such as Maple^(c) or Mathematica^(c).

- **$[f] = 5$.** With $[f] = 5$, only the terms uu_x and u_{xxx} need to be considered. But both terms are x -derivatives: $uu_x = \partial_x(u^2/2)$ and $u_{xxx} = \partial_x(u_{xx})$. Thus $[f] = 5$ only results in a trivial conservation law. It is generally true that odd values of $[f]$ result in trivial conservation laws for the KdV equation.
- **$[f] = 6$.** With $[f] = 6$, the possible terms are u^3 , u_x^2 , uu_{xx} and u_{xxxx} . The second and third term are equivalent, up to an x -derivative: $uu_{xx} = \partial_x(uu_x) - u_x^2$, and the last term is an x -derivative. Therefore we have

$$f = a_1 u^3 + a_2 u_x^2,$$

where a_1 and a_2 are coefficients, to be determined. With $[f] = 6$, we need $[g] = 8$, with possible terms u^4 , $u^2 u_{xx}$, uu_x^2 , $u_x^2 u_x$, $u_x u_{xxx}$, uu_{xxxx} and u_{6x} :

$$g = c_1 u^4 + c_2 u^2 u_{xx} + c_3 uu_x^2 + c_4 u_x^2 u_x + c_5 u_x u_{xxx} + c_6 uu_{xxxx} + c_7 u_{6x}.$$

In order to eliminate t -derivatives from $f_t = 3a_1 u^2 u_t + 2a_2 u_x u_{xt}$, we need

$$u_t = -uu_x - u_{xxx} \Rightarrow u_{xt} = -u_x^2 - uu_{xx} - u_{xxxx}.$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}
& f_t + g_x = 0 \\
\Rightarrow & 3a_1 u^2 u_t + 2a_2 u_x u_{xt} + \partial_x (c_1 u^4 + c_2 u^2 u_{xx} + c_3 u u_x^2 + c_4 u_{xx}^2 + c_5 u_x u_{xxx} + c_6 u u_{xxxx} + c_7 u_{6x}) = 0 \\
& \Rightarrow 3a_1 u^2 (-u u_x - u_{xxx}) + 2a_2 u_x (-u_x^2 - u u_{xx} - u_{xxx}) + 4c_1 u^3 u_x + 2c_2 u u_x u_{xx} + \\
& \quad c_2 u^2 u_{xxx} + c_3 u_x^3 + 2c_3 u u_x u_{xx} + 2c_4 u_{xx} u_{xxx} + c_5 u_{xx} u_{xxx} + c_5 u_x u_{xxxx} + \\
& \quad c_6 u_x u_{xxxx} + c_6 u u_{5x} + c_7 u_{7x} = 0,
\end{aligned}$$

resulting in the equations:

$$\begin{aligned}
u^3 u_x : & \quad -3a_1 + 4c_1 = 0, \\
u^2 u_{xxx} : & \quad -3a_1 + c_2 = 0, \\
u_x^3 : & \quad -2a_2 + c_3 = 0, \\
u u_x u_{xx} : & \quad -2a_2 + 2c_2 + 2c_3 = 0, \\
u_x u_{xxxx} : & \quad -2a_2 + c_5 + c_6 = 0, \\
u_{xx} u_{xxx} : & \quad 2c_4 + c_5 = 0, \\
u u_{5x} : & \quad c_6 = 0, \\
u_{7x} : & \quad c_7 = 0.
\end{aligned}$$

Choosing $a_2 = 1/2$, we obtain the solution $a_1 = -1/6$, $c_1 = -1/8$, $c_2 = -1/2$, $c_3 = 1$, $c_4 = -1/2$, $c_5 = 1$, $c_6 = 0$ and $c_7 = 0$. Thus, the conservation law is

$$\partial_t \left(\frac{1}{2} u_x^2 - \frac{1}{6} u^3 \right) + \partial_x \left(-\frac{1}{8} u^4 - \frac{1}{2} u^2 u_{xx} + u u_x^2 - \frac{1}{2} u_{xx}^2 + u_x u_{xxx} \right) = 0,$$

resulting in the conserved quantity

$$F_1 = \int \left(\frac{1}{2} u_x^2 - \frac{1}{6} u^3 \right) dx,$$

the Hamiltonian for the KdV equation.

- **$[f] = 8$.** With $[f] = 8$, the possible terms are u^4 , $u^2 u_{xx}$, $u u_x^2$, u_{xx}^2 , $u_x u_{xxx}$, $u u_{xxxx}$ and u_{6x} . The second and third term are equivalent, up to an x -derivative, as are the fourth, fifth and sixth terms. The last term is an x -derivative. Therefore we have

$$f = a_1 u^4 + a_2 u u_x^2 + a_3 u_{xx}^2,$$

where a_1 , a_2 and a_3 are coefficients, to be determined. With $[f] = 8$, we need $[g] = 10$, with possible terms u^5 , u^3u_{xx} , $u^2u_x^2$, u^2u_{xxx} , uu_xu_{xx} , uu_{xx}^2 , $u_x^2u_{xx}$, uu_{6x} , u_xu_{5x} , $u_{xx}u_{xxxx}$, u_{xxx}^2 and u_{8x} . Proceeding in a similar way to the above calculations, we find the next conserved quantity to be

$$F_2 = \int \left(\frac{1}{24}u^4 - \frac{1}{2}uu_x^2 + \frac{3}{10}u_{xx}^2 \right) dx.$$

It is clear that we could proceed this way. It is equally clear that the calculations are quickly becoming very tedious. Given that we have constructed one more conserved quantity than one could be led to believe exists from physical considerations, and that it seems even more such quantities could be constructed, is it possible there are an infinite number?

7.2 The KdV equation has an infinite number of conserved quantities

In this section, we prove that the KdV equation possesses an infinite number of conserved quantities. The main tool for this is the Miura transformation:

$$u = -6(v^2 + v_x),$$

which transforms a function $v(x, t)$ to a function $u(x, t)$. Notice that this transformation is not invertible: both $v(x, t) = 0$ and $v(x, t) = 1/x$ give rise to $u(x, t) = 0$. We have the following

Claim: If $v(x, t)$ satisfies the Modified KdV equation

$$v_t - 6v^2v_x + v_{xxx} = 0,$$

then its Miura transform $u(x, t)$ satisfies the KdV equation $u_t + uu_x + u_{xxx} = 0$.

Before proceeding to prove the claim, we should pause and wonder at the marvel that is the Miura transformation: given one solution to a certain nonlinear partial differential equation, we may produce a solution to a different nonlinear partial differential equation. The Miura transformation is our first encounter with a Bäcklund transformation: a Bäcklund transformation is a transformation that transforms solutions of one equation to solutions of another one. If the source and target differential equations are the same, the transformation

is called an auto-bäcklund transformation.

Proof of the claim:

$$\begin{aligned}
u_t + uu_x + u_{xxx} &= -6(2vv_t + v_{xt}) + 36(v^2 + v_x)(2vv_x + v_{xx}) - 6\partial_x^2(2vv_x + v_{xx}) \\
&= -12v(6v^2v_x - v_{xxx}) - 6\partial_x(6v^2v_x - v_{xxx}) + 36(v^2 + v_x)(2vv_x + v_{xx}) \\
&\quad - 6\partial_x(2v_x^2 + 2vv_{xx} + v_{xxx}) \\
&= -12v(6v^2v_x - v_{xxx}) - 6(12vv_x^2 + 6v^2v_{xx} - v_{xxx}) + \\
&\quad 36(v^2 + v_x)(2vv_x + v_{xx}) - 6(4v_xv_{xx} + 2v_xv_{xx} + 2vv_{xxx} + v_{xxx}) \\
&= 0.
\end{aligned}$$

Using the Miura transformation to show that the KdV equation has an infinite number of conserved quantities proceeds in four steps.

1. **The KdV equation has a Galilean invariance.** Indeed, the KdV equation is invariant under the transformation of $(x, t, u) \rightarrow (x', t', u')$ given by

$$\begin{cases} x' &= x + t/\epsilon^2 \\ t' &= t \\ u &= u' - 1/\epsilon^2. \end{cases}$$

This is verified directly:

$$\begin{aligned}
u_t + uu_x + u_{xxx} &= \left(\partial_{t'} + \frac{1}{\epsilon^2}\partial_{x'}\right)\left(u' - \frac{1}{\epsilon^2}\right) + \left(u' - \frac{1}{\epsilon^2}\right)\frac{\partial u'}{\partial x'} + \frac{\partial^3 u'}{\partial x'^3} \\
&= u'_{t'} + u'u'_{x'} + u'_{x'x'x'}.
\end{aligned}$$

2. **The Gardner equation.** The transformation

$$v = -\epsilon w(x', t') + \frac{\beta}{\epsilon},$$

with $\beta = 1/\sqrt{6}$, and x' and t' defined by the above Galilean transformation, when applied to the Modified KdV equation, results in the Gardner equation

$$w_{t'} + \partial_{x'}\left(w_{x'x'} + \sqrt{6}w^2 - 2\epsilon^2w^3\right) = 0.$$

As before, the proof is by direct verification. The Gardner equation is written as a conservation law, therefore it is clear that $\int w dx'$ is a conserved quantity for the Gardner equation, or

$$\frac{d}{dt'} \int w dx' = 0.$$

3. **The Miura transformation for the Gardner equation.** In these new variables, the Miura transformation $w(x', t') \rightarrow u'(x', t')$ becomes

$$\begin{aligned} u' - \frac{1}{\epsilon^2} &= -6 \left(\left(-\epsilon w + \frac{\beta}{\epsilon} \right)^2 - \epsilon w_{x'} \right) \\ &= -6 \left(\epsilon^2 w^2 - 2w\beta + \frac{1}{6\epsilon^2} \right) + 6\epsilon w_{x'} \\ \Rightarrow u' &= 12\beta w + 6\epsilon w_{x'} - 6\epsilon^2 w^2. \end{aligned}$$

4. **Inverting the Miura transform.** Thinking of ϵ as small, this last expression for the Miura transform may be inverted to express $w(x', t')$ as a function of $u'(x', t')$, for small ϵ . In what follows, all primes are dropped for the sake of simplicity. Let

$$w = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \epsilon^n w_n = w_0 + \epsilon w_1 + \epsilon^2 w_2 + \dots$$

Before proceeding to invert the Miura transformation, it is important to consider the bigger picture: since $\int w dx$ is conserved, and ϵ is independent of x and t , so is everyone of its coefficients of any power of ϵ^n , $n = 0, 1, \dots$. But all these coefficients are functions of u and its derivatives, through the inverted Miura transformation. Thus we construct an infinite sequence of conserved quantities for the KdV equation. The main principle behind this is that we have constructed one conserved quantity $\int w dx$, depending on a parameter ϵ . Since ϵ is arbitrary (as long as it is small), the Taylor coefficients of this conserved quantity, expanded as a series in ϵ are all conserved individually.

Substituting the expansion for w in the Miura transformation gives

$$\begin{aligned} u &= 12\beta \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \epsilon^n w_n + 6\epsilon \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \epsilon^n w_{n,x} - 6\epsilon^2 \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \epsilon^{i+j} w_i w_j \\ &= 12\beta w_0 + 12\beta \epsilon w_1 + 6\epsilon w_{0,x} + 12\beta \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} \epsilon^n w_n + 6 \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} \epsilon^n w_{n-1,x} - 6 \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} \epsilon^n \sum_{k=0}^{n-2} w_k w_{n-2-k}, \end{aligned}$$

resulting in

$$\begin{aligned}
\epsilon^0 : \quad u = 12\beta w_0 &\Rightarrow w_0 = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{6}}u \\
\epsilon^1 : \quad 0 = 12\beta w_1 + 6w_{0,x} &\Rightarrow w_1 = -\frac{1}{4}u_x \\
\epsilon^n : \quad 0 = 12\beta w_n + 6w_{n-1,x} - 6 \sum_{k=0}^{n-2} w_k w_{n-2-k}, &\text{ for } n \geq 2.
\end{aligned}$$

This last equation gives

$$w_n = -\frac{1}{2\beta}w_{n-1,x} + \frac{1}{2\beta} \sum_{k=0}^{n-2} w_k w_{n-2-k},$$

valid for $n = 2, 3, \dots$. Together with the initiations for w_0 and w_1 , this is a recursion relationship allowing for the determination of all w_n 's, $n = 0, 1, \dots$. We obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
w_2 &= \frac{\sqrt{6}}{8}u_{xx} + \frac{1}{8\sqrt{6}}u^2, \\
w_3 &= -\frac{1}{8}\partial_x(3u_{xx} + u^2),
\end{aligned}$$

and so on. One can show that all w_n 's with odd n are x -derivatives. They give rise to trivial conserved quantities. For n even, the entire KdV sequence of conserved quantities is obtained, each conserved density containing a term with a higher power of u , allowing us to conclude functional independence of the conserved quantities. Note that the conserved densities with even n may contain terms that are x -derivatives. These terms may be ignored when writing down the corresponding conserved quantity, but they must be retained when using the recursion relationship to find high-order terms. It is possible, but significantly harder than the proof for functional independence, to prove that these conserved quantities are mutually in involution with respect to the KdV Poisson structure ∂_x . This is beyond the scope of these notes.

In summary, we have shown in a constructive way that the KdV equation has an infinite set of conserved quantities

$$\int w_0 dx, \quad \int w_1 dx, \quad \int w_2 dx, \quad \int w_3 dx, \dots$$

Our method of construction may seem like it relied heavily on various tricks. After we introduce Lax pairs, we will see more systematic ways of demonstrating the existence of an infinite number of conserved quantities.

7.3 The KdV hierarchy

Previously we found that the KdV equation may be written as a Hamiltonian system with Poisson structure $B = \partial_x$ and Hamiltonian given by the conserved quantity F_1 :

$$F_1 = \int \left(\frac{1}{2} u_x^2 - \frac{1}{6} u^3 \right) dx.$$

Any functional F may be used to define a Hamiltonian system by $u_t = \partial_x \frac{dF}{du}$, thus specifically we may define an infinite hierarchy of equations by using the infinite sequence of conserved quantities F_n , $n = -1, 0, 1, \dots$ of the KdV equation. This hierarchy of equations is referred to as the KdV hierarchy, as it contains the KdV equation as its $n = 1$ member. Thus, the n -th member of the KdV hierarchy is defined by

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t_n} = \partial_x \frac{dF_n}{du},$$

valid for $n = -1, 0, 1, \dots$. In order to set the KdV time variable apart from the time variable for the other members of the hierarchy, we have introduced new time-like variables t_n , $n = -1, 0, 1, \dots$. Let's consider the first few members of this infinite hierarchy.

- **$n = -1$.** Then $F_{-1} = \int u dx$, and the $n = -1$ member of the KdV hierarchy is

$$u_{t_{-1}} = \partial_x 1 \Rightarrow u_{t_{-1}} = 0.$$

This is the reason we started counting the sequence of conserved quantities from $n = -1$. The above calculation is nothing but a verification of the fact that F_{-1} is the Casimir functional for the KdV Poisson structure. In what follows, the members of the KdV hierarchy will be counted starting from $n = 0$.

- **$n = 0$.** Then $F_0 = \frac{1}{2} \int u^2 dx$, and

$$u_{t_0} = \partial_x u \Rightarrow u_{t_0} = u_x.$$

This is the first-order wave equation, or the transport equation with unit velocity. For this reason, the x variable of the KdV hierarchy is often identified with t_1 . This is the last linear equation of the hierarchy.

- **$n = 1$.** Then $F_1 = \int \left(\frac{1}{2} u_x^2 - \frac{1}{6} u^3 \right) dx$, and

$$u_{t_1} = \partial_x \left(-\frac{1}{2} u^2 - \partial_x u_x \right) \Rightarrow u_{t_1} = -u u_x - u_{xx}.$$

Thus the KdV equation is the “first” member of the KdV hierarchy.

- **$n = 2$.** Then $F_2 = \int \left(\frac{1}{24}u^4 - \frac{1}{2}uu_x^2 + \frac{3}{10}u_{xx}^2 \right) dx$, and

$$u_{t_2} = \partial_x \left(\frac{1}{6}u^3 - \frac{1}{2}u_x^2 - \partial_x(-uu_x) + \partial_x^2 \left(\frac{3}{5}u_{xx} \right) \right) \Rightarrow u_{t_2} = \frac{1}{2}u^2u_x + 2u_xu_{xx} + uu_{xxx} + \frac{3}{5}u_{5x}.$$

This is the second KdV equation. As n increases, the equations become more complicated, more nonlinear, but also more dispersive.

Claim: F_{-1}, F_0, F_1, \dots are a common set of conserved quantities for all members of the KdV hierarchy.

Proof: Consider the n -th KdV equation, $n \in \mathbb{N}$,

$$u_{t_n} = \partial_x \frac{dF_n}{du}.$$

We need to show that $\partial F_k / \partial t_n = 0$, ($n \geq -1$) which is equivalent to

$$\{F_k, F_n\} = 0,$$

since F_n is the Hamiltonian for the n -th KdV equation. But this is true for any k and n , as all conserved quantities F_k , $k = -1, 0, 1, \dots$ are mutually in involution under the KdV Poisson structure, and this Poisson structure is identical for all members of the KdV hierarchy.

Next we prove

Claim: All members of the KdV hierarchy commute. In other words, if $S_k(t_{k1}, t_{k0})$ is the solution operator for the k -th KdV equation (thus $S_k(t_{k1}, t_{k0})$ evolves a solution of the k -th KdV equation from $t_k = t_{k0}$ to $t_k = t_{k1}$), then $S_j S_k = S_k S_j$, for any $j, k = 0, 1, \dots$

Proof: We prove an infinitesimal version of the claim. A small change in t_j is given by ∂_{t_j} , while a small change in t_k is given by ∂_{t_k} . Thus, we verify that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t_j} \frac{\partial u}{\partial t_k} = \frac{\partial}{\partial t_k} \frac{\partial u}{\partial t_j}.$$

Starting from the left-hand side

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial t_j} \frac{\partial u}{\partial t_k} &= \left\{ \frac{\partial u}{\partial t_k}, F_j \right\} \\
&= \{ \{u, F_k\}, F_j \} \\
&= -\{ \{F_k, F_j\}, u \} - \{ \{F_j, u\}, F_k \} \\
&= -\{ \{F_j, u\}, F_k \} \\
&= \{ \{u, F_j\}, F_k \} \\
&= \left\{ \frac{\partial u}{\partial t_j}, F_k \right\} \\
&= \frac{\partial}{\partial t_k} \frac{\partial u}{\partial t_j},
\end{aligned}$$

where we have used the Jacobi identity and the fact that $\{F_k, F_j\} = 0$. This proves the claim.

Example Let's use an example to illustrate that the above property is not trivial. Consider the two ordinary differential equations

$$\frac{dz_1}{dx} = -z_1^2,$$

and

$$\frac{dz_2}{dy} = z_2 - 1.$$

Then

$$z_1(x) = \frac{z_1(0)}{1 + xz_1(0)},$$

and

$$z_2(y) = (z_2(0) - 1)e^y + 1.$$

Using $z_1(x)$ with $z_1(0) = \alpha$ as an initial condition for $z_2(y)$ gives

$$z_{12}(x, y, \alpha) = \frac{(\alpha(1-x) - 1)e^y - 1 - \alpha x}{1 + \alpha x},$$

whereas using $z_2(y)$ with $z_2(0) = \alpha$ as an initial condition for $z_1(x)$ gives

$$z_{21}(x, y, \alpha) = \frac{(\alpha - 1)e^y - 1}{1 + x((\alpha - 1)e^y - 1)}.$$

Clearly $z_{12}(x, y, \alpha) \neq z_{21}(x, y, \alpha)$, and the flows of these two differential equations do not commute. In this example we could explicitly calculate the solution operators of the equations. Typically, this is not possible. In that case, the commutativity or the absence thereof may be tested by computing

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dx} \frac{d}{dy} z - \frac{d}{dy} \frac{d}{dx} z &= \frac{d}{dx}(z - 1) - \frac{d}{dy}(-z^2) \\ &= \frac{dz}{dx} + 2z \frac{dz}{dy} \\ &= -z^2 + 2z(z - 1) \\ &= z^2 - 2z \neq 0, \end{aligned}$$

which is a far more straightforward calculation than actually solving both equations.

Because the different members of the KdV hierarchy commute, they have a common set of solutions. Thus, it is possible to construct solutions $u(x, t_j, t_k)$ that are simultaneous solutions to the j -th and k -th KdV equations. We have already seen and used this: when we derived the KdV equation in the water wave problem, we first encountered the first-order one-directional wave equation. Then we constructed soliton solutions that depended on both τ_0 and τ_1 , the time variable for the wave equation and the KdV equation respectively. Because of this it may be tempting to guess that the higher members of the KdV hierarchy correspond to higher-order evolution of the wave form in (for our case) the water wave problem. Unfortunately, this is not true.

7.4 The stationary KdV hierarchy

Previously, we studied the one-soliton solution of the KdV equation by considering a stationary reduction of the KdV equation. In this section, we generalize this to study multi-soliton solutions which may be found as stationary solutions of higher-order members of the KdV hierarchy.

The stationary KdV hierarchy is defined as the collection of ordinary differential equations given by

$$\partial_x \frac{dT_n}{du} = 0,$$

for $n = 0, 1, \dots$, where

$$T_n = \sum_{k=-1}^n c_k F_k = F_n + c_{n-1} F_{n-1} + \dots + c_1 F_1 + c_0 F_0 + c_{-1} F_{-1},$$

and $c_n = 1$. Thus, the n -th stationary KdV equation is defined by the stationarity of the n -th KdV equation, where all lower-order KdV flows have been included, as in our example of the one-soliton where the stationarity assumption led to the inclusion of a wave equation term. The stationary KdV equation is easily integrated once:

$$\frac{dT_n}{du} = \alpha \Rightarrow \frac{d}{du} (T_n - \alpha F_{-1}) = 0.$$

Note that the inclusion of α merely alters the value of the constant c_{-1} , thus it may be omitted. This leads to the definition of the stationary KdV hierarchy as the collection of ordinary differential equations

$$\frac{dT_n}{du} = 0.$$

It follows immediately that this equation is Lagrangian. Through the use of a generalized Legendre transformation (the Ostrogradski transformation), it may be transformed into a Hamiltonian system with canonical Poisson structure. Bogoyavlenski and Novikov showed that this family of Hamiltonian systems is integrable and constructed a complete set of conserved quantities.

Remarks:

- The approach of Bogoyavlenski and Novikov allows for the construction of large classes of finite-dimensional solutions of the KdV equation (as well as other members of the KdV hierarchy) by solving ordinary differential equations. Analytically, this is beneficial, as these ordinary differential equations are Hamiltonian with canonical Poisson structure and a complete set of conserved quantities for this system is known. Numerically this is beneficial as well. The numerical solution of ordinary differential equations is significantly easier than that of partial differential equations. Furthermore, the knowledge of conserved quantities imposes many restrictions on the numerical results. If these are satisfied we are guaranteed accurate numerical results that mimic the qualitative properties of the solutions we are looking for.
- Since any equation of the KdV hierarchy commutes with any of the stationary KdV equations, the set of solutions of the n -th stationary KdV equation is invariant under the KdV hierarchy. The set of all solutions of the n -th stationary KdV hierarchy depends on $3n + 1$ arbitrary constants (the $n + 1$ constants $c_{-1}, c_0, \dots, c_{n-1}$, and the constants of the integration for the $2n$ -th order differential equation). Thus this set is $(3n + 1)$ -dimensional. If any element of this set is used as an initial condition for the k -th KdV equation, then the resulting solution of the k -th KdV equation remains a solution of the n -th stationary KdV equation.

Let $u(x, c, d)$ be a solution of the n -th stationary KdV equation. Here $c = (c_{-1}, c_0, c_1, \dots, c_{n-1})$ and $d = (d_1, \dots, d_{2n})$, the constants of integration for the n -th

stationary KdV equation. The above statement implies that using $u(x, c, d)$ as an initial condition in the k -th KdV equation results in a different solution of the n -th stationary KdV equation. In other words, the constants c and d then become functions of t_k .

In general, finite-dimensional classes of solutions of the entire KdV hierarchy may be generated by solving one of the members of the stationary KdV hierarchy, and allowing the constant parameters to be dependent on all variables t_k , $k = 0, 1, \dots$

- What is the relevance of these finite-dimensional classes of solutions? Suppose one wants to solve the following partial differential equation initial-value problem:

$$\begin{cases} u_t + uu_x + u_{xxx} = 0, \\ u(x, 0) = U(x) \in L_2(a, b), \end{cases}$$

where (a, b) may be $(-\infty, \infty)$ for the case of the whole line, and $(a, b) = (a, a + L)$ for the periodic boundary condition problem with period L . McKean and others showed that any $U(x) \in L_2(a, b)$ may be approximated arbitrarily close by solutions of the stationary KdV hierarchy. Thus,

$$\forall \epsilon > 0, \quad \exists N, c, d : n > N \Rightarrow \int_a^b |U(x) - U_n(x, c, d)|^2 dx < \epsilon,$$

where $U_n(x, c, d)$ is a solution of the n -th KdV equation. Then, if such a $U_n(x, c, d)$ is used as an initial condition for the KdV equation, the solution corresponding to this initial condition remains close to the solution with initial condition $U(x)$ in an orbital sense: amplitudes will match well over long times, but there may be a phase drift. In this sense, the KdV initial-value problem in $L_2(a, b)$ may be solved with any degree of accuracy by considering solutions of the stationary KdV hierarchy, for sufficiently high n .

7.5 Exercises

1. Find the fourth conserved quantity for the KdV equation $u_t = uu_x + u_{xxx}$, *i.e.*, the conserved quantity which contains $\frac{1}{24} \int u^4 dx$.
2. Consider the one-dimensional water wave problem, defined by (4.1). Show that

$$H = \frac{1}{2} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx \int_{-h}^{\zeta} dz (\phi_x^2 + \phi_z^2) + \frac{1}{2} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g \zeta^2 dx$$

is a conserved quantity for the water wave problem (4.1). Zakharov [Zak68] showed that (4.1) can be rephrased as a Hamiltonian problem with Hamiltonian H .

3. **The Ostrovsky equation** is used to model weakly nonlinear long waves in a rotating frame. It is given by

$$(\eta_t + \eta\eta_x + \eta_{xxx})_x = \gamma\eta,$$

with $\gamma \neq 0$. In what follows, we assume that as $|x| \rightarrow \infty$, η and its derivatives approach zero as fast as we need them to.

- Show that $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \eta dx = 0$. In other words, not only is $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \eta dx$ conserved, but its value is fixed at zero.
- Using this result, show that $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \eta^2 dx$ is a conserved quantity. Do this by rewriting the equation in evolution form, with an indefinite integral on the right-hand side.
- Use the definition of the variational derivative to verify that the Ostrovsky equation is Hamiltonian with Poisson operator ∂_x and Hamiltonian

$$H = \frac{1}{2} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left(\eta_x^2 - \frac{1}{3} \eta^3 - \gamma \phi^2 \right) dx,$$

where $\phi_x = \eta$.

4. **Recursion operator** For a Bi-Hamiltonian system with two Poisson structures given by B_0 , B_1 , one defines a recursion operator $R = B_1 B_0^{-1}$, which takes one element of the hierarchy of equations to the next element. For the KdV equation with $B_0 = \partial_x$ and $B_1 = \partial_{xxx} + \frac{1}{3}(u\partial_x + \partial_x u)$, we get $B_0^{-1} = \partial_x^{-1}$, integration with respect to x . Write down the recursion operator. Apply it to u_x (the zero-th KdV flow) to obtain the first KdV flow. Now apply it to $uu_x + u_{xxx}$ to get (up to rescaling of t_2) the second KdV equation. What is the third KdV equation?
5. Consider the function $U(x) = 2\partial_x^2 \ln(1 + e^{kx+\alpha})$. Show that for a suitable k , $U(x)$ is a solution of the first member of the stationary KdV hierarchy (as you've already seen, it is the one-soliton solution):

$$6uu_x + u_{xxx} + c_0 u_x = 0.$$

(Note: it may be easier to define c_0 in terms of k , instead of the other way around)

Having accomplished this, let $u(x, t_1, t_2, t_3, \dots) = U(x)|_{\alpha=\alpha(t_1, t_2, t_3, \dots)}$. Determine the dependence of α on t_1 , t_2 and t_3 such that $u(x, t_1, t_2, t_3, \dots)$ is simultaneously a solution of the first, second and third KdV equations:

$$\begin{aligned} u_{t_1} &= 6uu_x + u_{xxx}, \\ u_{t_2} &= 30u^2u_x + 20u_xu_{xx} + 10uu_{xxx} + u_{5x}, \\ u_{t_3} &= 140u^3u_x + 70u_x^3 + 280uu_xu_{xx} + 70u_{xx}u_{xxx} + 70u^2u_{xxx} + 42u_xu_{xxxx} + 14uu_{5x} + u_{7x}. \end{aligned}$$

Based on this, write down a guess for the one-soliton solution that solves the entire KdV hierarchy.

6. **Warning: maple/mathematica-intensive.** Consider the function

$$U(x) = 2\partial_x^2 \ln \left(1 + e^{k_1 x + \alpha} + e^{k_2 x + \beta} + \left(\frac{k_1 - k_2}{k_1 + k_2} \right)^2 e^{k_1 x + k_2 x + \alpha + \beta} \right).$$

Show that for a suitable k_1, k_2 , $U(x)$ is a solution of the second member of the stationary KdV hierarchy:

$$30u^2u_x + 20u_xu_{xx} + 10uu_{xxx} + u_{5x} + c_1(6uu_x + u_{xxx}) + c_0u_x = 0.$$

(Note: it may be easier to define c_1, c_0 in terms of k_1 and k_2 instead of the other way around)

Having accomplished this, let $u(x, t_1, t_2, t_3, \dots) = U(x)|_{\alpha=\alpha(t_1, t_2, t_3, \dots), \beta=\beta(t_1, t_2, t_3, \dots)}$. Determine the dependence of α and β on t_1, t_2 and t_3 such that $u(x, t_1, t_2, t_3, \dots)$ is simultaneously a solution of the first, second and third KdV equations, given above.

Based on this, write down a guess for the two-soliton solution of the entire KdV hierarchy.

Chapter 8

The stability of solutions of nonlinear wave equations

refs: Beck, Kapitula+Promislow, Johnson notes?

8.1 Exercises

8.1.

Part II

Local and algebraic aspects of integrable equations

Chapter 9

Constructing special solutions of integrable equations

9.1 Backlund transformations

9.2 Darboux transformations

Having found a Lax pair for an integrable equation, it may be used to set up a Darboux transformation for this equation. Darboux transformations will allow us to construct special solutions of the equation using elementary methods. Specifically, we will construct general soliton solutions starting from the most elementary soliton solutions. Darboux transformations are closely related to Bäcklund transformations. The main difference is that Bäcklund transformations are direct methods in the sense that they do not rely on the existence of a Lax pair. On the other hand, using the Lax pair allows for a more systematic set-up of the transformation, due to the linearity of the Lax pair.

Again, consider the KdV equation in the form

$$u_t = 6uu_x + u_{xxx}.$$

It has a Lax pair as obtained in the previous chapter. This Lax pair may be rewritten as a scalar second-order equation:

$$\begin{cases} \psi_{xx} &= (\lambda - u)\psi, \\ \psi_t &= -u_x\psi + (2u + 4\lambda)\psi_x. \end{cases}$$

We will use the Lax pair to construct soliton solutions of the KdV equation from simpler solutions of the same equation. The simplest solution we can start from is the $u = 0$ solution.

Consider the first equation of the Lax pair:

$$\psi_{xx} = (\lambda - u)\psi.$$

Take $\lambda = \lambda_1$, fixed. Corresponding to this value of λ , the equation has two linearly independent solutions, as it is a linear ordinary equation of second order. Denote one of these solutions by

$$\psi_1 = \psi(x, \lambda_1),$$

where the dependence on λ is indicated explicitly. Define

$$\sigma_1 = \frac{\psi_{1x}}{\psi_1} = \partial_x \ln \psi.$$

The following theorem holds:

Theorem: (Darboux) The function $\psi[1] = (\partial_x - \sigma_1)\psi$ satisfies the differential equation

$$\psi[1]_{xx} = (\lambda - u[1])\psi[1],$$

with $u[1] = u + 2\sigma_{1x}$.

Remark: Given a potential u for the linear Schrödinger equation, and one solution of the equation corresponding to this potential, the Darboux theorem provides a way to construct the general solution of a related linear Schrödinger equation, from the general solution of the original equation.

Proof: The proof is by direct verification. Consider

$$\begin{aligned} \psi[1]_{xx} - \lambda\psi[1] + u[1]\psi[1] &= \\ (\psi_x - \sigma_1\psi)_{xx} - \lambda(\psi_x - \sigma_1\psi) + u[1](\psi_x - \sigma_1\psi) &= \\ \psi_{xxx} - (\sigma_{1x}\psi + \sigma_1\psi_x)_x - \lambda\psi_x + \lambda\sigma_1\psi + u[1]\psi_x - u[1]\sigma_1\psi &= \\ ((\lambda - u)\psi)_x - \sigma_{1xx}\psi - 2\sigma_{1x}\psi_x - \sigma_1\psi_{xx} - \lambda\psi_x + \lambda\sigma_1\psi + u[1]\psi_x - u[1]\sigma_1\psi &= \\ -u_x\psi + (\lambda - u)\psi_x - \sigma_{1xx}\psi - 2\sigma_{1x}\psi_x - \sigma_1(\lambda - u)\psi - \lambda\psi_x + \lambda\sigma_1\psi + u[1]\psi_x - u[1]\sigma_1\psi. \end{aligned}$$

Now we look at the coefficients of ψ and ψ_x separately. The coefficient of ψ_x is:

$$(\lambda - u) - 2\sigma_{1x} - \lambda + u[1] = -u - 2\sigma_{1x} + u + 2\sigma_{1x} = 0.$$

It remains to check the coefficient of ψ :

$$\begin{aligned} -u_x - \sigma_{1xx} - \sigma_1(\lambda - u) + \lambda\sigma_1 - u[1]\sigma_1 &= \\ -u_x - \sigma_{1xx} + \sigma_1u - u[1]\sigma_1 &= \\ -u_x - \sigma_{1xx} + \sigma_1u - (u + 2\sigma_{1x})\sigma_1 &= \\ -u_x - \sigma_{1xx} - 2\sigma_{1x}\sigma_1 &= \\ -\partial_x(u + \sigma_{1x} + \sigma_1^2) &= \\ -\partial_x\left(u + \left(\frac{\psi_{1x}}{\psi_1}\right)_x + \frac{\psi_{1x}^2}{\psi_1^2}\right) &= \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
-\partial_x \left(u + \frac{\psi_1 \psi_{1xx} - \psi_{1x}^2}{\psi_1^2} + \frac{\psi_{1x}^2}{\psi_1^2} \right) &= \\
-\partial_x \left(u + \frac{\psi_1 \psi_{1xx}}{\psi_1^2} \right) &= \\
-\partial_x (\lambda_1) &= 0.
\end{aligned}$$

This finishes the proof of Darboux's theorem.

Let us summarize how the Darboux theorem may be used:

1. Specify a potential for the Schrödinger equation; find the general solution of this Schrödinger equation, for all λ . Single out a solution corresponding to a specific $\lambda = \lambda_1$.
2. From this knowledge, Darboux's theorem allows us to construct a second Schrödinger equation defined by a new potential $u[1]$, and its general solution $\psi[1]$ for all λ .

For future use, it is convenient to notice that

$$\begin{cases} \psi[1] &= \frac{W(\psi_1, \psi)}{\psi_1}, \\ u[1] &= u + 2\partial_x^2 \ln \psi_1, \end{cases}$$

where $W(\psi_1, \psi) = \psi_1 \psi_x - \psi_{1x} \psi$ is the Wronskian of the two functions ψ_1 and ψ .

Example: Let $u = 0$, then the Schrödinger equation of the first step is

$$\psi_{xx} = \lambda \psi,$$

with general solution e^{ikx} , where $\lambda = -k^2$. Choose $\psi_1 = \cosh \kappa_1(x - x_1)$, with $\lambda_1 = \kappa_1^2$. It is typical to choose ψ_1 such that λ_1 is not in the spectrum, *i.e.*, ψ_1 is unbounded. Then $\sigma_1 = \kappa_1 \tanh \kappa_1(x - x_1)$ and

$$\begin{aligned}
\psi[1] &= \left(\frac{d}{dx} - \sigma_1 \right) e^{ikx} \\
&= (ik - \sigma_1) e^{ikx} \\
&= (ik - \kappa_1 \tanh \kappa_1(x - x_1)) e^{ikx}
\end{aligned}$$

This is the general solution for a Schrödinger equation with $\lambda = -k^2$ and

$$\begin{aligned}
u[1] &= 2\partial_x^2 \ln \cosh \kappa_1(x - x_1) \\
&= 2\kappa_1 \partial_x \tanh \kappa_1(x - x_1) \\
&= 2\kappa_1^2 \operatorname{sech}^2 \kappa_1(x - x_1),
\end{aligned}$$

and the reader will recognize the one-soliton solution of the KdV equation.

It is clear that this procedure may be repeated. Let $\psi_2[1] = W(\psi_1, \psi_2)/\psi_1$, where ψ_2 is a solution of the original Schrödinger equation, but with $\lambda = \lambda_2$. Then

$$\sigma_2 = \frac{\psi_2[1]_x}{\psi_2[1]},$$

and

$$\begin{cases} \psi[2] &= \left(\frac{d}{dx} - \sigma_2 \right) \psi[1] = \frac{W(\psi_2[1], \psi[1])}{\psi_2[1]}, \\ u[2] &= u[1] + 2\sigma_{2x} = u[1] + 2\partial_x^2 \ln \psi_2[1]. \end{cases}$$

The formula for $u[2]$ can be rewritten as:

$$\begin{aligned} u[2] &= u + 2\sigma_{1x} + 2\sigma_2 x \\ &= u + 2\partial_x(\sigma_1 + \sigma_2) \\ &= u + 2\partial_x^2 \ln \psi_1 \psi_2[1] \\ &= u + 2\partial_x^2 \ln W(\psi_1, \psi_2). \end{aligned}$$

This formula expresses the potential $u[2]$ in terms of two different eigenfunctions of the original Schrödinger equation. With significantly more work, one can rewrite the formula for $\psi[2]$ as well:

$$\psi[2] = \frac{W(\psi_1, \psi_2, \psi)}{W(\psi_1, \psi_2)},$$

where $W(\psi_1, \psi_2, \psi)$ denotes the Wronskian of the three functions ψ_1 , ψ_2 and ψ . Instead of working through the algebra to prove this result, we prove the general **Crum theorem**:

Theorem (Crum): After N steps of the Darboux transformation, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \psi[N] &= \frac{W(\psi_1, \psi_2, \dots, \psi_N, \psi)}{W(\psi_1, \psi_2, \dots, \psi_N)}, \\ u[N] &= u + 2\partial_x^2 \ln W(\psi_1, \psi_2, \dots, \psi_N). \end{aligned}$$

9.3 Hirota's method

9.4 Exercises

9.1.

Chapter 10

Lax pairs

The Lax pair is the most fundamental object in the theory of integrable systems. The first Lax pair was proposed for the KdV equation in 1968 by Peter Lax. Although Lax pairs were originally introduced for partial differential equation, they are now an essential object in the theory of integrable ordinary differential equations as well. The importance of a Lax pair is not only due to the fact that most of the other miracles of integrables systems theory may be derived from it, but mostly because the Lax pair is the starting point for using the inverse scattering method on a given integrable equation, as we will see in the next chapter.

10.1 Definition

Consider a partial differential equation in evolution form

$$u_t = F(u, u_x, u_{xx}, \dots).$$

A Lax pair for this equation is a pair of linear operators X and T which depend on u and its derivatives with respect to x , as well as on a parameter λ in an essential way¹:

$$X = X(u, \lambda), \quad T = T(u, \lambda),$$

such that the partial differential equation $u_t = F(u, u_x, \dots)$ is the **compatibility condition** of the two linear ordinary differential equations

$$\begin{cases} \psi_x &= X(u, \lambda)\psi \\ \psi_t &= T(u, \lambda)\psi. \end{cases}$$

Remarks:

¹Here “in an essential way” means that this dependence on λ may not be eliminated by any kind of transformation.

- In most cases, the parameter λ does not depend on x or t .
- The operators $X(u, \lambda)$ and $T(u, \lambda)$ are usually square matrices and simply act on their right-hand side by multiplication, as any system of differential equations may be written in first-order form, as in the above.
- The two ordinary differential equations for $\psi(x, t)$ do not have constant coefficients, due to the dependence of X and T on u and its derivatives.

Imposing the compatibility of the two differential equations for $\psi(x, t)$ is the same as imposing that their flows commute. As we've seen this is equivalent to imposing that mixed derivatives are equal:

$$\begin{aligned}
& \psi_{xt} = \psi_{tx} \\
\Rightarrow & \partial_t \psi_x = \partial_x \psi_t \\
\Rightarrow & \partial_t (X(u, \lambda) \psi) = \partial_x (T(u, \lambda) \psi) \\
\Rightarrow & X_t \psi + X \psi_t = T_x \psi + T \psi_x \\
\Rightarrow & X_t \psi + X T \psi = T_x \psi + T X \psi \\
\Rightarrow & X_t + X T = T_x + T X,
\end{aligned}$$

or, introducing the matrix commutator $[T, X]$,

$$X_t - T_x = [T, X].$$

In the above we have assumed that the solutions $\psi(x, t)$ form a complete set in a suitable space, since we concluded that if an operator acting on all ψ gives a zero results, then that operator is zero. Summarizing, we have the following

Definition: The pair of matrices $X(u, \lambda)$, $T(u, \lambda)$ is a Lax pair for the partial differential equation $u_t = F(u, u_x, \dots)$ if (i) X and T depend on the parameter λ in an essential way, (ii) the given partial differential equation is equivalent to the compatibility condition

$$X_t - T_x = [T, X].$$

10.1.1 A Lax pair for the KdV equation

As a first example, let us verify that

$$X = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ \lambda - u & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad T = \begin{pmatrix} -u_x & 2u + 4\lambda \\ -u_{xx} - 2u\lambda + 4\lambda^2 - 2u^2 & u_x \end{pmatrix},$$

is a Lax pair for the KdV equation $u_t = 6uu_x + u_{xxx}$. The different terms of the compatibility condition $X_t + XT = T_x + TX$ are:

$$X_t = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ -u_t & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

(where we used that λ is independent of t),

$$T_x = \begin{pmatrix} -u_{xx} & 2u_x \\ -u_{xxx} - 2u_x\lambda - 4uu_x & u_{xx} \end{pmatrix},$$

(where we used that λ is independent of x), and

$$\begin{aligned} XT &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ \lambda - u & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -u_x & 2u + 4\lambda \\ -u_{xx} - 2u\lambda + 4\lambda^2 - 2u^2 & u_x \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -u_{xx} - 2u\lambda + 4\lambda^2 - 2u^2 & u_x \\ -u_x(\lambda - u) & (2u + 4\lambda)(\lambda - u) \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -u_{xx} - 2u\lambda + 4\lambda^2 - 2u^2 & u_x \\ -u_x\lambda + uu_x & -2u\lambda + 4\lambda^2 - 2u^2 \end{pmatrix}, \end{aligned}$$

and lastly

$$\begin{aligned} TX &= \begin{pmatrix} -u_x & 2u + 4\lambda \\ -u_{xx} - 2u\lambda + 4\lambda^2 - 2u^2 & u_x \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ \lambda - u & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} (2u + 4\lambda)(\lambda - u) & -u_x \\ u_x(\lambda - u) & -u_{xx} - 2u\lambda + 4\lambda^2 - 2u^2 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -2u\lambda + 4\lambda^2 - 2u^2 & -u_x \\ u_x\lambda - uu_x & -u_{xx} - 2u\lambda + 4\lambda^2 - 2u^2 \end{pmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

The four components of the compatibility condition become:

$$\begin{aligned} (1, 1) : \quad & -u_{xx} - 2u\lambda + 4\lambda^2 - 2u^2 = -u_{xx} - 2u\lambda + 4\lambda^2 - 2u^2 \\ & \Rightarrow 0 = 0, \\ (1, 2) : \quad & u_x = 2u_x - u_x \\ & \Rightarrow 0 = 0, \\ (2, 1) : \quad & -u_t - u_x\lambda + uu_x = -u_{xxx} - 2u_x\lambda - 4uu_x + u_x\lambda - uu_x \\ & \Rightarrow u_t = 6uu_x + u_{xxx}, \\ (2, 2) : \quad & -2u\lambda + 4\lambda^2 - 2u^2 = u_{xx} - u_{xx} - 2u\lambda + 4\lambda^2 - 2u^2 \\ & \Rightarrow 0 = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Thus three of these conditions are identically satisfied. However, in order for the compatibility condition to hold, the condition for the $(2, 1)$ component requires that $u(x, t)$ satisfies the KdV equation. Thus the pair X, T is a Lax pair for the KdV equation, as was claimed.

The ordinary differential equations for ψ are referred to as the Lax equations. Note that for the KdV equation, the first one of the Lax equations may be rewritten as

$$\begin{cases} \psi_{1x} &= \psi_2 \\ \psi_{2x} &= (\lambda - u)\psi_1 \end{cases} \Rightarrow \psi_{1xx} = (\lambda - u)\psi_1 \Rightarrow \psi_{1xx} + u\psi_1 = \lambda\psi_1,$$

which is the time-independent linear Schrödinger equation, up to scaling of the coefficients. We will return to this when we discuss the inverse scattering transform.

10.1.2 A Lax pair for the NLS equation

10.2 Consequences of the existence of a Lax pair

In this section we illustrate how to deduce many of the miracles that exist for integrable equations in a systematic way from the existence of a Lax pair.

10.2.1 An infinite number of conserved quantities

Previously we proved the existence of an infinite number of conserved quantities for the KdV equation from the Miura transform connection with the modified KdV equation and the Gardner equation. None of the steps of that approach were systematic. Here we illustrate how the same sequence of conserved quantities may be deduced systematically from the Lax pair for the KdV equation.

Consider the Lax pair for the KdV equation as $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$. If we are considering the KdV equation with vanishing conditions as $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$, then, as $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$,

$$\psi_x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ \lambda & 0 \end{pmatrix} \psi,$$

and

$$\psi_t = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 4\lambda \\ 4\lambda^2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \psi.$$

Thus, eliminating the second component of ψ from these equations, we obtain

$$\psi_{1xx} = \lambda\psi_1, \quad \psi_{1tt} = 16\lambda^3\psi_1.$$

Thus, as $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$, ψ_1 is a linear combination of modes of the form

$$\psi_1 \sim e^{\sqrt{\lambda}x + 4\lambda\sqrt{\lambda}t}.$$

At this point, we are not concerned with which values of λ are allowed, and which are not (since $\psi(x, t)$ may be thought of as an eigenfunction, we wish it to be bounded, thus its behavior at ∞ should not be exponential growth, *etc.*), we merely consider it an accounting parameter, to be used in this faculty somewhat later. For this reason, the appearance of $\sqrt{\lambda}$ is of no concern. Based on this asymptotic behavior, consider the substitution

$$\psi_1 = e^{\sqrt{\lambda}x + 4\lambda\sqrt{\lambda}t + \varphi(x, t)}.$$

It follows from the above analysis that

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \varphi(x, t) = \text{constant},$$

independent of x or t . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \psi_{1x} &= (\sqrt{\lambda} + \varphi_x)\psi_1 \\ \psi_{1xx} &= (\sqrt{\lambda} + \varphi_x)^2\psi_1 + \varphi_{xx}\psi_1, \end{aligned}$$

and the differential equation for $\varphi(x, t)$ is

$$\begin{aligned} & \left(\lambda^2 + \varphi_x^2 + 2\sqrt{\lambda}\varphi_x \right) \phi + \varphi_{xx}\phi = (\lambda - u)\phi \\ \Rightarrow & \quad \varphi_{xx} + 2\sqrt{\lambda}\varphi_x + \varphi_x^2 + u = 0 \\ \Rightarrow & \quad \chi_x + 2\sqrt{\lambda}\chi + \chi^2 + u = 0, \end{aligned}$$

where $\chi(x, t) = \varphi_x(x, t)$. This is a Ricatti equation for $\chi(x, t)$. At the price of transforming the linear problem into a nonlinear problem, we obtained a first-order problem, as opposed to a second order problem. As for the Miura-transformation problem, for large absolute values of $\sqrt{\lambda}$, the Ricatti equation may be solved by assuming a series ansatz for $\chi(x, t)$:

$$\chi = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\lambda}} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\chi_n(x, t)}{(2\sqrt{\lambda})^n}.$$

Then:

$$\begin{aligned}
\chi_x &= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\lambda}} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\chi_{n,x}}{(2\sqrt{\lambda})^n} \\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\chi_{n,x}}{(2\sqrt{\lambda})^{n+1}} \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\chi_{n-1,x}}{(2\sqrt{\lambda})^n}, \\
2\sqrt{\lambda}\chi &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\chi_n}{(2\sqrt{\lambda})^n}, \\
\chi^2 &= \frac{1}{(2\sqrt{\lambda})^2} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\chi_n}{(2\sqrt{\lambda})^n} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{\chi_k}{(2\sqrt{\lambda})^k} \\
&= \frac{1}{(2\sqrt{\lambda})^2} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{\chi_n \chi_k}{(2\sqrt{\lambda})^{n+k}} \\
&= \frac{1}{(2\sqrt{\lambda})^2} \sum_{N=0}^{\infty} \sum_{k=0}^N \frac{\chi_{N-k} \chi_k}{(2\sqrt{\lambda})^N} \\
&= \sum_{N=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2\sqrt{\lambda})^{N+2}} \sum_{k=0}^N \chi_{N-k} \chi_k \\
&= \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2\sqrt{\lambda})^n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-2} \chi_{n-k-2} \chi_k.
\end{aligned}$$

Substituting these in the Ricatti equation and equating equal powers of $2\sqrt{\lambda}$ gives:

$$\begin{aligned}
n=0: \quad \chi_0 + u &= 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad \chi_0 = -u, \\
n=1: \quad \chi_{0,x} + \chi_1 &= 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad \chi_1 = -\chi_{0,x} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \chi_1 = u_x, \\
n \geq 2: \quad \chi_{n-1,x} + \chi_n + \sum_{k=0}^{n-2} \chi_{n-k-2} \chi_k &= 0 \\
\Rightarrow \quad \chi_n &= -\chi_{n-1,x} - \sum_{k=0}^{n-2} \chi_{n-k-2} \chi_k.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, all the coefficients $\chi_n(x, t)$ are found recursively this way. How do we obtain conserved quantities from them? Recall that

$$\chi(x, t) = \varphi_x(x, t) \quad \Rightarrow \quad \varphi(x, t) = \int_{-\infty}^x \chi(x, t) dx.$$

Integrating the ansatz for $\chi(x, t)$ term-by-term, we find

$$\varphi(x, t) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\lambda}} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\varphi_n(x, t)}{(2\sqrt{\lambda})^n},$$

where

$$\varphi_n(x, t) = \int_{-\infty}^x \chi_n(x, t), \quad \text{for } n = 0, 1, \dots$$

Lastly, recall that $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \varphi(x, t) = \text{constant}$, independent of x and t . Thus

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \varphi(x, t) = \text{constant} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\lambda}} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-\infty}^x \chi_n(x, t) dx}{(2\sqrt{\lambda})^n} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\lambda}} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \chi_n(x, t) dx}{(2\sqrt{\lambda})^n}.$$

Since this constant does not depend on t , neither do any of its expansion coefficients, thus all

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \chi_n dx, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots$$

are conserved quantities for the KdV equation. Just like when we used the Miura transformation, all coefficients with odd index result in trivial conserved quantities (their densities are x -derivatives), but the coefficients with even index give the same sequence of conserved quantities that we know from the previous chapter.

This is a general method: Given a Lax pair for an integrable partial differential equation, an infinite sequence of conserved quantities is constructed this way: (i) use the behavior as $x \rightarrow \infty$ where the Lax pair has constant coefficients; (ii) solve the resulting constant coefficient equations; (iii) use an exponential transformation to transform the problem into one for a new function which has constant behavior as $x \rightarrow \infty$. This new function is often the logarithmic derivative for one of the eigenfunction components; (iv) the resulting differential equation will be nonlinear, but it may be solved recursively. All coefficients give rise to conserved densities.

10.3 Exercises

10.1. Show that

$$X = \begin{pmatrix} -i\zeta & q \\ \pm q^* & i\zeta \end{pmatrix}, T = \begin{pmatrix} -i\zeta^2 \mp \frac{i}{2}|q|^2 & q\zeta + \frac{i}{2}q_x \\ \pm q^*\zeta \mp \frac{i}{2}q_x^* & i\zeta^2 \pm \frac{i}{2}|q|^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

are two Lax Pairs for the Nonlinear Schrödinger equations

$$iq_t = -\frac{1}{2}q_{xx} \pm |q|^2 q.$$

Here the top (bottom) signs of one matrix correspond to the top (bottom) signs of the other.

10.2. Let $\psi_n = \psi_n(t)$, $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. Consider the difference equation

$$\psi_{n+1} = X_n \psi_n,$$

and the differential equation

$$\frac{\partial \psi_n}{\partial t} = T_n \psi_n.$$

What is the compatibility condition of these two equations? Using this result, show that

$$X_n = \begin{pmatrix} z & q_n \\ q_n^* & 1/z \end{pmatrix}, T_n = \begin{pmatrix} iq_n q_{n-1}^* - \frac{i}{2}(1/z - z)^2 & \frac{i}{z} q_{n-1} - iz q_n \\ -iz q_{n-1}^* + \frac{i}{z} q_n^* & -iq_n^* q_{n-1} + \frac{i}{2}(1/z - z)^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

is a Lax Pair for the semi-discrete equation

$$i \frac{\partial q_n}{\partial t} = q_{n+1} - 2q_n + q_{n-1} - |q_n|^2(q_{n+1} + q_{n-1})$$

Note that this is a discretization of the NLS equation. It is known as the Ablowitz-Ladik lattice. It is an integrable discretization of NLS. For numerical purposes, it is far superior in many ways to the “standard” discretization of NLS:

$$i \frac{\partial q_n}{\partial t} = q_{n+1} - 2q_n + q_{n-1} - 2|q_n|^2 q_n.$$

Chapter 11

The Painlevé property

In this chapter we start by looking at a seemingly unrelated property of functions of a complex variable. Consider $f(z)$, $z \in \mathbb{C}$. Such a function is called analytic in $D \subset \mathbb{C}$, if for any $z_0 \in D$, $f(z)$ has a Taylor expansion around z_0 . A possibly less familiar definition is the following:

Definition (Meromorphic function). *A function $f(z)$ is called meromorphic in $D \subset \mathbb{C}$ if for every $z_0 \in D$, $f(z)$ has a finite-order Laurent expansion around z_0 , i.e., for any $z_0 \in D$, there is a finite $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that*

$$f(z) = \alpha_0(z - z_0)^n + \alpha_1(z - z_0)^{n+1} + \dots$$

Those points $z_0 \in D$ for which $n < 0$ are called poles of the function $f(z)$ of order $|n|$. The other points are referred to as regular points of $f(z)$.

Complex functions may have more severe singularities than poles, such as branch points or essential singularities. The “nice” thing about poles is that the behavior of the function near the pole remains single-valued, despite the presence of a singularity.

In what follows, we discuss the behavior of solutions of ordinary differential equations in the complex plane: we regard the independent variable of the differential equation as a complex variable, thus the solution of the differential equation becomes a function of a complex variable. We will be especially interested in the possible singularities in the complex plane of the solutions of the differential equations at hand.

11.1 Solutions of linear ordinary differential equations

Consider a general homogeneous linear ordinary differential equation of order N :

$$\frac{d^N y}{dx^N} + p_{N-1}(x) \frac{d^{N-1} y}{dx^{N-1}} + \dots + p_1(x) \frac{dy}{dx} + p_0(x)y = 0,$$

where we now think of x as a complex variable. If x_0 is a regular point of the differential equation, *i.e.*, the coefficients $p_k(x)$, $k = 0, 1, \dots, N-1$ are analytic at x_0 , then the equation has a unique solution with initial conditions specified at x_0 . This solution is analytic at x_0 , which is an immediate consequence of Frobenius' method for finding series solutions of linear differential equations.

It follows from these conclusions that the singularities of a solution of a linear ordinary differential equation can only occur at the singularities, if any, of the coefficient functions. Such singularities are called *fixed*, since their location is determined by the differential equations and is independent of the initial conditions.

Example 11.1 (Hypergeometric equation). *Consider the hypergeometric equation*

$$x(1-x)y'' + (c - (a+b+c+1)x)y' - aby = 0.$$

Here a , b and c are constant parameters. The possible singularities of the hypergeometric function, which is the solution of the hypergeometric equation, occur at $x = 0$ and $x = 1$, which are the singularities of the coefficients

$$p_1(x) = \frac{c - (a+b+c+1)x}{x(1-x)}, \quad p_0(x) = -\frac{ab}{x(1-x)}.$$

Thus for a linear ordinary differential equation, it is easy to find out where its solutions may have singularities. The equation gives all the warnings necessary.

11.2 Solutions of nonlinear ordinary differential equations

For nonlinear differential equations, the scenario is entirely different. We still should be aware of the singularities of whatever functions are present in the differential equation, but other singularities may arise as well.

Example 11.2. *Consider the nonlinear first-order differential equation*

$$y' + y^2 = 0,$$

with initial conditions specified by $y(x_0) = y_0$. Note that we could put $x_0 = 0$, since the equation is autonomous, so x may always be shifted by a constant amount. Then

$$y = \frac{y_0}{y_0(x - x_0) + 1},$$

which is singular at

$$x = x_0 - \frac{1}{y_0},$$

which is a pole of order one, whose location depends on the initial condition.

This example illustrates that even for seemingly simple nonlinear ordinary differential equations, the solution may have singularities whose existence cannot be conjured from direct inspection of the differential equation. Singularities whose location depends on the initial conditions are called *moveable*. Solutions of nonlinear differential equations can have all kinds of singularities:

Example 11.3. *Consider*

$$y' + y^3 = 0.$$

Separation of variables gives

$$y = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2(x - x_0)}},$$

where x_0 is a constant of integration. In this case, the singularity is a moveable branch point.

Example 11.4. *Consider the nonlinear second-order differential equation*

$$yy'' - y' + 1 = 0.$$

Then it is easy to check that

$$y = (x - x_0) \ln(x - x_0) + \alpha(x - x_0)$$

is a solution. Here α and x_0 are integration constants. There is a singularity at $x = x_0$, which is an infinite-order moveable branch point.

Example 11.5. *Consider the nonlinear second-order differential equation with parameter α :*

$$\alpha yy'' + (1 - \alpha)y'^2 = 0.$$

It is easy to check that

$$y = a(x - x_0)^\alpha$$

is a solution. Here a and x_0 are integration constants. There is a singularity at $x = x_0$, which is a moveable branch point whose precise nature depends on α .

Example 11.6. Consider the nonlinear second-order differential equation

$$(yy'' - y'^2)^2 + 4xy'^3 = 0.$$

Again, it is easy to check that

$$y = \alpha e^{1/(x-x_0)}$$

is a solution. Here α and x_0 are integration constants. There is a singularity at $x = x_0$, which is an essential singularity.

The above examples should make it clear that nonlinear ordinary differential equations that appear simple may have a very complicated singularity structure in the complex plane. In the following sections, we will examine the singularities of solutions of ordinary differential equations in more detail. We will proceed in more or less historical order, starting with first-order equations, following with a discussion of the work of Kovaleskaya, and finishing with the work of Painlevé and his collaborators on second-order nonlinear differential equations.

11.2.1 First-order equations

Painlevé showed in 1888 that the first-order differential equation

$$G(y'(x), y(x), x) = 0,$$

where G is polynomial in its entries, has solutions with moveable singularities which are either poles or algebraic (finite-order) branch points.

Fuchs proceeded to show that the only equation of the form

$$y' = \frac{P(y, x)}{Q(y, x)},$$

where P and Q are polynomial in their entries, whose solutions have moveable singularities that are at worst poles (thus excluding branch points) is the Riccati equation

$$y' = p_0(x) + p_1(x)y + p_2(x)y^2,$$

where $p_0(x)$, $p_1(x)$ and $p_2(x)$ are polynomials in x . We are familiar with the Riccati equation, so the study of first-order nonlinear differential equations from the point of view of the singularities of their solutions does not give any surprising results.

11.2.2 The work of Kovaleskaya

In 1889, Sofia Kovaleskaya was awarded the Bordin prize for her work on the motion of a top (formally defined as a rigid body with a fixed point under the influence of gravity). The prize money was tripled to acknowledge the exceptional quality of the work.

The equations describing the motion of the top are a system of sixth order. For this system to be integrable, six conserved quantities need to exist. Some are easy to find, such as t_0 (arbitrary time shift), E (energy), L_z (angular momentum around the z -axis, *i.e.*, the axis of rotation), *etc.* Two cases were known where a total of six conserved quantities could be found:

- **The Euler top:** In this case, there is additional symmetry in the problem, by imposing that the center of mass of the top is its fixed point. This results in gravity not having any net effect.
- **The Lagrange top:** In this case, the fixed point of the top and its center of gravity lie on a line which is a symmetry axis for the top.

The solutions of both cases were obtained in their final, explicit form by Jacobi and Lagrange, respectively. Both involve elliptic functions, which are meromorphic. Furthermore, the poles of the solutions were all moveable. Looking at the solutions of Jacobi and Lagrange in this light was already a major leap: the independent variable for these differential equations and their solutions is t (time), which is real, of course, in the physical problem.

Kovaleskaya, motivated by the work of Fuchs, decided to look for all values of the parameters for which the solution as a function of complex time has as its only singularities moveable poles. To this end, she considered an ansatz for the solutions of the form

$$y = \frac{1}{(t - t_0)^n} \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} y_j (t - t_0)^j,$$

for all unknown functions. Note that the value of n may be different for different unknown functions. Kovaleskaya was able to find all cases for which the solution in this series form depends on five undetermined constants. With the addition of t_0 , these five undetermined constants are a full set of constants of the motion for the spinning top, implying that in these cases the motion of the top is completely integrable. These cases included the Euler and Lagrange top, but there was one new case, now known as the Kovaleskaya top. For the Kovaleskaya top two of the principal moments of inertia of the rigid body are equal, and the third one is half of what the others are. There is no clear physical interpretation as to what makes this top stand out, in the sense that it is more symmetrical than other tops. The extra symmetry leading to the extra required conserved quantity is hidden.

Kovaleskaya was able to perform the explicit integration of the equations of the motion in this third case. Elliptic functions were not sufficient anymore, and hyperelliptic functions came into play. The only type of singularities of hyperelliptic functions are poles, but typically hyperelliptic functions are not globally meromorphic as there may be accumulation points of poles, where the functions may lose their single-valued character. Nevertheless, the specific combinations Kovaleskaya required to solve the equations of motion were single-valued. In later years (after 1974), hyperelliptic functions have played an increasingly important role in the theory of integrable functions.

11.2.3 Second-order equations

After their work on first-order equations, Painlevé and coworkers set out to classify second-order differential equations, written in normal form as

$$y'' = F(x, y, y'),$$

where F is a rational function of x , y and y' . In 1887, Picard first put forth the question of the classification of all such equations by the singularities of their solution. Specifically, Picard asked for the characterization of all such equations whose solutions have only moveable poles, and no other types of singularities, apart from those already present in the differential equation. A differential equation whose solutions have this property now is said to be of Painlevé type, and the property itself is referred to as the Painlevé property. Picard's problem was solved in a series of papers by Painlevé, Gambier and others from 1887 to 1909.

In these papers, Painlevé and his collaborators found that (up to transformations of a certain class), there are 50 equations with the Painlevé property. The solutions of 44 of these equations were already known in terms of elementary functions (sin, cos, *etc.*) or known transcendental special functions (Bessel, elliptic, *etc.*). The solutions of the other six equations define new functions, now referred to as the *Painlevé transcendents*. These six equations are:

$$\begin{aligned} P_I : \quad & y'' = 6y^2 + x, \\ P_{II} : \quad & y'' = 2y^3 + xy + \alpha, \\ P_{III} : \quad & y'' = \frac{1}{y}y'^2 - \frac{1}{x}y' + \frac{1}{x}(\alpha y^2 + \beta) + \gamma y^3 + \frac{\delta}{y}, \\ P_{IV} : \quad & y'' = \frac{1}{2y^2}y'^2 + \frac{3}{2}y^3 + 4xy^2 + 2(x^2 - \alpha)y + \frac{\beta}{y}, \\ P_V : \quad & y'' = \left(\frac{1}{2y} + \frac{1}{y-1}\right)y'^2 - \frac{1}{x}y' + \frac{(y-1)^2}{x^2}\left(\alpha + \frac{\beta}{y}\right) + \frac{\gamma}{x}y + \delta\frac{y(y+1)}{y-1}, \\ P_{VI} : \quad & y'' = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{y} + \frac{1}{y-1} + \frac{1}{y-x}\right)y'^2 - \left(\frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{x-1} + \frac{1}{y-x}\right)y' + \\ & \quad \frac{y(y-1)(y-x)}{x^2(x-1)^2}\left(\alpha + \beta\frac{x}{y^2} + \gamma\frac{x-1}{(y-1)^2} + \delta\frac{x(x-1)}{(y-x)^2}\right), \end{aligned}$$

where α , β , γ and δ are constant parameters. Although the P_I and P_{II} definitely don't look bad, the others have a distinct aura of invincibility about them!

After Painlevé's work, the six Painlevé transcendents were mostly forgotten, until they came to the forefront again through their connection with soliton equations, to be described in Section 11.4. Since then, the Painlevé equations have arisen in many subject areas, and their solutions have found many uses. They are now in the pantheon of the classical special functions.

There have been efforts to extend the methods of Painlevé and Gambier to third-order differential equations by Bureau, Cosgrove, Hitchin and others. Needless to say, the number of equations with the Painlevé property for third-order equations increases drastically. Apparently the classification remains unfinished as of today.

11.3 How does the Painlevé method work

To illustrate how the Painlevé method works, consider the first Painlevé equation P_I :

$$y'' = 6y^2 + x.$$

We are looking for solutions of the form

$$\begin{aligned} y &= \frac{1}{(x - x_0)^p} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \alpha_k (x - x_0)^k \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \alpha_k (x - x_0)^{k-p}, \end{aligned}$$

where p is an integer, to be determined. We expect it to be positive, so that y has a pole of order $p > 0$ at $x = x_0$. Further, α_k , for $k = 0, 1, \dots$ are complex constants.

11.3.1 Singularity analysis

First, we determine the possible orders p of the pole. To this end, we consider the most singular terms of the differential equations. Close to x_0 , we have

$$\begin{aligned} y &\sim \alpha_0 (x - x_0)^{-p}, \\ y' &\sim -p\alpha_0 (x - x_0)^{-p-1}, \\ y'' &\sim p(p+1)\alpha_0 (x - x_0)^{-p-2}. \end{aligned}$$

Substitution in the differential equation gives

$$\begin{aligned} p(p+1)\alpha_0 (x - x_0)^{-p-2} &= 6\alpha_0^2 (x - x_0)^{-2p} + \dots \\ p(p+1)(x - x_0)^{-p-2} &= 6\alpha_0 (x - x_0)^{-2p} + \dots \end{aligned}$$

where the x -term has been ignored, as it is not singular. There are several possibilities:

- **$-p - 2$ is dominant:** In order to have a solution, the coefficient of terms with this power has to vanish, leading to

$$p(p + 1) = 0,$$

and thus $p = 0$ or $p = -1$. Our assumption also requires $-p - 2 < -2p$, which is satisfied for either $p = 0$ or $p = -1$. But both of these lead to solutions that are not singular at x_0 , so they are of no interest to us now.

- **$-2p$ is dominant:** In order to have a solution, the coefficient of terms with this power has to vanish, leading to

$$6 = 0,$$

which is not possible.

- **$-2p$ and $-p - 2$ are equal and are both dominant:** Then

$$-2p = -p - 2 \Rightarrow p = 2,$$

which is a positive integer indeed. The vanishing of its coefficient leads to

$$p(p + 1) = 6\alpha_0 \Rightarrow \alpha_0 = 1.$$

Only the third of these three possibilities leads to a solution which is meromorphic at $x = x_0$, with a pole of order 2. In general, it is possible that several of these possibilities lead to solutions. If this happens, usually one of the solution branches will depend on a full set of undetermined constants, giving rise to the general solution. The other branches may give rise to special solutions, depending on less than a full set of arbitrary constants. The above calculation is another example of the principle of maximal balance, stating that the maximal number of terms have to be taken into account to obtain the most interesting solution.

11.3.2 Construction of the solution

We have determined a meromorphic solution should be of the form

$$\begin{aligned} y &= \frac{1}{(x - x_0)^2} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \alpha_k (x - x_0)^k \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \alpha_k (x - x_0)^{k-2}, \end{aligned}$$

with $\alpha_0 = 1$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} y' &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \alpha_k (k-2)(x-x_0)^{k-3}, \\ y'' &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \alpha_k (k-2)(k-3)(x-x_0)^{k-4}. \end{aligned}$$

Substitution of these results in the differential equation gives (with $x - x_0 = X$)

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \alpha_k (k-2)(k-3)X^{k-4} &= 6 \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \alpha_k X^{k-2} \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \alpha_m X^{m-2} + X + x_0 \\ \sum_{n=-4}^{\infty} \alpha_{n+4} (n+2)(n+1)X^n &= 6 \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \alpha_k \alpha_m X^{k+m-4} + X + x_0 \\ \sum_{n=-4}^{\infty} \alpha_{n+4} (n+2)(n+1)X^n &= 6 \sum_{n=-4}^{\infty} X^n \sum_{m=0}^{n+4} \alpha_{n+4-m} \alpha_m + X + x_0. \end{aligned}$$

Equating coefficients of equal powers results in a recursion relationship for the coefficients α_k , $k = 0, 1, \dots$:

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_{n+4} (n+2)(n+1) &= 6 \sum_{m=0}^{n+4} \alpha_{n+4-m} \alpha_m + \delta_{n1} + x_0 \delta_{n0} \\ &= 6 \left(2\alpha_0 \alpha_{n+4} + \sum_{m=1}^{n+3} \alpha_{n+4-m} \alpha_m \right) + \delta_{n1} + x_0 \delta_{n0} \\ \Rightarrow ((n+2)(n+1) - 12\alpha_0) \alpha_{n+4} &= 6 \sum_{m=1}^{n+3} \alpha_{n+4-m} \alpha_m + \delta_{n1} + x_0 \delta_{n0} \end{aligned}$$

where we have assumed that $n > -4$, so that these results are valid for $n = -3, -2, \dots$, so that finally

$$\alpha_{n+4} = \frac{6 \sum_{m=1}^{n+3} \alpha_{n+4-m} \alpha_m + \delta_{n1} + x_0 \delta_{n0}}{(n+1)(n+2) - 12\alpha_0},$$

valid for $n = -3, -2, \dots$, unless the denominator vanishes.

Let's see how this recursion relationship works:

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{from before} & : \alpha_0 = 1, \\
n = -3 & : \alpha_1 = 0, \\
n = -2 & : \alpha_2 = 0, \\
n = -1 & : \alpha_3 = 0, \\
n = 0 & : \alpha_4 = -\frac{x_0}{10}, \\
n = 1 & : \alpha_5 = -\frac{1}{6},
\end{aligned}$$

At $n = 2$, the denominator vanishes. Whenever the denominator vanishes, we were not allowed to divide by it, to obtain an expression for the corresponding α_k . Two conclusions are drawn from this: (i) there is no equation that determines the coefficients α_k for which the denominator of the recursion relationship vanishes, and (ii) if this happens, the numerator better vanish as well, otherwise the equation “ $0 = \text{something that is not } 0$ ” is obtained. For our example, the recursion relationship fails when

$$(n+1)(n+2) - 12 = 0 \Rightarrow n = -5 \text{ or } n = 2.$$

The first of these possibilities should be rejected as $n = -5$ is not an allowed value for n . The second value is an allowed value for n . Thus $\alpha_{n+4} = \alpha_6$ is undetermined provided $\sum_{m=1}^5 \alpha_m \alpha_{6-m} = 0$, but

$$\sum_{m=1}^5 \alpha_m \alpha_{6-m} = 2\alpha_1 \alpha_5 + 2\alpha_2 \alpha_4 + \alpha_3^2 = 0,$$

so that indeed α_6 is undetermined. All other α_k , $k = 7, 8, \dots$ are determined from the recursion relationship, so that the Laurent series solution for $y(x)$ does depend on two arbitrary constants, x_0 (the location of the pole), and α_6 . The coefficients (in general there could be more than one) that are not determined by the recursion relationship are called **resonances**.

The solution we have obtained is

$$y = \frac{1}{(x-x_0)^2} \left(1 - \frac{x_0}{10}(x-x_0)^4 - \frac{1}{6}(x-x_0)^5 + \alpha_6(x-x_0)^6 + \frac{x_0^2}{300}(x-x_0)^7 + \dots \right).$$

The last remaining task is to determine the radius of convergence of this expression. This is far more difficult than for linear differential equations, where the recursion relationship is linear. In that case the radius of convergence follows from a simple application of the ratio test. For nonlinear differential equations, with an accompanying nonlinear recursion relation the situation is more complicated and it will not be considered here.

Let us summarize the main steps of the Painlevé algorithm:

1. **Singularity analysis:** determine the dominant powers of a meromorphic expansion. This power achieves a balance between at least two terms of the differential equation. It is possible that there are several possibilities. Each of these possibilities gives rise to a different solution branch.
2. **Leading-order coefficient:** from the singularity analysis, determine the coefficient of the first term of the meromorphic expansion. As before, there may be several possibilities.
3. **Recursion relationship:** using the form of meromorphic function, find a recursion relationship for the remaining coefficients from the differential equation.
4. **Resonances:** find the resonances, *i.e.*, those coefficients for which the recursion relationship fails.
5. **Radius of convergence:** determine the radius of convergence of all of the resulting meromorphic series solutions.

This procedure typically results in one solution branch which depends on a full set of arbitrary constants. This solution branch is referred to as the principal branch. The other branches are called special branches.

11.4 The relationship of the Painlevé property to the integrability of partial differential equations

In 1978, Ablowitz, Ramani and Segur formulated the following conjecture:

Conjecture 1. *Every ordinary differential equation which arises as a symmetry reduction of a completely integrable partial differential equation is of Painlevé type (i.e., has the Painlevé property), perhaps after a transformation of variables.*

This conjecture gives a necessary condition for integrability: when faced with a partial differential equation, find all its symmetry reductions, and check to see that these reductions possess the Painlevé property. Finding symmetry reductions is an algorithmic problem, the solution of which has been implemented in a variety of software packages. It should be noted that the last statement of the conjecture may make it hard to use: if the ordinary differential equation found is not of Painlevé type, it is not always obvious whether or not a transformation exists that may transform the ordinary equation to one that does have the Painlevé property.

Example 11.7. *The KdV equation $u_t + 6uu_x + u_{xxx} = 0$ has the symmetry reduction*

$$u = U(x - Vt),$$

leading to the ordinary differential equation

$$-VU' + 6UU' + U''' = 0,$$

which leads to the class of stationary solutions of the KdV equation. It is solvable in terms of elliptic functions, which are meromorphic. The familiar soliton solution, expressed in terms of hyperbolic functions, may be obtained as a limit of these.

Example 11.8. The Modified KdV equation $u_t - 6u^2u_x + u_{xxx} = 0$ has the similarity reduction

$$u = (3t)^{-1/3}w(z), \quad z = x(3t)^{-1/3}.$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} u_t &= -\frac{1}{3}(3t)^{-4/3}3w(z) + (3t)^{-1/3}w'(z) \left(\frac{-1}{3}\right) (3t)^{-4/3}3 \\ &= -(3t)^{-4/3}w - zw'(z)(3t)^{-4/3} \\ u_x &= (3t)^{-1/3}w'(z)(3t)^{-1/3} \\ &= (3t)^{-2/3}w'(z) \\ u_{xx} &= (3t)^{-3/3}w''(z) \\ u_{xxx} &= (3t)^{-4/3}w'''(z), \end{aligned}$$

leading to the ordinary differential equation

$$\begin{aligned} &-(3t)^{-4/3}w - zw'(z)(3t)^{-4/3} - 6(3t)^{-2/3}w^2(z)(3t)^{-2/3}w'(z) + (3t)^{-4/3}w'''(z) = 0 \\ \Rightarrow &-w - zw'(z) - 6w^2(z)w'(z) + w'''(z) = 0 \\ \Rightarrow &-(zw)' - 6w^2w' + w''' = 0 \\ \Rightarrow &-zw - 2w^3 + w'' = \alpha \\ \Rightarrow &w'' = 2w^3 + zw + \alpha, \end{aligned}$$

which is the P_{II} equation.

Can something be said about the partial differential equation directly? In other words, is it possible to come up with some type of integrability test that bypasses the symmetry reductions? If so, we are now dealing with functions of more than one variable, x and t . One of these variables is complex, or maybe they both are. Such a function typically will not have isolated singularities. In the case of complex x but real t , these singularities will fill out a smooth curve, say

$$\varphi(x, t) = 0.$$

For a fixed t , we expect this equation to have isolated roots. As t varies these roots will vary smoothly, except perhaps at some times where the roots may collide. Thus, for a given partial differential equation we could look for solutions of the form

$$u(x, t) = \frac{1}{\varphi(x, t)^p} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_n(t) \varphi(x, t)^n,$$

where the α_n , $n = 0, 1, \dots$ are analytic functions and $\alpha_0 \neq 0$. Using the implicit function theorem, the determining equation for the roots may be solved for one of them, giving

$$\varphi(x, t) = 0 \Rightarrow x = x_0(t),$$

allowing us to look for expansions of the form

$$\begin{aligned} u(x, t) &= \frac{1}{(x - x_0)^p} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_n(t) (x - x_0)^n \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_n(t) (x - x_0)^{n-p}, \end{aligned}$$

where x_0 is the location of the pole, which will typically vary in t .

Example 11.9. *As an example, we consider the equation*

$$u_t + 6uu_x + u_{xxx} + \alpha(t)u = 0.$$

This equation arises in various water-wave scenarios where the KdV equation shows up, but with an additional slowly varying bottom topography. This example equation contains at least one integrable equation as a special case, for $\alpha(t) \equiv 0$. Are there any other choices for $\alpha(t)$ for which the equation is integrable?

We look for solutions of the form

$$\begin{aligned} u(x, t) &= \frac{1}{(x - x_0)^p} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_n(t) (x - x_0)^n \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_n(t) (x - x_0)^{n-p}. \end{aligned}$$

First, we consider the most singular terms:

$$u \sim \alpha_0(x - x_0)^{-p}.$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}
u_x &\sim -p\alpha_0(x-x_0)^{-p-1}, \\
u_{xx} &\sim p(p+1)\alpha_0(x-x_0)^{-p-2}, \\
u_{xxx} &\sim -p(p+1)(p+2)\alpha_0(x-x_0)^{-p-3}, \\
u_t &\sim \alpha'_0(x-x_0)^{-p} + p\alpha_0x'_0(x-x_0)^{-p-1}.
\end{aligned}$$

Here we have used ' to denote time differentiation. Substitution in the partial differential equation gives

$$\begin{aligned}
&\alpha'_0(x-x_0)^{-p} + p\alpha_0x'_0(x-x_0)^{-p-1} - 6p\alpha_0^2(x-x_0)^{-2p-1} + \\
&-p(p+1)(p+2)\alpha_0(x-x_0)^{-p-3} + \alpha(t)\alpha_0(x-x_0)^{-p} = 0.
\end{aligned}$$

The third and fourth terms are the only candidates to be the most singular. As before, no meromorphic solutions are found by considering one of these to be singular (check!), but balancing both gives

$$-2p-1 = -p-3 \Rightarrow p = 2.$$

Equating the coefficients of the most singular terms gives

$$-6p\alpha_0^2 - p(p+1)(p+2)\alpha = 0 \Rightarrow \alpha_0 = -2.$$

Thus we are looking for solutions of the form

$$\begin{aligned}
u(x, t) &= \frac{1}{(x-x_0)^2} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_n(t)(x-x_0)^n \\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_n(t)(x-x_0)^{n-2}.
\end{aligned}$$

Next this ansatz is substituted in the partial differential equation, in order to find a recursion relationship for the coefficients $\alpha_n(t)$, $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
u_t &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha'_n (x - x_0)^{n-2} - x'_0 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_n (n-2) (x - x_0)^{n-3}, \\
u_x &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_n (t) (n-2) (x - x_0)^{n-3}, \\
u_{xx} &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_n (t) (n-2) (n-3) (x - x_0)^{n-4}, \\
u_{xxx} &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_n (t) (n-2) (n-3) (n-4) (x - x_0)^{n-5}.
\end{aligned}$$

We obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
& \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha'_n (x - x_0)^{n-2} - x'_0 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_n (n-2) (x - x_0)^{n-3} + \\
& \quad 6 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_n (x - x_0)^{n-2} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \alpha_k (k-2) (x - x_0)^{k-3} + \\
& \quad \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_n (n-2) (n-3) (n-4) (x - x_0)^{n-5} + \alpha(t) \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_n (x - x_0)^{n-2} = 0 \\
\Rightarrow & \quad \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha'_n (x - x_0)^{n-2} - x'_0 \sum_{n=-1}^{\infty} \alpha_{n+1} (n-1) (x - x_0)^{n-2} + \\
& \quad 6 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (k-2) \alpha_n \alpha_k (x - x_0)^{k+n-5} + \\
& \quad \sum_{n=-3}^{\infty} \alpha_{n+3} (n+1) n (n-1) (x - x_0)^{n-2} + \alpha(t) \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_n (x - x_0)^{n-2} = 0 \\
\Rightarrow & \quad \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha'_n (x - x_0)^{n-2} + 2x'_0 \alpha_0 (x - x_0)^{-3} - x'_0 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_{n+1} (n-1) (x - x_0)^{n-2} + \\
& \quad 6 \sum_{N=-3}^{\infty} (x - x_0)^{N-2} \sum_{k=0}^{N+3} (k-2) \alpha_{N+3-k} \alpha_k - 24 \alpha_0 (x - x_0)^{-5} - 6 \alpha_1 (x - x_0)^{-4} + \\
& \quad \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_{n+3} (n+1) n (n-1) (x - x_0)^{n-2} + \alpha(t) \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_n (x - x_0)^{n-2} = 0 \\
\Rightarrow & \quad \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha'_n (x - x_0)^{n-2} - 4x'_0 (x - x_0)^{-3} - x'_0 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_{n+1} (n-1) (x - x_0)^{n-2} +
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& -48(x-x_0)^{-5} + 36\alpha_1(x-x_0)^{-4} + 6(4\alpha_2 - \alpha_1^2)(x-x_0)^{-3} + \\
& 6 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (x-x_0)^{n-2} \sum_{k=0}^{n+3} (k-2)\alpha_{n+3-k}\alpha_k + 48(x-x_0)^{-5} - 6\alpha_1(x-x_0)^{-4} + \\
& \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_{n+3}(n+1)n(n-1)(x-x_0)^{n-2} + \alpha(t) \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \alpha_n(x-x_0)^{n-2} = 0.
\end{aligned}$$

The most singular term cancels, as it should. At the next order (terms of order -4):

$$36\alpha_1 - 6\alpha_1 = 0 \Rightarrow \alpha_1 \equiv 0.$$

The terms of order -3 result in the condition

$$-4x'_0 + 6(4\alpha_2 - \alpha_1^2) = 0 \Rightarrow \alpha_2 = \frac{1}{6}x'_0.$$

The remaining terms can all be grouped in a general recursion relationship: for $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$

$$\begin{aligned}
& \alpha'_n - x'_0\alpha_{n+1}(n-1) + 6 \sum_{k=0}^{n+3} (k-2)\alpha_k\alpha_{n+3-k} + \alpha_{n+3}(n+1)n(n-1) + \alpha(t)\alpha_n = 0 \\
& \Rightarrow \alpha'_n - x'_0\alpha_{n+1}(n-1) - 12\alpha_0\alpha_{n+3} + 6 \sum_{k=1}^{n+2} (k-2)\alpha_k\alpha_{n+3-k} + \\
& \quad 6(n+1)\alpha_{n+3}\alpha_0 + \alpha_{n+3}n(n^2-1) + \alpha(t)\alpha_n = 0 \\
& \Rightarrow \alpha_{n+3}(24 - 12(n+1) + n(n^2-1)) = \\
& \quad x'_0\alpha_{n+1}(n-1) - \alpha'_n - 6 \sum_{k=1}^{n+2} (k-2)\alpha_k\alpha_{n+3-k} - \alpha(t)\alpha_n \\
& \Rightarrow \alpha_{n+3}(n-1)(n-3)(n+4) = \\
& \quad x'_0\alpha_{n+1}(n-1) - \alpha'_n - 6 \sum_{k=1}^{n+2} (k-2)\alpha_k\alpha_{n+3-k} - \alpha(t)\alpha_n.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, if $n = 0, 2, 4, 5, 6, \dots$

$$\alpha_{n+3} = \frac{x'_0\alpha_{n+1}(n-1) - \alpha'_n - 6 \sum_{k=1}^{n+2} (k-2)\alpha_k\alpha_{n+3-k} - \alpha(t)\alpha_n}{(n-1)(n-3)(n+4)}.$$

If $n = 1$ or $n = 3$, the denominator of this expression is zero. Thus α_4 and α_6 are potential resonances. Note that the third root of the denominator is not an allowed value of n . For $n = 0$, we find

$$\alpha_3 = \frac{2\alpha(t)}{12} = \frac{1}{6}\alpha(t).$$

Next up is $n = 1$. We know that this corresponds to a potential resonance. The numerator of the recursion relationship is

$$-6 \sum_{k=1}^2 (k-2) \alpha_k \alpha_{4-k} = -6 \alpha_1 \alpha_3,$$

which is zero. Thus α_4 is indeed a resonance. For $n = 2$, we obtain

$$\alpha_5 = \frac{1}{36} (x_0'' + x_0' \alpha).$$

The next term again gives rise to a potential resonance. The numerator of the recursion relationship is

$$2x_0' \alpha_4 - \alpha_3' - 6 \sum_{k=1}^5 (k-2) \alpha_k \alpha_{6-k} - \alpha(t) \alpha_3 = -\frac{1}{3} (\alpha^2 + \alpha'/2).$$

If this numerator does not vanish, α_6 is infinite, and the partial differential equation has no solutions that are meromorphic in x . Thus, the vanishing of the above numerator is a solvability condition for the partial differential equation. If it is satisfied then α_6 is undetermined, and it is a second resonance for the equation, resulting in a general solution branch, as there are three arbitrary functions of t in the solution: $x_0(t)$, $\alpha_4(t)$ and $\alpha_6(t)$. The solvability condition gives

$$\alpha' = -2\alpha^2,$$

which is an ordinary differential equation of Painlevé type. It has two solution branches

- $\alpha = 0$: in this case, the original equation is the KdV equation. We know the KdV equation is integrable, which is confirmed here by the Painlevé test.
- $\alpha \neq 0$: then

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{2(t-t_0)}.$$

Often one chooses $t_0 = 0$ and the partial differential equation becomes

$$u_t + 6uu_x + u_{xxx} + \frac{1}{2t}u = 0,$$

which is known as the Cylindrical KdV equation. It is known to be integrable. This is nicely confirmed by the Painlevé test.

This example illustrates that the partial differential equation Painlevé test offers a straightforward algorithmic way to test the integrability of a given partial differential equation, without having to consider all of its symmetry reductions.

11.5 Exercises

1. Using the Painlevé test, discuss the integrability of

$$u_t = uu_x^p + u_{xxx},$$

as a function of p .

- 2.

Chapter 12

The prolongation method

Throughout this course we have derived many benefits from a nonlinear partial differential equation being written as the compatibility condition of two linear differential equations. Thus, given a Lax pair for a nonlinear partial differential equation, one may very reasonably call it integrable. Is there a way to see if a given partial differential equation has a Lax pair or not? Answering this question is the goal of this chapter.

12.1 Outline

Consider a nonlinear partial differential equation in evolution form

$$u_t = F(u, u_x, u_{xx}, \dots),$$

where $F(u, u_x, \dots)$ depends on u and a finite number of its derivatives with respect to x . In order for this equation to have a Lax pair, we need there to exist two matrices X and T such that the nonlinear partial differential equation is the compatibility condition of the two linear equations

$$\begin{cases} \psi_x = X\psi, \\ \psi_t = T\psi. \end{cases}$$

Here X and T depend on u and a finite number of its x -derivatives. There is no need to have X and T depend on t -derivatives, as these can always be eliminated using the evolution equation. The compatibility condition is, as before, given by

$$X_t - T_x + [X, T] = 0.$$

At this point we don't know the dimensions of the matrices X and T . We don't know what their functional dependence on u and its derivatives is. At this point we don't even know on how many of these derivatives it depends! It appears we don't have much to work with.

Here's an outline of how the prolongation method works:

1. Choose a positive integer N . Assume that X depends on u, u_x, \dots, u_{Nx} (N x -derivatives). This is the only assumption we'll make. We won't even guess the dimension of the matrices!
2. The compatibility condition will impose the number of x -derivatives that T depends on.
3. At this point, the dependence of the compatibility condition on the highest x -derivative of u will be explicit. Its coefficient is equated to zero. The resulting equation is solved. We now know the dependence of the compatibility condition on the next highest x -derivative of u , at which point the process repeats until done.
4. When done, a number of matrix integration constants has been introduced. Because of the presence of the matrix commutator in the compatibility condition, a number of commutation relations between these matrix integration constants exists. Thus these matrices are elements of a Lie algebra.
5. Once it is determined which Lie algebra has been found, the lowest-dimensional matrix representation of this algebra is used to find a matrix representation for the matrix integration constants. From these, the forms of X and T are reconstructed.

If all of the above is successful, we have constructed a Lax pair for the equation and it may reasonably be said to be integrable. If one of the above steps failed, this does not imply that no Lax pair exists. This is a possibility, but it is also possible that our assumption in the first step for the number of x -derivatives of u appearing in X was wrong. At this point, we may decide to repeat all of the steps with a larger choice of N .

A bit of history: Estabrook and Wahlquist were the first ones to demonstrate the prolongation method for the KdV and NLS equations. They used the method in a differential geometric setting, using differential forms. This is where the method got its name. The functions $u(x, t)$, *etc* are prolonged by considering the jet space consisting of a function and its derivatives u_x, u_{xx}, \dots . Then the evolution equation is an algebraic relationship among the variables in this jet space. None of the differential-geometric language was required for the method to work, and the method became more popular after Fordy and others emphasized its algorithmic approach, in a setting that was more compatible with the typical background of an applied mathematician.

12.2 Example: the KdV equation

Consider the KdV equation

$$u_t = 6uu_x + u_{xxx}.$$

12.2.1 Step 1. Choosing the dependence of X

For step 1, we choose $N = 0$, which is the easiest choice. This first choice is typical. Thus we assume

$$X = X(u),$$

and X depends on $u(x, t)$, but not on any of its derivatives.

12.2.2 Step 2. Determine the dependence of T

Next we determine the dependence of T : how many derivatives of $u(x, t)$ does it depend on? The compatibility condition requires the calculation of X_t , which is

$$X_t = X_u u_t = X_u (6uu_x + u_{xxx}),$$

by the chain rule. Hence there is a term in the compatibility condition with u_{xxx} . In order for this term to balance, another such term needs to be present. It may be obtained by imposing that T depends on u_{xx} . In that case, the chain rule will indeed give rise to a u_{xxx} term. It is also easy to see that T should not contain u_{xxx} . If it did, the chain rule would give rise to a term with u_{xxxx} , which cannot be balanced by any other term. Thus we have

$$T = T(u, u_x, u_{xx}),$$

and

$$T_x = T_u u_x + T_{u_x} u_{xx} + T_{u_{xx}} u_{xxx}.$$

The compatibility condition becomes

$$X_u (6uu_x + u_{xxx}) - T_u u_x - T_{u_x} u_{xx} - T_{u_{xx}} u_{xxx} + [X, T] = 0.$$

This is the equation that has to be solved for $X(u)$ and $T(u, u_x, u_{xx})$. If no solution can be found, we may start over, assuming $X = X(u, u_x)$, whence $T = T(u, u_x, u_{xx}, u_{xxx}, u_{xxxx})$, and so on.

12.2.3 Step 3. Determine the explicit dependence of X and T

This last equation is an algebraic relationship in which u , u_x , u_{xx} and u_{xxx} may all be regarded as independent variables. Indeed, the only relationship that holds between the derivatives of u is the KdV equation. But this was already used to eliminate any time derivatives. In the above equation, X_u does not depend on u_{xxx} , nor do any of the partial derivatives of T . Thus, all dependence on u_{xxx} is explicit. This dependence is polynomial (linear, actually). Thus all coefficients of different powers of u_{xxx} need to vanish. We obtain two equations:

$$\begin{aligned} u_{xxx}^1 : \quad & X_u - T_{u_{xx}} = 0, \\ u_{xxx}^0 : \quad & 6uu_xX_u - T_uu_x - T_{u_x}u_{xx} + [X, T] = 0. \end{aligned}$$

The first of these equations can be integrated with respect to u_{xx} , since X_u does not depend on it:

$$T = u_{xx}X_u + A(u, u_x),$$

with some integration “constant” $A(u, u_x)$, which may depend on u and u_x , but not u_{xx} . We have already successfully determined the u_{xx} -dependence of T ! This result is now substituted in the remaining equation, resulting in an equation for A and X :

$$\begin{aligned} & 6uu_xX_u - (u_{xx}X_{uu} + A_u)u_x - A_{u_x}u_{xx} + [X, u_{xx}X_u + A] = 0 \\ \Rightarrow \quad & 6uu_xX_u - u_xu_{xx}X_{uu} - u_xA_u - A_{u_x}u_{xx} + u_{xx}[X, X_u] + [X, A] = 0. \end{aligned}$$

All the unknowns in this equation depend on u and possibly u_x , but not on u_{xx} . As before, this implies that all of its coefficients vanish:

$$\begin{aligned} u_{xx}^1 : \quad & -u_xX_{uu} - A_{u_x} + [X, X_u] = 0, \\ u_{xx}^0 : \quad & 6uu_xX_u - u_xA_u + [X, A] = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Again, the first of these equations is easily integrated, as X and X_u do not depend on u_x :

$$\begin{aligned} & -\frac{1}{2}u_x^2X_{uu} - A + u_x[X, X_u] = -B(u) \\ \Rightarrow \quad & A = -\frac{1}{2}u_x^2X_{uu} + u_x[X, X_u] + B(u), \end{aligned}$$

for some new constant of integration $B(u)$, which only depends on u . At this point, we have determined the u_x dependence of A , and thus of T . It remains to determine the u -dependence of both X and T . Substituting the newly found form for A in the remaining equation gives

$$\begin{aligned} & 6uu_xX_u - u_x \left(-\frac{1}{2}u_x^2X_{uuu} + u_x[X, X_{uu}] + B_u \right) + \left[X, -\frac{1}{2}u_x^2X_{uu} + u_x[X, X_u] + B \right] = 0 \\ \Rightarrow \quad & 6uu_xX_u + \frac{1}{2}u_x^3X_{uuu} - u_x^2[X, X_{uu}] - u_xB_u - \frac{1}{2}u_x^2[X, X_{uu}] + u_x[X, [X, X_u]] + [X, B] = 0. \end{aligned}$$

We proceed as before: B and X and their derivatives only depend on u , not on u_x . Thus the coefficients of all powers of u_x identically vanish:

$$\begin{aligned}
u_x^3 : \quad & \frac{1}{2}X_{uuu} = 0, \\
u_x^2 : \quad & -[X, X_{uu}] - \frac{1}{2}[X, X_{uu}] = 0, \\
u_x^1 : \quad & 6uX_u - B_u + [X, [X, X_u]] = 0, \\
u_x^0 : \quad & [X, B] = 0,
\end{aligned}$$

or, after simplification,

$$\begin{aligned}
u_x^3 : \quad & X_{uuu} = 0, \\
u_x^2 : \quad & [X, X_{uu}] = 0, \\
u_x^1 : \quad & 6uX_u - B_u + [X, [X, X_u]] = 0, \\
u_x^0 : \quad & [X, B] = 0.
\end{aligned}$$

The first of these equations gives

$$X = G_1 + uG_2 + u^2G_3,$$

where G_1 , G_2 and G_3 are matrix constants of integration. Their dimension is undetermined, for now. The three remaining equations become

$$\begin{aligned}
& [G_1 + uG_2 + u^2G_3, 2G_3] = 0, \\
6u(G_2 + 2uG_3) - B_u + [G_1 + uG_2 + u^2G_3, [G_1 + uG_2 + u^2G_3, G_2 + 2uG_3]] &= 0, \\
& [G_1 + uG_2 + u^2G_3, B] = 0.
\end{aligned}$$

The first one of these equations is a polynomial in u , with constant coefficients. It is identically zero, thus all its coefficients vanish, resulting in

$$\begin{aligned}
[G_1, G_3] &= 0, \\
[G_2, G_3] &= 0.
\end{aligned}$$

Using these conditions, the equation containing B_u is rewritten after simplification as

$$B_u = 6uG_2 + 12u^2G_3 + [G_1, [G_1, G_2]] + u[G_2, [G_1, G_2]].$$

To obtain this result, we have used the Jacobi identity for the commutator of two matrices:

$$[a, [b, c]] + [a, [b, c]] + [a, [b, c]] = 0,$$

for any three square matrices a , b and c of equal dimension. This is used to show that $[G_3, [G_1, G_2]] = 0$, using the above conditions on the commutators of G_3 with G_1 and G_2 . Integrating the expression for B_u results in

$$B = 3u^2G_2 + 4u^3G_3 + u[G_1, G_4] + \frac{1}{2}u^2[G_2, G_4] + G_0,$$

for a new matrix constant G_0 . We have introduced the constant matrix G_4 ,

$$G_4 = [G_1, G_2],$$

to avoid writing nested commutators.

The remaining equation is

$$[G_1 + uG_2 + u^2G_3, B] = 0.$$

Using the newly-found functional form of B , this becomes

$$\left[G_1 + uG_2 + u^2G_3, 3u^2G_2 + 4u^3G_3 + u[G_1, G_4] + \frac{1}{2}u^2[G_2, G_4] + G_0 \right] = 0.$$

This is a polynomial in u . The coefficients of all powers of u vanish identically:

$$\begin{aligned} u^5 : \quad & [G_3, G_3] = 0, \\ u^4 : \quad & 4[G_2, G_3] + 3[G_3, G_2] + \frac{1}{2}[G_3, [G_2, G_4]] = 0, \\ u^3 : \quad & 4[G_1, G_3] + 3[G_2, G_2] + \frac{1}{2}[G_2, [G_2, G_4]] + [G_3, [G_1, G_4]] = 0, \\ u^2 : \quad & 3[G_1, G_2] + \frac{1}{2}[G_1, [G_2, G_4]] + [G_2, [G_1, G_4]] + [G_3, G_0] = 0, \\ u^1 : \quad & [G_1, [G_1, G_4]] + [G_2, G_0] = 0, \\ u^0 : \quad & [G_1, G_0] = 0. \end{aligned}$$

In order to avoid further use of nested commutators, we introduce the constant matrices G_5 and G_6 :

$$\begin{aligned} G_5 &= [G_1, G_4], \\ G_6 &= [G_2, G_4]. \end{aligned}$$

Simplifying the above conditions on the constant matrices gives

$$\begin{aligned}
u^4 : \quad & [G_3, G_6] = 0, \\
u^3 : \quad & \frac{1}{2}[G_2, G_6] + [G_3, G_5] = 0, \\
u^2 : \quad & 3G_4 + \frac{1}{2}[G_1, G_6] + [G_2, G_5] + [G_3, G_0] = 0, \\
u^1 : \quad & [G_1, G_5] + [G_2, G_0] = 0, \\
u^0 : \quad & [G_1, G_0] = 0.
\end{aligned}$$

Let's summarize: we have completely determined the functional dependence of X and T to be

$$\begin{aligned}
X &= G_1 + uG_2 + u^2G_3, \\
T &= u_{xx}X_u - \frac{1}{2}u_x^2X_{uu} + u_x[X, X_u] + 3u^2G_2 + 4u^3G_3 + u[G_1, G_4] + \frac{1}{2}u^2[G_2, G_4] + G_0 \\
&= u_{xx}(G_2 + 2uG_3) - u_x^2G_3 + u_xG_4 + 3u^2G_2 + 4u^3G_3 + uG_5 + \frac{1}{2}u^2G_6 + G_0 \\
&= u_{xx}G_2 + 2uu_{xx}G_3 - u_x^2G_3 + u_xG_4 + 3u^2G_2 + 4u^3G_3 + uG_5 + \frac{1}{2}u^2G_6 + G_0.
\end{aligned}$$

12.2.4 Step 4. The commutation table

Here $G_0, G_1, G_2, G_3, G_4, G_5$ and G_6 are constant matrices of unknown dimension. They satisfy the following equations:

$$\begin{aligned}
& [G_1, G_3] = 0, \quad [G_2, G_3] = 0, \quad G_4 = [G_1, G_2], \\
& [G_3, G_4] = 0, \quad [G_3, G_6] = 0, \quad \frac{1}{2}[G_2, G_6] + [G_3, G_5] = 0, \\
& 3G_4 + \frac{1}{2}[G_1, G_6] + [G_2, G_5] + [G_3, G_0] = 0, \\
& [G_1, G_5] + [G_2, G_0] = 0, \quad [G_1, G_0] = 0.
\end{aligned}$$

More of such conditions may be obtained from the Jacobi identity. For instance,

$$\begin{aligned}
& [G_1, [G_3, G_4]] + [G_3, [G_4, G_1]] + [G_4, [G_1, G_3]] = 0 \\
\Rightarrow & [G_1, 0] + [G_3, -G_5] + [G_4, 0] = 0 \\
\Rightarrow & [G_5, G_3] = 0,
\end{aligned}$$

from which it follows that $[G_2, G_6] = 0$, using the conditions we already found. Also,

$$\begin{aligned}
& [G_1, [G_2, G_4]] + [G_2, [G_4, G_1]] + [G_4, [G_1, G_2]] = 0 \\
\Rightarrow & [G_1, G_6] + [G_2, -G_5] + [G_4, G_4] = 0 \\
\Rightarrow & [G_1, G_6] = [G_2, G_5].
\end{aligned}$$

These conditions are most conveniently collected in a commutation table, where the entry at the position determined by G_i and G_k is their commutator. The commutation table for the matrix constants of the KdV equation is given in Table 12.1. The “new” matrices G_7 and G_8 were introduced so that all information contained in the relationships for the matrix constants could be encoded in the commutation table.

| $[,]$ | G_0 | G_1 | G_2 | G_3 | G_4 | G_5 | G_6 |
|---------|-------------------|--------|--------|------------------|-------|-------|-------|
| G_0 | 0 | 0 | G_8 | $3(G_4 + G_7/2)$ | | | |
| G_1 | 0 | 0 | G_4 | 0 | G_5 | G_8 | G_7 |
| G_2 | $-G_8$ | $-G_4$ | 0 | 0 | G_6 | G_7 | 0 |
| G_3 | $-3(G_4 + G_7/2)$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| G_4 | | $-G_5$ | $-G_6$ | 0 | 0 | | |
| G_5 | | $-G_8$ | $-G_7$ | 0 | | 0 | |
| G_6 | | $-G_7$ | 0 | 0 | | | 0 |

Table 12.1: The commutation table for the matrix constants determining the Lax pair of the KdV equation.

12.2.5 Step 5. Wanted: a Lie algebra

If we were able to complete the commutation table, *i.e.*, express all commutators $[G_i, G_j]$ ($i, j = 0, \dots, 6$) as a linear combination of the G_i ($i = 0, \dots, 6$), then these G_i would be part of a Lie algebra, determined by this commutation table. At this point, it is not essential for us to know much about Lie algebras. It suffices to know that any Lie algebra may be decomposed into semi-simple Lie algebras and these have been completely classified. In other words, once the commutation table is completed, we may consult any mathematician who knows about Lie algebras¹ and she will be able to tell us (1) which Lie algebra we have encountered, and (2) what its lowest-dimensional matrix representation is. Thus, the final result of this is an explicit matrix form of the constants G_i ($i = 0, \dots, 6$), usually depending on one or more undetermined scalar constants. Together with the previously determined functional form of X and T , this gives the complete form of the Lax pair of the evolution equation we started with.

¹As a matter of fact, this is how I first used the prolongation method.

So, what is the catch? The catch is that we have not filled in the commutation table. Perhaps we could find a few more entries using the Jacobi identity. However, typically this does not allow for a full determination of the commutation table. Nor does it here, for the KdV equation. We may attempt to add a few entries to the list of generators G_i , ($i = 0, 1, \dots, 6$), such as G_7 and G_8 . Now the table has an extra two rows and columns. Again, we might use the Jacobi identity to fill in more empty spaces. Once more we will fail and we will have to add more generators to the list. Proceeding this way, we are lead to an infinite-dimensional Lie algebra or Kac-Moody algebra. Such algebras do not have finite-dimensional representations and it appears that no matrix representation for the Lax pair will be found.

12.2.6 Step 6. The closure conditions

An alternative approach is to try to impose additional conditions on the algebra so as to complete the commutation table. Such conditions are referred to as closure conditions. If this approach fails, it may be because the imposed closure are too strict, or it may be that the evolution equation is not integrable.

Let us use the commutation table as a guide to impose some closure conditions. We see that G_3 commutes with any other generator, except for possibly G_0 . It seems natural to impose that G_3 does indeed commute with all generators. This results in two closure conditions:

$$G_7 = -2G_4,$$

and

$$G_3 = \omega I,$$

where I denotes the identity matrix and ω is a scalar constant. This is the most general choice for a matrix commuting with any other matrix of the same dimensions. Note that this choice assumes that the generators do indeed span the Lie algebra we are hoping to find. Assume that $\omega \neq 0$. The only effect G_3 has on the Lax pair is in the $X_t - T_x$ terms, as it commutes with all matrices. But the coefficient of G_3 in X is u^2 , and we see that the only consequence of non-zero ω is the inclusion of the second conservation law for the KdV equation in the Lax pair. We are out to obtain the simplest Lax pair for the KdV equation, thus we may choose $\omega = 0$, or

$$G_3 = 0.$$

Next, we note from the commutation table that if G_5 and G_6 can be written as linear combinations of G_1 , G_2 and G_4 , then these last three generators will form a subalgebra: their commutation table will not involve any generators outside this list of three. We set

$$\begin{cases} G_5 &= \alpha G_1 + \beta G_2 + \gamma G_4 \\ G_6 &= \delta G_1 + \kappa G_2 + \epsilon G_4 \end{cases},$$

where $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \kappa$ and ϵ are scalar constants, to be determined.

From $[G_1, G_6] = G_7$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} [G_1, \delta G_1 + \kappa G_2 + \epsilon G_4] &= -2G_4 \\ \Rightarrow \kappa[G_1, G_2] + \epsilon[G_1, G_4] &= -2G_4 \\ \Rightarrow \kappa G_4 + \epsilon G_5 &= -2G_4 \\ \Rightarrow \kappa G_4 + \epsilon(\alpha G_1 + \beta G_2 + \gamma G_4) &= -2G_4 \\ \Rightarrow (\kappa + \epsilon\gamma)G_4 + \epsilon\alpha G_1 + \epsilon\beta G_2 &= -2G_4 \\ \Rightarrow \kappa + \epsilon\gamma = -2, \quad \epsilon\alpha = 0, \quad \epsilon\beta &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, the commutator relationships $[G_1, G_5] = G_8$, $[G_2, G_5] =$ and $[G_2, G_6] = 0$ result in the conditions

$$\alpha = 2, \quad \gamma = 0, \quad \delta = 0, \quad \kappa = -2, \quad \epsilon = 0,$$

and thus

$$\begin{cases} G_5 &= 2G_1 + \beta G_2 \\ G_6 &= -2G_2 \end{cases},$$

where β remains undetermined.

| $[\ , \]$ | G_1 | G_2 | G_4 |
|------------|---------------------|--------|--------------------|
| G_1 | 0 | G_4 | $2G_1 + \beta G_2$ |
| G_2 | $-G_4$ | 0 | $-2G_2$ |
| G_4 | $-2G_1 - \beta G_2$ | $2G_2$ | 0 |

Table 12.2: The commutation table of the subalgebra $\{G_1, G_2, G_4\}$.

12.2.7 Step 7. A representation for the algebra

The commutation table for the subalgebra generated by $\{G_1, G_2, G_4\}$ is given in Table 12.2. From it, anyone who knows about Lie algebras will tell you that it is isomorphic with $sl(2, \mathbb{C})$, which is a Lie algebra with a representation in terms of 2×2 traceless matrices. This algebra is generated by three basis elements. One choice for this basis is

$$\begin{aligned}
e_+ &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \\
e_- &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \\
h &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}.
\end{aligned}$$

The commutation table for $sl(2, \mathbb{C})$ is easily computed. It is given in Table 12.3.

| $[,]$ | e_+ | e_- | h |
|---------|--------|---------|---------|
| e_+ | 0 | h | $-2e_+$ |
| e_- | $-h$ | 0 | $2e_-$ |
| h | $2e_+$ | $-2e_-$ | 0 |

Table 12.3: The commutation table of the Lie algebra $sl(2, \mathbb{C})$.

Next, we determine the relationships between our generators and the basis elements of $sl(2, \mathbb{C})$:

$$\begin{cases} G_1 &= \alpha_1 e_+ + \alpha_2 e_- \\ G_2 &= \beta_1 e_+ + \beta_2 e_- \\ G_4 &= \gamma_3 h \end{cases}$$

In general, the generators G_1 , G_2 and G_4 should be expanded as linear combinations with constant coefficients of all basis elements. The similarity between the two commutation tables 12.2 and 12.3 allows for the reduced ansatz used here. Now all the existing commutation relations for $\{G_1, G_2, G_4\}$ are imposed in order to determine as many of the α_1 , α_2 , β_1 , β_2 and γ_3 as possible. For instance

$$\begin{aligned}
& [G_1, G_2] = G_4 \\
\Rightarrow & [\alpha_1 e_+ + \alpha_2 e_-, \beta_1 e_+ + \beta_2 e_-] = \gamma_3 h \\
\Rightarrow & \alpha_1 \beta_2 h - \alpha_2 \beta_1 h = \gamma_3 h \\
\Rightarrow & \alpha_1 \beta_2 - \alpha_2 \beta_1 = \gamma_3.
\end{aligned}$$

Similarly, we obtain the conditions

$$\beta_1 \gamma_3 = \beta_1, \quad \beta_2 \gamma_3 = -\beta_2,$$

and

$$\begin{cases} 2\gamma_3\alpha_1 &= -2\alpha_1 - \beta\beta_1 \\ -2\gamma_3\alpha_2 &= -2\alpha_2 - \beta\beta_2 \end{cases}.$$

From these conditions it follows that either $\beta_1 = 0$ or $\beta_2 = 0$. In what follows we work with $\beta_1 = 0$ and $\beta_2 \neq 0$. Equivalent results are obtained with $\beta_2 = 0$ and $\beta_1 \neq 0$. Indeed, many different representations of the Lax pair for an integrable equation may be obtained from a given commutation table. All these representations are equivalent in the sense that their compatibility condition gives rise to the same integrable partial differential equation. Often these different representations are related by similarity or other simple transformations.

With our choice

$$\gamma_3 = -1,$$

so that

$$G_4 = -h = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

The remaining equations are

$$\alpha_1 = -\frac{1}{\beta_2}, \quad \alpha_2 = -\frac{\beta\beta_2}{4},$$

from which

$$\begin{cases} G_1 &= -\frac{1}{\beta_2}e_+ - \frac{\beta\beta_2}{4}e_- = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1/\beta_2 \\ -\beta\beta_2/4 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ G_2 &= \beta_2 e_- = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ \beta_2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \end{cases}.$$

12.2.8 Step 8. The Lax pair

We are now in a position to reconstruct the Lax pair. First,

$$\begin{aligned} X &= G_1 + G_2 u \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -\frac{1}{\beta_2} \\ -\frac{\beta\beta_2}{4} + \beta_2 u & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

The first part of the scattering problem is

$$\begin{aligned}
& \begin{cases} \psi_{1x} &= -\frac{1}{\beta_2}\psi_2, \\ \psi_{2x} &= \left(-\frac{\beta\beta_2}{4} + \beta_2 u\right)\psi_1 \end{cases} \\
\Rightarrow \quad \psi_{1xx} &= -\frac{1}{\beta_2}\left(-\frac{\beta\beta_2}{4} + \beta_2 u\right)\psi_1 \\
&= \left(\frac{\beta}{4} - u\right)\psi_1,
\end{aligned}$$

which is the famlias Schrödinger scattering problem, with $\lambda = \beta/4$. We see that it was important not to choose a value for β when it was left undetermined by the algebra, as it results in the scattering parameter for the forward scattering problem. From the above calculation, it is however clear that the value of β_2 is irrelevant, so we let $\beta_2 = -1$ from now on. Thus, setting $\beta = 4\lambda$

$$X = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ \lambda - u & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Next, we reassemble T :

$$\begin{aligned}
T &= u_{xx}G_2 + 2uu_{xx}G_3 - u_x^2G_3 + u_xG_4 + 3u^2G_2 + 4u^3G_3 + uG_5 + \frac{1}{2}u^2G_6 + G_0 \\
&= (u_{xx} + 3u^2)G_2 + u_xG_4 + uG_5 + \frac{1}{2}u^2G_6 + G_0 \\
&= (u_{xx} + 3u^2)\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} + u_x\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + u\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 2 \\ -2\lambda & 0 \end{pmatrix} + \frac{1}{2}u^2\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} + G_0 \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} -u_x + G_{011} & 2u + G_{012} \\ -u_{xx} - 2u^2 - 2\lambda u + G_{021} & u_x - G_{011} \end{pmatrix},
\end{aligned}$$

where we have introduced the components of G_0 :

$$G_0 = \begin{pmatrix} G_{011} & G_{012} \\ G_{021} & -G_{011} \end{pmatrix},$$

which we have chosen so that G_0 is traceless. There are different ways to determine G_0 , but the most direct one is to use the newly found representations of X and T and plug them in the compatibility condition $X_t + XT = T_x + TX$. Its different components give:

$$\begin{aligned}
11 : \quad & G_{012} = 4\lambda, \quad G_{021} = 4\lambda^2, \\
12 : \quad & G_{011} = 0.
\end{aligned}$$

The other components are identically satisfied, provided $u(x, t)$ satisfies the KdV equation. Finally,

$$T = \begin{pmatrix} -u_x & 2u + 4\lambda \\ -u_{xx} - 2u^2 - 2\lambda u + 4\lambda^2 & u_x \end{pmatrix},$$

and we have indeed reconstructed the Lax pair for the KdV equation, using only very elementary assumptions.

Part III

Global aspects of integrable equations

Chapter 13

The inverse scattering method

The inverse scattering method to solve the initial-value problem for a given integrable equation is undoubtedly *the* pinnacle of the theory of integrable systems, and one of the major achievements in nonlinear science. Many authors list the method of inverse scattering for integrable systems and the understanding of chaos for almost all other systems as the two major pillars that were added to nonlinear science in the twentieth century.

13.1 The big picture

Given a partial differential equation, the main problem of interest is the initial-value problem with given boundary conditions. For instance, for the KdV equation, we could set out to solve

$$\begin{cases} u_t = 6uu_x + u_{xxx}, \\ u(x, 0) = U(x) \in H, \\ \lim_{|x| \rightarrow \infty} u(x, t) = 0, \end{cases}$$

where H is the function space of choice. Thus H could be $L_2(-\infty, \infty)$, *etc.* The method that does this is the inverse scattering method. When Gardner, Greene, Kruskal and Miura first used it to solve the KdV equation, their knowledge of both scattering and inverse scattering in the context of quantum mechanics was crucial.

13.1.1 A little bit of quantum mechanics

In non-relativistic quantum mechanics, a particle or wave interacting with a potential is described by the one-particle time-independent linear Schrödinger equation

$$\psi_{1xx} + u\psi_1 = \lambda\psi_1.$$

We have rescaled the dependent and independent variables for our convenience. The wave function ψ_1 is denoted with the index to remind ourselves it is the first component of the Lax pair vector ψ for the KdV equation. In quantum mechanics ψ_1 has a probabilistic interpretation:

$$P(a < \text{particle} < b) = \int_a^b |\psi_1|^2 dx,$$

where $P(a < \text{particle} < b)$ denotes the probability to find the particle (one-dimensional for our purposes) between $x = a$ and $x = b$. The function $u(x, t)$ is referred to as the potential. Note that its t -dependence is purely parametric, as the time-independent Schrödinger equation is an ordinary differential equation in x , and does not involve t . Specifically, t , which is the time-variable for the KdV equation, should not be confused with the time variable for the time-dependent Schrödinger equation, which does not arise in the method of inverse scattering for the KdV equation. Lastly, λ is the spectral parameter for the above equation. It represents the measurable values of the energy of the particle or wave described by ψ_1 . These values are real, as they should be physically. Mathematically, this is due to the self-adjointness of the linear Schrödinger equation.

Here's how scattering theory works in the context of quantum mechanics. There are two main branches:

1. Forward scattering:

Given a potential $u(x)$ (we'll suppress the t -dependence when it might cause confusion), determine the spectrum of the linear Schrödinger equation. In other words, determine the set of all possible energy values that may be observed: find the λ 's for which there are bounded ψ_1 . For these λ 's, characterize the nature of the corresponding eigenfunctions ψ_1 . It is clear how to do this: solve the linear Schrödinger equation for all values of λ . It is a second-order ordinary differential equation for ψ_1 , for any given value of λ , thus for any λ we find a set of two fundamental solutions, spanning the general solution. Next we retain all λ for which at least one of the two fundamental solutions is bounded. The collection of all these λ 's make up the spectrum of the problem. This problem is referred to as the forward scattering problem, or as the direct problem: given a potential, determine how waves scatter of it.

2. Inverse scattering:

The inverse scattering problem asks for the determination of $u(x)$ from the knowledge of the spectrum and some characteristics of the corresponding eigenfunctions. Figure 13.1 presents a cartoon of the experimental set-up.

First we send in a wave with a certain value of λ , say from $-\infty$. As this wave approaches the region where $u(x)$ has an important contribution, it starts to interact with $u(x)$. Some of the wave gets reflected, and returns to $-\infty$. Some other part of the wave gets

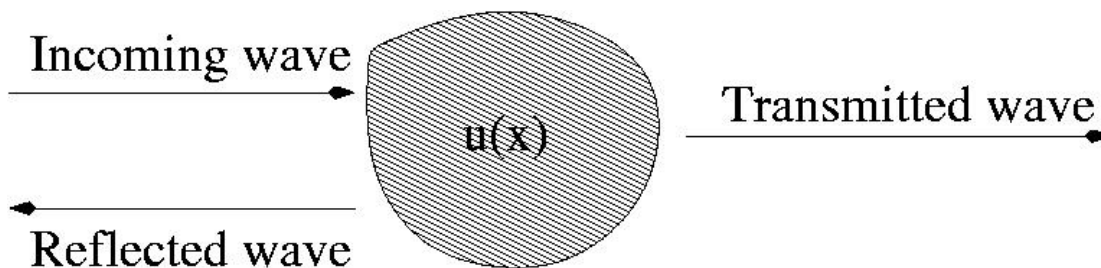


Figure 13.1: The cartoon of inverse scattering in quantum mechanics

transmitted and proceeds to $+\infty$. In the experimental set-up, one controls the wave that is sent in, and one measures the reflected and transmitted wave. Is it possible to determine which potential $u(x)$ is causing this reflection and transmission? This is the question posed by inverse scattering: if we know how waves scatter of a potential, is it possible to determine the potential? Mathematically the problem is formulated as determining the coefficients of a linear differential equation, if some properties of its solutions are known. It may be surprising that the answer to these questions is affirmative as first shown by Gel'fand and Levitan. Marchenko contributed to the solution of the inverse problem for the Schrödinger equation as well.

Since $\lim_{x \rightarrow \pm\infty} u = 0$, everything becomes easy as $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$. There is no potential, and the problem becomes easy to solve, as the Schrödinger equation has constant coefficients. This simple behavior at infinity is essential to the success of the solution method of the inverse problem. Mathematically, the solution of the inverse problem traditionally reduces to the problem of solving a linear integral equation (called the Gel'fand-Levitan-Marchenko equation in the context of the Schrödinger problem). In more modern treatments, the problem is reduced to that of solving a Riemann-Hilbert problem, as we will see later.

13.1.2 A preview of coming attractions

Let us examine how the above will help us solve the initial-value problem for the KdV equation. First, let us recall how the Fourier transform is used to solve a one-dimensional (one spatial variable) partial differential equation. Consider the scheme outlined in Fig. 13.2. Thus in order to solve a one-dimensional partial differential equation, we first take a Fourier transform of its initial condition, then evolve this Fourier transform in time. This time-evolution is obtained from solving an ordinary differential equation, instead of a partial differential equation. Lastly, we take an inverse Fourier transform of the time-evolved Fourier transform of the initial data. The scheme of the inverse scattering method is completely parallel to this, as illustrated in Fig. 13.3.

The three steps of this process are:

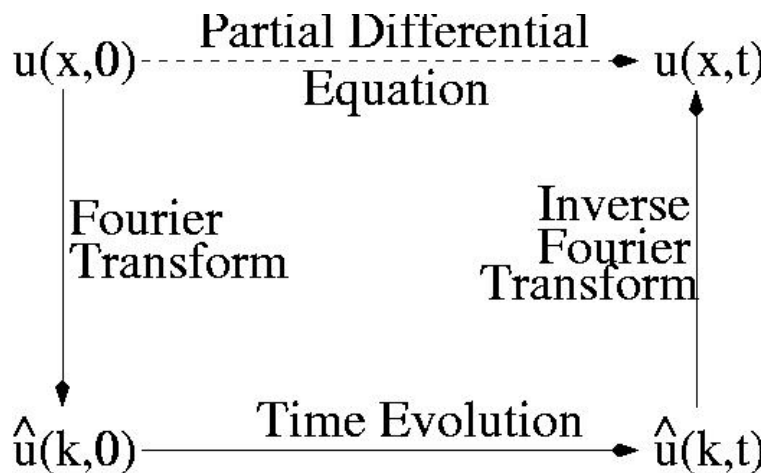


Figure 13.2: The solution scheme for the initial-value problem for a partial differential equation in one dimension, using the Fourier transform

1. Forward scattering

In this first step, the initial condition $U(x)$ is used as a potential in the linear Schrödinger equation and the scattering data S for this potential (to be defined later) is determined. Since in this step the “parameter” $t = 0$, we denote this set of scattering data by $S(0)$. In general, this step requires solving the forward problem for the first equation of the Lax pair.

2. Time evolution of the scattering data

In the second step, the scattering data $S(0)$ is evolved in time, using the second equation of the Lax pair. Since the scattering data does not depend on x , we may choose any value of x in this second Lax equation to determine the time evolution of $S(0)$. As $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$, the Lax equations have constant coefficients, and they become trivial to solve. Thus, we use the second Lax equation, evaluated at either $x = \infty$ or $x = -\infty$ to find $S(t)$, the scattering data as a function of the now arbitrary “parameter” t . As a matter of fact, this second step proves to be significantly easier to solve than either the first or third step.

3. Inverse scattering

In this third and last step, the potential $u(x, t)$, for arbitrary values of the “parameter” t is reconstructed using Gel’fand-Levitan-Marchenko theory.

Many **remarks** are in order:

- Steps 1, 2, and 3 are all linear, as they all involve solving different types of linear problems (spectral problems for an linear ordinary differential equation with non-constant

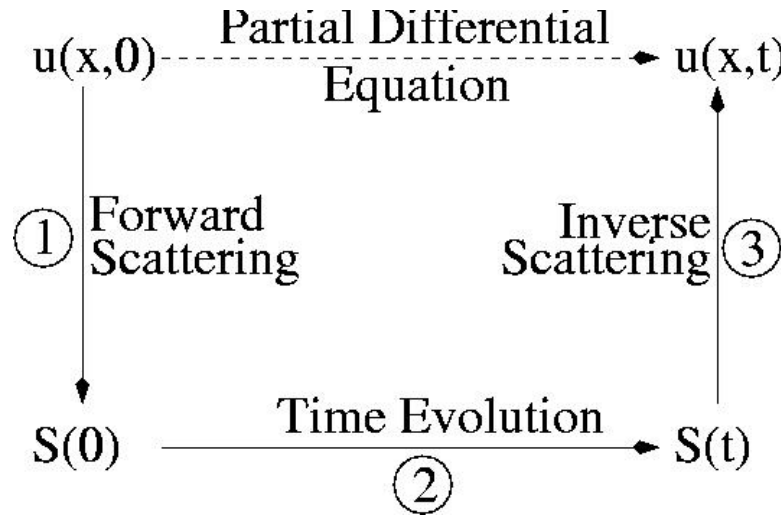


Figure 13.3: The solution scheme for the initial-value problem for an integrable nonlinear partial differential equation in one dimension, using the inverse scattering method

coefficients, a constant-coefficient linear ordinary differential equation, and a linear integral equation). Thus we are solving an initial-value problem for a nonlinear partial differential equation by composing three linear steps!

- The space of initial data for which we can solve the initial-value problem is determined by step 1. During step 1, we encounter several restrictions on the initial data for the theory to work. The collection of these restrictions determines the function space in which $U(x)$ and $u(x, t)$ reside.
- As stated before, u depends on both x and t , where t is the time variable for the KdV equation, which has nothing to do with the time variable for the time-dependent Schrödinger equation. Rather, the t -dependence of $u(x, t)$ shows up as a parameter in the time-independent linear Schrödinger equation. Thus varying t gives rise to a one-parameter family of potentials for the linear Schrödinger equation, each having the same spectrum. Since the spectral parameter λ does not depend on t , all solutions $u(x, t)$ give rise to the same spectrum for the linear Schrödinger equation as their initial condition $u(x, 0)$. This is a remarkable statement: imagine the two-soliton solution of the KdV equation. This solution looks significantly different from one time to the next. For each time, a different potential of the linear Schrödinger equation is obtained. All these potentials have the same spectrum!
- The hardest of the three steps is usually the third step. With typical initial data, this step can be reduced to the solution of a linear integral equation. However, if the initial data $U(x)$ is soliton initial data (*i.e.*, it consists of a finite number of solitons

and nothing else), this integral equation reduces to a discrete integral equation, *i.e.*, a linear algebraic equation and the entire solution of the third step reduces to linear algebra.

- For general initial conditions $U(x)$, the spectrum of the linear Schrödinger equations contains a discrete part (eigenvalues) and a non-discrete part (the continuous spectrum). We'll show that the discrete spectrum, *i.e.*, the eigenvalues, correspond to solitons in the initial data. In particular, the number of eigenvalues for given initial data is equal to the number of solitons that will evolve from this initial data. Furthermore, the location of these eigenvalues in the complex plane (on the real line for the linear Schrödinger operator, as it is self-adjoint) determines the characteristics (amplitude, velocity, width) of the solitons.
- For general initial data $U(x)$, its time evolution breaks up in a sum of solitons (whose number and characteristics are determined by the discrete part of the spectrum of $U(x)$), and a dispersive tail. This dispersive tail spreads and decreases in amplitude as $t \rightarrow \infty$, whereas the soliton amplitudes are constant in time. Thus one could very well argue that eventually (*i.e.*, after enough time has elapsed), we only need to consider the solitons and the dispersive tail may be ignored.
- The spectral data $S(t)$ essentially consists of the transmission and reflection coefficients from our quantum mechanical ramblings. For solitons, it turns out that the reflection coefficient is zero. Thus solitons of the KdV equation represent reflectionless potentials of the linear Schrödinger equation!
- The inverse scattering method may be considered an analogue for integrable partial differential equations of the Fourier transform for linear partial differential equations. This point may be pursued further. Ablowitz, Kaup, Newell and Segur demonstrated that the inverse scattering method is truly an extension of the Fourier transform, in the sense that it reduces to it, in the limit of small amplitude of the initial condition. In that case, all products may be linearized and they showed that the forward scattering step is in essence a Fourier transform and the inverse scattering step is an inverse Fourier transform.

13.2 A scalar Lax pair for the KdV equation

For the sake of simplicity, we will use a scalar form of the Lax pair for the KdV equation. A scalar Lax pair for a partial differential equation is a pair L and P , both scalar linear finite-order differential operators in x , such that the given equation is equivalent to the Lax equation

$$L_t = [P, L],$$

where $[P, L]$ is the operator commutator: $[P, L] = PL - LP$. One way to obtain the Lax equation is as the compatibility condition of the two linear equations

$$\begin{cases} L\psi = \lambda\psi, \\ \psi_t = P\psi. \end{cases}$$

Here λ is a spectral parameter, independent of x and t . The compatibility of these equations is obtained by taking the t derivative of the first equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial}{\partial t} L\psi &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \lambda\psi \\ \Rightarrow L_t\psi + L\psi_t &= \lambda\psi_t \\ \Rightarrow L_t\psi + LP\psi &= \lambda P\psi \\ \Rightarrow L_t\psi + LP\psi &= P\lambda\psi \\ \Rightarrow L_t\psi + LP\psi &= PL\psi, \end{aligned}$$

from which the Lax equation follows. The advantage of this approach is that the parameter λ is clearly the spectral parameter for the operator L , an interpretation which is not always clear from the systems Lax pair approach.

Theorem The KdV equation $u_t = 6uu_x + u_{xxx}$ has a scalar Lax pair given by

$$\begin{cases} L = \partial_x^2 + u, \\ P = 4\partial_x^3 + 3u\partial_x + 3\partial_x u \end{cases}$$

Note that two x -derivatives may be exchanged for multiplication by $\lambda - u$, using the first linear Lax equation. This allows us to rewrite the second operator as $P = -u_x + (2u + 4\lambda)\partial_x$.

Proof The different pieces for the Lax equation for these two operators are:

$$L_t = u_t,$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} [P, L] &= [4\partial_x^3 + 6u\partial_x + 3u_x, \partial_x^2 + u] \\ &= (4\partial_x^3 + 6u\partial_x + 3u_x)(\partial_x^2 + u) - (\partial_x^2 + u)(4\partial_x^3 + 6u\partial_x + 3u_x) \\ &= 4\partial_x^5 + 4u_{xxx} + 12u_{xx}\partial_x + 12u_x\partial_x^2 + 4u\partial_x^3 + 6u\partial_x^3 + 6uu_x + 6u^2\partial_x + 3u_x\partial_x^2 + 3uu_x \\ &\quad - (4\partial_x^5 + 6u_{xx}\partial_x + 12u_x\partial_x^2 + 6u\partial_x^3 + 3u_{xxx} + 6u_{xx}\partial_x + 3u_x\partial_x^2 + 4u\partial_x^3 + 6u^2\partial_x + 3uu_x) \\ &= u_{xxx} + 6uu_x, \end{aligned}$$

and the Lax equation is indeed identical to the KdV equation. This finishes the proof.

13.3 The forward problem

The goal of the forward scattering problem is to take initial data for the KdV equation in some function space, and determine from it scattering data. We will find out what is meant by “scattering data” and what the appropriate “function space” is, as we proceed.

Consider the forward scattering problem

$$\psi_{xx} + (u - \lambda)\psi = 0,$$

where $u = u(x, t)$ denotes the solution of the KdV equation. For the above ordinary differential equation, t shows up parametrically. More specific, we could let $t = 0$ and use initial data in the forward scattering problem. But we don't have to. First, we set

$$\lambda = -k^2.$$

This is motivated by the fact that λ plays the role of a spectral parameter for the operator $\partial_x^2 + u$. Since u is bounded, and ∂_x^2 is a negative operator, the spectrum of the operator $\partial_x^2 + u$ is bounded from above. Further, since the operator is self-adjoint, the spectrum is contained on the real axis. It is possible for part of the spectrum $\sigma(\lambda) = \{\lambda \in \mathbb{C} : \psi \text{ is bounded}\}$ to be on the positive real axis. One can show that the continuous spectrum of $\partial_x^2 + u$ is contained on the negative real axis (including zero), because $u \rightarrow 0$ as $|x| \rightarrow \infty$. There may be isolated eigenvalues on the positive real axis. These correspond to solitons. For small enough (in a norm to be decided on later) initial data, no such eigenvalues exist, and no solitons evolve from the initial data. For sufficiently large initial data, one or more discrete positive eigenvalues may exist, giving rise to an equal number of solitons. For now, we have

$$\psi_{xx} + (u + k^2)\psi = 0.$$

This is a second-order ordinary differential equation with non-constant coefficients.

13.3.1 Two bases of eigenfunctions

Let us investigate the asymptotic behavior of this equation. Since $u \rightarrow 0$ as $|x| \rightarrow \infty$, as $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$, we have

$$\psi_{xx} + k^2\psi = 0.$$

From this, it is easy to deduce the asymptotic behavior of the solutions. Since the equation is of second order, it has two linearly independent solutions. Let us define two such solutions $\phi(x, k)$ and $\bar{\phi}(x, k)$ by their asymptotic behavior as $x \rightarrow -\infty$:

$$\begin{cases} \phi(x, k) & \sim e^{-ikx} \\ \bar{\phi}(x, k) & \sim e^{ikx} \end{cases}, \quad \text{as } x \rightarrow -\infty.$$

Thus, $\phi(x, k)$ is the unique solution of the equation $\psi_{xx} + (u + k^2)\psi = 0$ that has the asymptotic behavior $\psi \sim e^{-ikx}$, with a similar statement for $\bar{\phi}$. It is equally easy to solve the equation as $x \rightarrow +\infty$. Thus we define a second set of linearly independent solutions $\varphi(x, k)$ and $\bar{\varphi}(x, k)$ so that

$$\begin{cases} \varphi(x, k) & \sim e^{ikx} \\ \bar{\varphi}(x, k) & \sim e^{-ikx} \end{cases}, \quad \text{as } x \rightarrow +\infty.$$

Since we are solving a second-order differential equation, there are only two linearly independent solutions. We have defined two distinct sets of linearly independent solutions, thus the members of one set can be written as a linear combination of the members of the other set. Specifically,

$$\begin{cases} \phi(x, k) & = a(k)\bar{\varphi}(x, k) + b(k)\varphi(x, k) \\ \bar{\phi}(x, k) & = -\bar{a}(k)\varphi(x, k) + \bar{b}(k)\bar{\varphi}(x, k) \end{cases},$$

for four functions $a(k)$, $\bar{a}(k)$, $b(k)$, $\bar{b}(k)$ which may depend on the spectral parameter k (and possibly t , if we choose to write out the t -parameter explicitly), but not on x .

Remark. Since the equation is invariant under the change $k \rightarrow -k$, we have that

$$\begin{cases} \phi(x, -k) & = \bar{\phi}(x, k) \\ \varphi(x, -k) & = \bar{\varphi}(x, k) \end{cases},$$

since these relations hold at respectively $-\infty$ and ∞ and they are invariant under the flow of the differential equation. Hence they hold for all x . Then

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{cases} \phi(x, -k) & = a(-k)\bar{\varphi}(x, -k) + b(-k)\varphi(x, -k) \\ \bar{\phi}(x, -k) & = -\bar{a}(-k)\varphi(x, -k) + \bar{b}(-k)\bar{\varphi}(x, -k) \end{cases} \\ \Rightarrow & \begin{cases} \bar{\phi}(x, k) & = a(-k)\varphi(x, k) + b(-k)\bar{\varphi}(x, k) \\ \phi(x, k) & = -\bar{a}(-k)\bar{\varphi}(x, k) + \bar{b}(-k)\varphi(x, k) \end{cases} \\ \Rightarrow & \begin{cases} -\bar{a}(k)\varphi(x, k) + \bar{b}(k)\bar{\varphi}(x, k) & = a(-k)\varphi(x, k) + b(-k)\bar{\varphi}(x, k) \\ a(k)\bar{\varphi}(x, k) + b(k)\varphi(x, k) & = -\bar{a}(-k)\bar{\varphi}(x, k) + \bar{b}(-k)\varphi(x, k) \end{cases} \\ \Rightarrow & -\bar{a}(k) = a(-k), \quad \bar{b}(k) = b(-k). \end{aligned}$$

Since the linear Schrödinger equation does not contain a first derivative term, it follows from Abel's formula that the Wronskian $W(f_1, f_2) = f_1 f_{2x} - f_{1x} f_2$ of any two solutions is constant, *i.e.*, independent of x . This implies that the value of such a Wronskian may be determined by using any convenient x -value. For instance,

$$\begin{aligned} W(\phi, \bar{\phi}) &= e^{-ikx} i k e^{ikx} - (-ik) e^{-ikx} e^{ikx} \\ &= 2ik, \end{aligned}$$

using $x \rightarrow \infty$ to justify the first equality. Similarly, using $x \rightarrow \infty$, we get

$$\begin{aligned} W(\varphi, \bar{\varphi}) &= e^{ikx}(-ik)e^{-ikx} - ike^{ikx}e^{-ikx} \\ &= -2ik. \end{aligned}$$

Using these results with the above definitions of $a(k)$, $\bar{a}(k)$, $b(k)$ and $\bar{b}(k)$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} W(\phi, \bar{\phi}) &= W(a\bar{\varphi} + b\varphi, -\bar{a}\varphi + \bar{b}\bar{\varphi}) \\ &= W(a\bar{\varphi}, -\bar{a}\varphi) + W(b\varphi, \bar{b}\bar{\varphi}) \\ &= a\bar{a}W(\bar{\varphi}, \varphi) + b\bar{b}W(\varphi, \bar{\varphi}) \\ &= (a\bar{a} + b\bar{b})W(\varphi, \bar{\varphi}) \\ \Rightarrow a\bar{a} + b\bar{b} &= -1. \end{aligned}$$

13.3.2 Scattering data

Definition. (Scattering data) *The collection*

$$\{a(k), \bar{a}(k), b(k), \bar{b}(k)\}$$

*is a set of **scattering data**. It is the goal of the forward problem to characterize for a given “potential” $u(x, t)$ this data and, if possible, obtain it.*

Remarks

- The scattering data $\{a(k), \bar{a}(k), b(k), \bar{b}(k)\}$ fully characterizes how eigenfunction information at $x = -\infty$ is related to eigenfunction information at $x = +\infty$.
- It is possible to use different collections of scattering data, and such is frequently done in the literature. Another popular choice is to use $\{T(k) = 1/a(k), \rho(k) = b(k)/a(k), \bar{T}(k) = 1/\bar{a}(k), \bar{\rho}(k) = \bar{b}(k)/\bar{a}(k)\}$, which may be interpreted as reflection and transmission coefficients in the quantum mechanical setting of the Schrödinger scattering problem. In that context, the relationship $a\bar{a} + b\bar{b} = -1$ may be interpreted as a statement of conservation of energy.

The expansion coefficients $a(k)$, $b(k)$ etc. may be expressed in terms of the eigenfunctions:

$$\begin{aligned}
a(k) &= \frac{W(\phi, \varphi)}{2ik}, \\
b(k) &= \frac{W(\bar{\varphi}, \phi)}{2ik}, \\
\bar{a}(k) &= \frac{W(\bar{\phi}, \bar{\varphi})}{2ik}, \\
\bar{b}(k) &= \frac{W(\bar{\phi}, \varphi)}{2ik}.
\end{aligned}$$

All of these follow immediately from the expressions for ϕ and $\bar{\phi}$ in terms of φ and $\bar{\varphi}$.

13.3.3 Jost functions

Next, we define **Jost functions**. Jost functions are functions constructed from the eigenfunctions so that the asymptotics of some of them is particularly simple, as $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$. Specifically, half of the Jost functions have constant asymptotic behavior at either ∞ or $-\infty$. Let

$$\begin{aligned}
M &= \phi e^{ikx}, \\
\bar{M} &= \bar{\phi} e^{ikx}, \\
N &= \varphi e^{ikx}, \\
\bar{N} &= \bar{\varphi} e^{ikx},
\end{aligned}$$

so that

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{as } x \rightarrow -\infty, \quad M \rightarrow 1, \\
&\text{as } x \rightarrow -\infty, \quad \bar{M} \rightarrow e^{2ikx}, \\
&\text{as } x \rightarrow \infty, \quad N \rightarrow e^{2ikx}, \\
&\text{as } x \rightarrow \infty, \quad \bar{N} \rightarrow 1.
\end{aligned}$$

Only half of the oscillatory behavior at $\pm\infty$ is transformed away. The reason for this is that now the Jost function all satisfy the same differential equation

$$y_{xx} - 2iky_x + uy = 0.$$

The transformation of this differential equation to an integral equation allows us to determine the analyticity (or lack thereof) of the Jost functions in the complex k -plane, *i.e.*, as functions

of k . We will not do this here, but the results will be given shortly. For now, let us relate the functions M and \bar{M} to N and \bar{N} :

$$\begin{cases} M &= a\bar{N} + bN \\ \bar{M} &= -\bar{a}N + \bar{b}\bar{N} \end{cases} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} \frac{M}{a} &= \bar{N} + \frac{b}{a}N \\ \frac{\bar{M}}{\bar{a}} &= -N + \frac{\bar{b}}{\bar{a}}\bar{N} \end{cases},$$

where the last set of equations is valid for all k -values for which the first set is defined, with the exception of the roots of $a(k)$. Since

$$\varphi(x, k) = \bar{\varphi}(x, -k),$$

we have

$$N(x, k)e^{-ikx} = \bar{N}(x, -k)e^{ikx} \Rightarrow N(x, k) = \bar{N}(x, -k)e^{2ikx},$$

from which

$$\frac{M(x, k)}{a(k)} = \bar{N}(x, k) + \frac{b(k)}{a(k)}e^{2ikx}\bar{N}(x, -k).$$

This equation is known as the **fundamental equation**. Its fundamental role in the inverse scattering method will become clear in the section on inverse scattering.

13.3.4 Example: the delta function potential

Consider as a potential of the linear Schrödinger equation

$$u(x, 0) = \alpha\delta(x),$$

where α is a real constant, and $\delta(x)$ denotes the Dirac delta function. Thus the forward scattering problem requires the construction of scattering data for the ordinary differential equation

$$\psi_{xx} + (\alpha\delta(x) + k^2)\psi = 0.$$

Determining ϕ and $\bar{\phi}$

As $x \rightarrow -\infty$ we have by definition

$$\phi \rightarrow e^{-ikx}, \quad \bar{\phi} \rightarrow e^{ikx}.$$

On the other hand, for all $x < 0$, the differential equation is $\psi_{xx} + k^2\psi = 0$, so that

$$\phi = e^{-ikx}, \quad \bar{\phi} = e^{ikx}, \quad \text{for all } x < 0.$$

Similarly, for $x > 0$

$$\begin{cases} \phi &= c_1 e^{ikx} + c_2 e^{-ikx} \\ \bar{\phi} &= c_3 e^{ikx} + c_4 e^{-ikx} \end{cases}.$$

In order to completely determine the eigenfunctions $\phi(x, k)$ and $\bar{\phi}(x, k)$ for all x , the constants c_1, c_2, c_3 and c_4 need to be found. It is clear from the differential equation that the second derivative of the solutions will not be continuous. Actually, given that the equation shows that the second derivative blows up at $x = 0$, it appears the first derivative of the solutions will also be discontinuous. However, we may impose that the solutions themselves are continuous. Taking left- and right-side limits, we obtain

$$c_1 + c_2 = 1, \quad c_3 + c_4 = 1.$$

The condition on the first derivative is obtained by integrating the differential equation over the singularity of the delta function. Let $\epsilon > 0$ be small. Then

$$\begin{aligned} & \psi_{xx} + (\alpha\delta(x) + k^2)\psi = 0 \\ \Rightarrow & \int_{-\epsilon}^{\epsilon} \psi_{xx} dx + \alpha \int_{-\epsilon}^{\epsilon} \delta(x)\psi dx + k^2 \int_{-\epsilon}^{\epsilon} \psi dx = 0 \\ \Rightarrow & \int_{-\epsilon}^{\epsilon} \psi_{xx} dx + \alpha \int_{-\epsilon}^{\epsilon} \delta(x)\psi dx = 0 \\ \Rightarrow & \psi_x(\epsilon) - \psi_x(-\epsilon) + \alpha\psi(0) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Note that the contribution of the $k^2\psi$ term vanishes as $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$, since ψ is continuous. Applying this equation to ϕ , we have (as $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$)

$$\begin{cases} \phi_x(\epsilon) - \phi_x(-\epsilon) + \alpha\phi(0) = 0 \\ c_1 + c_2 = 1 \end{cases} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} ikc_1 - ikc_2 - (-ik) + \alpha = 0 \\ c_1 + c_2 = 1 \end{cases} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} c_1 = -\frac{\alpha}{2ik} \\ c_2 = 1 + \frac{\alpha}{2ik} \end{cases}.$$

At this point, we have completely determined $\phi(x, k)$:

$$\phi(x, k) = \begin{cases} e^{-ikx} & \text{if } x < 0, \\ \left(1 + \frac{\alpha}{2ik}\right) e^{-ikx} - \frac{\alpha}{2ik} e^{ikx} & \text{if } x > 0. \end{cases}$$

In a similar way, the constants c_3 and c_4 may be found, at which point the function $\bar{\phi}$ has been completely determined. Alternatively, we may use that $\bar{\phi}(x, k) = \phi(x, -k)$, which gives the same result (check!):

$$\bar{\phi}(x, k) = \begin{cases} e^{ikx} & \text{if } x < 0, \\ \left(1 - \frac{\alpha}{2ik}\right) e^{ikx} + \frac{\alpha}{2ik} e^{-ikx} & \text{if } x > 0. \end{cases}$$

Determining φ and $\bar{\varphi}$

Using the asymptotics of φ and $\bar{\varphi}$ at $+\infty$, these functions may be determined in an analogous way. The final results are

$$\varphi(x, k) = \begin{cases} \left(1 + \frac{\alpha}{2ik}\right) e^{ikx} - \frac{\alpha}{2ik} e^{-ikx} & \text{if } x < 0, \\ e^{ikx} & \text{if } x > 0. \end{cases}$$

and

$$\bar{\varphi}(x, k) = \begin{cases} \left(1 - \frac{\alpha}{2ik}\right) e^{-ikx} + \frac{\alpha}{2ik} e^{ikx} & \text{if } x < 0, \\ e^{-ikx} & \text{if } x > 0. \end{cases}$$

Determining the scattering data

Having determined the two bases of eigenfunctions explicitly, the most convenient way to compute the scattering data at this point, is through the Wronskian relations. These may be evaluated at any x -value, since the final result is independent of x . In what follows, we use $x < 0$. The reader should check that the same results are obtained using $x > 0$.

$$\begin{aligned} a(k) &= \frac{W(\phi, \varphi)}{2ik} \\ &= \frac{1}{2ik} W\left(e^{-ikx}, \left(1 + \frac{\alpha}{2ik}\right) e^{ikx} - \frac{\alpha}{2ik} e^{-ikx}\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2ik} W\left(e^{-ikx}, \left(1 + \frac{\alpha}{2ik}\right) e^{ikx}\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2ik} \left(1 + \frac{\alpha}{2ik}\right) W(e^{-ikx}, e^{ikx}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2ik} \left(1 + \frac{\alpha}{2ik}\right) (2ik) \\ &= \frac{\alpha + 2ik}{2ik}, \end{aligned}$$

which is indeed independent of x . We may calculate $\bar{a}(k)$ in a similar way, or we may use

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{a}(k) &= -a(-k) \\ &= \frac{\alpha - 2ik}{2ik}. \end{aligned}$$

Next,

$$\begin{aligned}
 b(k) &= \frac{W(\bar{\varphi}, \phi)}{2ik} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2ik} W\left(\left(1 - \frac{\alpha}{2ik}\right)e^{-ikx} + \frac{\alpha}{2ik}e^{ikx}, e^{-ikx}\right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2ik} \frac{\alpha}{2ik} W(e^{ikx}, e^{-ikx}) \\
 &= -\frac{\alpha}{2ik},
 \end{aligned}$$

from which

$$\begin{aligned}
 \bar{b}(k) &= b(-k) \\
 &= \frac{\alpha}{2ik}.
 \end{aligned}$$

13.4 Time dependence of the scattering data

13.4.1 General strategy

Thus far we have only used the first half of the Lax pair. In order to determine the time dependence of the scattering data, the second half is used. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \psi_t &= 4\psi_{xxx} + 3u\psi_x + 3(u\psi)_x \\
 &= 4\psi_{xxx} + 6u\psi_x + 3u_x\psi.
 \end{aligned}$$

Since the scattering data is independent of x , its time dependence may be obtained from the behavior at any favorably chosen x . The two “values” $x \rightarrow -\infty$ and $x \rightarrow +\infty$ are especially nice, as the two last terms of the ψ_t equation vanish there, and the equation becomes

$$\psi_t \sim 4\psi_{xxx}.$$

Let $\psi = c_1\phi$. Here c_1 is independent of x , so that ψ satisfies the first half of the Lax pair. Both c_1 and ϕ may depend on t and c_1 will be chosen to ensure that ψ is indeed a solution of the second equation of the Lax pair. Then, as $x \rightarrow -\infty$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \psi_t &= c_{1t}\phi + c_1\phi_t \\
 &= c_{1t}e^{-ikx} + c_1(e^{-ikx})_t \\
 &= c_{1t}e^{-ikx},
 \end{aligned}$$

and, again as $x \rightarrow -\infty$

$$\begin{aligned}\psi_{xxx} &= c_1(-ik)^3 e^{-ikx} \\ &= c_1 ik^3 e^{-ikx}.\end{aligned}$$

Evaluating the second of the Lax pair equations as $x \rightarrow -\infty$ gives

$$\begin{aligned}c_{1t}e^{-ikx} &= 4ik^3 e^{-ikx} c_1 \\ \Rightarrow c_{1t} &= 4ik^3 c_1 \\ \Rightarrow c_1 &= e^{4ik^3 t}.\end{aligned}$$

Note that the overall constant of integration is irrelevant, as it may be factored out since we are using linear equations.

Having determined c_1 , we now turn to the behavior as $x \rightarrow \infty$ of the second Lax equation. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\psi &= c_1 \phi \\ &= c_1(a\bar{\varphi} + b\varphi) \\ &\sim c_1(ae^{-ikx} + be^{ikx}),\end{aligned}$$

as $x \rightarrow \infty$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\psi_t &\sim c_{1t}(ae^{-ikx} + be^{ikx}) + c_1(a_t e^{-ikx} + b_t e^{ikx}) \\ &\sim 4ik^3 c_1(ae^{-ikx} + be^{ikx}) + c_1(a_t e^{-ikx} + b_t e^{ikx}),\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\psi_{xxx} &\sim c_1(a(-ik)^3 e^{-ikx} + b(ik)^3 e^{ikx}) \\ &\sim c_1(ia k^3 e^{-ikx} - ib k^3 e^{ikx}).\end{aligned}$$

Equating the coefficients of e^{ikx} and e^{-ikx} on both sides of the Lax equation and canceling c_1 gives

$$\begin{aligned}e^{-ikx} : \quad 4ik^3 a + a_t &= 4iak^3 \quad \Rightarrow \quad a_t = 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad a(k, t) = a(k, 0), \\ e^{ikx} : \quad 4ik^3 b + b_t &= -4ik^3 \quad \Rightarrow \quad b_t = -8ik^3 b \quad \Rightarrow \quad b(k, t) = b(k, 0)e^{-8ik^3 t}.\end{aligned}$$

The scattering coefficients $\bar{a}(k)$ and $\bar{b}(k)$ may be determined in a similar way, using the eigenfunction

$$\psi = c_2 \bar{\phi}.$$

(check this!) However, it is even easier to use the relationships

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{a}(k, t) &= -a(-k, t) = -a(-k, 0) = \bar{a}(k, 0), \\ \bar{b}(k, t) &= b(-k, t) = b(-k, 0)e^{-8i(-k)^3 t} = \bar{b}(k, 0)e^{8ik^3 t}.\end{aligned}$$

In summary, we have found that the time-dependence of the scattering data for the KdV equation is governed by

$$\begin{aligned}a(k, t) &= a(k, 0), & b(k, t) &= b(k, 0)e^{-8ik^3 t}, \\ \bar{a}(k, t) &= \bar{a}(k, 0), & \bar{b}(k, t) &= \bar{b}(k, 0)e^{8ik^3 t}.\end{aligned}$$

13.4.2 Example: the delta function potential

As an example, consider again the delta function potential

$$u = \alpha \delta(x).$$

Using the above, the scattering data for all time is given by

$$\begin{aligned}a(k, t) &= \frac{\alpha + 2ik}{2ik}, & b(k, t) &= -\frac{\alpha}{2ik}e^{-8ik^3 t}, \\ \bar{a}(k, t) &= \frac{\alpha - 2ik}{2ik}, & \bar{b}(k, t) &= \frac{\alpha}{2ik}e^{8ik^3 t}.\end{aligned}$$

Summarizing again: suppose we wish to solve the KdV equation with delta-function initial condition

$$u(x, t = 0) = \alpha \delta(x).$$

As a first step, we solve the forward scattering problem and determine the scattering data $a(k, 0)$, $b(k, 0)$, $\bar{a}(k, 0)$ and $\bar{b}(k, 0)$. Next, the evolution of the scattering data is determined, as above. These are the scattering data if one were to solve the forward scattering problem with the KdV solution $u(x, t)$ evolving from the given initial condition.

13.5 The inverse problem

13.5.1 Scalar Riemann-Hilbert problems

Before we proceed with the description of the inverse problem in the method of inverse scattering, we need to define Riemann-Hilbert problems. For the purpose of solving the inverse problem associated with the KdV equation, we are only concerned with scalar Riemann-Hilbert problems, *i.e.*, the function to be determined is scalar. In the more general setting of matrix Riemann-Hilbert problems one attempts to solve for an unknown matrix.

Consider a contour C in the complex plane, and two functions $f(z)$ and $g(z)$ specified on it. Then the problem

$$\phi_+ - g(z)\phi_- = f(z)$$

asks one to find two functions $\phi_+(z)$ and $\phi_-(z)$ with the additional requirements that $\phi_+(z)$ is analytic on one side of C and $\phi_-(z)$ is analytic on the other side of C .

Historically, problems like this were first posed by Riemann, to be formalized more by Hilbert, who made the question of analyzing them one of his 23 famous problems. It may seem counterintuitive that two functions may be obtained from one equation, but such is the power of requiring analyticity. Below we will see how a Riemann-Hilbert problem specific to the KdV scattering problem may be solved.

13.5.2 The fundamental equation

The inverse scattering problem starts from the fundamental equation

$$\frac{M(x, k)}{a(k)} = \bar{N}(x, k) + \frac{b(k)}{a(k)} e^{2ikx} \bar{N}(x, -k).$$

The following properties show that the fundamental equation is a Riemann-Hilbert problem with the real line playing the role of the curve C . Actually, it is not quite in the form given above, but the slight discrepancy in form will not hurt us, as shown below. These properties are given here (for now) without proof.

- $M(x, k)$ and $a(k)$ are analytic functions of k in the upper-half k -plane $\Im(k) > 0$. Both $M(x, k)$ and $a(k) \rightarrow 1$ as $|k| \rightarrow \infty$ in the upper-half plane.
- $\bar{N}(x, k)$ is analytic in the lower-half k -plane, $\Im(k) < 0$, and $\bar{N}(x, k) \rightarrow 1$ as $|k| \rightarrow \infty$ in the lower-half plane.

The proof of these very important results follows from the integral equations satisfied by the Jost functions $M(x, k)$ and $\bar{N}(x, k)$. These integral equations are derived from the differential equations these functions satisfy. A Picard iteration may be used to determine that the functions are bounded as functions of k in their respective domains of claimed analyticity. Then a derivative with respect to k is taken to obtain the integral equation

satisfied by the functions differentiated with respect to k . Again, the integral equation is used to establish these derivatives are bounded in the claimed domains. Since both the functions and their derivatives are bounded, the functions are analytic in their stated domains. These properties are summarized in Fig. 13.4.

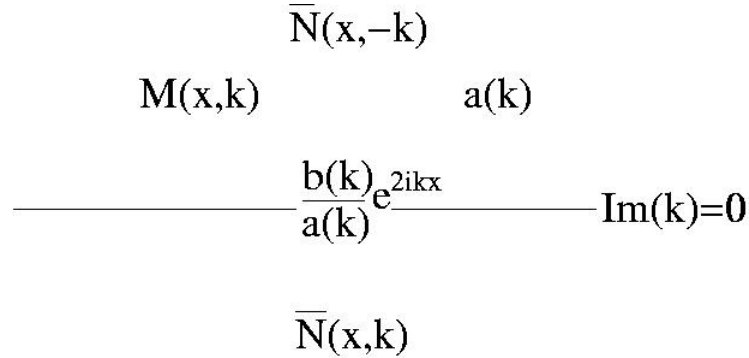


Figure 13.4: The regions of analyticity of the functions appearing in the fundamental equation. The expression $b(k)e^{2ikx}/a(k)$ is known on the real axis.

It is clear from the fundamental equation that the zeros of $a(k)$ play an important role. We do not prove this here, but it is known that all such zeros are simple, and that they are all on the imaginary axis.

13.5.3 The projection operators

Our main tools for solving the above Riemann-Hilbert-like problem are the **projection operators** P^+ and P^- : for any integrable function $f(k) \rightarrow 0$ as $|k| \rightarrow \infty$, $k \in \mathbb{C}$, we define

$$\begin{aligned} (P^\pm f)(k) &= \lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{f(\xi)}{\xi - (k \pm i\epsilon)} d\xi \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{f(\xi)}{\xi - (k \pm i0)} d\xi, \end{aligned}$$

with $\epsilon > 0$. The last equality is purely notational: the $\pm i0$ simply denotes a limit process is implied.

First, let us show why these operators are referred to as projection operators. Consider a function $f(z)$, analytic in the upper half plane. Then

$$(P^+ f)(k) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{f(\xi)}{\xi - (k + i0)} d\xi.$$

We wish to use the residue theorem to calculate this integral. To do so, we need to close the integral using a large semi-circle, whose radius $\rightarrow \infty$. Since $f(\xi)$ is only defined in the upper-half k -plane, this semi-circle is chosen to lie there. The contribution from this semi-circle vanishes, as its radius approaches infinity, since $f(k) \rightarrow 0$ as $|k| \rightarrow \infty$ in the upper-half plane. Then

$$(P^+ f)(k) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{C_{UHP}} \frac{f(\xi)}{\xi - (k + i0)} d\xi,$$

for $k \in \mathbb{R}$. Here C_{UHP} denotes the closed contour around the upper-half plane, in a counter-clockwise sense. By the residue theorem, this integral divided by $2\pi i$ equals the sum of the residues of the poles enclosed by this contour. Since $f(\xi)$ is analytic inside the contour, all such poles are obtained from the zeros of the denominator of the integral. There is only one such zero, at $\xi = k + i0$, which is indeed in the upper-half plane (since k is on the real line). Thus

$$(P^+ f)(k) = f(k + i0) = f(k).$$

(If the reader is uncomfortable with the $\pm i0$ notation he/she would be wise to repeat the exercise with ϵ in place, followed by an explicit limit process.) In other words, the action of the operator P^+ on a function analytic in the upper-half plane is the identity operation. Similarly, using f_+ and f_- to denote functions analytic in the upper- and lower-half planes, one finds

$$\begin{aligned} (P^\pm f_\pm)(k) &= \pm f_\pm(k), \\ (P^\pm f_\mp)(k) &= 0, \end{aligned}$$

justifying the name projection operator.

13.5.4 An integral equation for $N(x, k)$.

Let us rewrite the fundamental equation:

$$\left(\frac{M(x, k)}{a(k)} - 1 \right) - (\bar{N}(x, k) - 1) = \frac{b(k)}{a(k)} e^{2ikx} \bar{N}(x, -k).$$

Both terms in the parentheses $\rightarrow 0$ as $|k| \rightarrow \infty$, in regions where the functions are defined. Now we apply the operator P^- to this equation:

$$\begin{aligned} P^- \left(\frac{M(x, k)}{a(k)} - 1 \right) - P^- (\bar{N}(x, k) - 1) &= P^- \left(\frac{b(k)}{a(k)} e^{2ikx} \bar{N}(x, -k) \right) \\ \Rightarrow (\bar{N}(x, k) - 1) &= P^- \left(\frac{b(k)}{a(k)} e^{2ikx} \bar{N}(x, -k) \right). \end{aligned}$$

Assuming that $a(k)$ has no zeros, the first term vanishes because it is analytic in the upper-half plane, while the second-term is recovered (up to a sign) due to its analyticity in the lower-half plane. We obtain

$$\bar{N}(x, k) = 1 + \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{b(\xi)}{a(\xi)} \frac{e^{2i\xi x} \bar{N}(x, -\xi)}{\xi - (k - i0)} d\xi,$$

but $e^{2i\xi x} \bar{N}(x, -\xi) = N(x, \xi)$ and $\bar{N}(x, k) = N(x, -k)e^{2ikx}$, thus

$$\bar{N}(x, k) = N(x, -k)e^{2ikx} = 1 + \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{b(\xi)}{a(\xi)} \frac{N(x, \xi)}{(\xi - k + i0)} d\xi. \quad (13.1)$$

Evaluating this equation at $-k$ instead of k gives

$$N(x, k) = e^{2ikx} \left(1 + \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{b(\xi)}{a(\xi)} \frac{N(x, \xi)}{(\xi + k + i0)} d\xi \right). \quad (13.2)$$

This is the desired linear integral equation for $N(x, k)$. Solving it results in $N(x, k, t)$ (provided $a(k, t)$ and $b(k, t)$ are used as inputs), from which $M(x, k, t)$ and the other Jost functions may be recovered.

13.5.5 Reconstructing $u(x, t)$

The final step of the inverse problem consists in the reconstruction of $u(x)$. A naive approach is to use the differential equation

$$\psi_{xx} + (u + k^2)\psi = 0$$

directly. Indeed, once $N(x, k)$ has been recovered, we can recover $\bar{N}(x, k)$, using $\bar{N}(x, k) = e^{2ikx} N(x, -k)$. With $\bar{N}(x, k)$ determined, the fundamental equation allows us to find $M(x, k)$, since $a(k)$ and $b(k)$ are known from the solution of the forward problem. Having determined the Jost functions, we easily reconstruct the eigenfunctions $\phi(x, k)$, *etc.* From the differential equation,

$$u(x) = -k^2 - \frac{\psi_{xx}}{\psi},$$

where $\psi(x, k)$ is any eigenfunction. For instance, we may use $\psi(x, k) = \phi(x, k)$. This solves the inverse problem, in principle. In practice, this is a lousy solution: the potential $u(x)$ does not depend on k , and, therefore, neither does $-k^2 - \psi_{xx}/\psi$. Thus, the dependence on k of this right-hand side has to vanish. Theoretically, this does happen indeed. Nevertheless, this approach has serious disadvantages. Unless $u(x)$ is chosen from a small set of potentials for which the forward problem and the integral equation for $N(x, k)$ can be solved in closed form, we have to solve the forward problem and the integral equation numerically. Using the above reconstruction formula for $u(x)$ will result in a different answer, depending on which value of k is used. Clearly, this is unsatisfactory. A better approach is described here now.

The large k asymptotics of $N(x, k)$ from the first integral equation

We consider (13.1) for large values of k . We have

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{N}(x, k) &\sim 1 - \frac{1}{2\pi i k} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{b(\xi)}{a(\xi)} \frac{N(x, \xi)}{1 - \xi/k} d\xi \\ &\sim 1 - \frac{1}{2\pi i k} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{b(\xi)}{a(\xi)} N(x, \xi) d\xi + \mathcal{O}(k^{-2}).\end{aligned}\tag{13.3}$$

The large k asymptotics of $N(x, k)$ from the second integral equation

A second integral equation exists for the Jost functions. This is the integral equation mentioned earlier, used to establish the regions of analyticity of these different Jost functions. The coefficients of the kernel of that equation are given in terms of $u(x, t)$. We work with the Jost function $\bar{N}(x, k)$ as its asymptotic behavior for large x is constant. We have

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{N}_{xx} - 2ik\bar{N}_x &= -u\bar{N} \\ \Rightarrow e^{-2ikx}\bar{N}_{xx} - 2ike^{-2ikx}\bar{N}_x &= -e^{-2ikx}u\bar{N} \\ \Rightarrow (e^{-2ikx}\bar{N}_x)_x &= -e^{-2ikx}u\bar{N} \\ \Rightarrow e^{-2ikx}\bar{N}_x &= -\int_{\infty}^x e^{-2ikz}u(z)\bar{N}(z, k)dz \\ \Rightarrow \bar{N}_x &= -\int_{\infty}^x e^{2ikx-2ikz}u(z)\bar{N}(z, k)dz \\ \Rightarrow \bar{N}(x, k) &= 1 - \int_{\infty}^x dy \int_{\infty}^y dz e^{2ik(y-z)}u(z)M(z, k) \\ &= 1 - \int_x^{\infty} dy \int_y^{\infty} dz e^{2ik(y-z)}u(z)M(z, k)\end{aligned}$$

Note that we have already incorporated the boundary conditions satisfied by $\bar{N}(x, k)$ and its derivative at ∞ . This is a second integral equation satisfied by $\bar{N}(x, k)$. We can simplify it quite significantly by switching the order of the integrations: since $u(z)$ and $\bar{N}(z, k)$ do not depend on y , they will move out of the inside integral once we switch the order. The remaining inside integral will only depend on known functions, and may be explicitly integrated, leaving us with only the outside integral. Switching the order of the integrations is easily done using Fig. 13.5. The order given above corresponds to (i) for a fixed y , integrate over the infinite range of z values, followed by (ii) integrate over the infinite range of y values. This results in the integral bounds given above. Switching the order corresponds to (i) for a

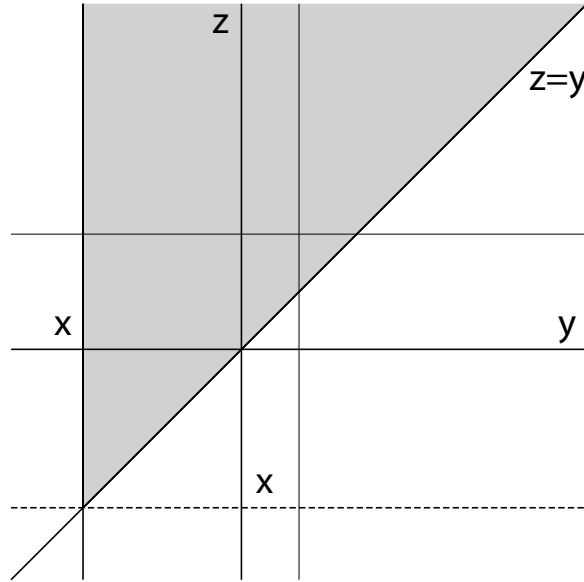


Figure 13.5: The domain of integration for the double integral in the integral equation for $\bar{N}(x, k)$.

fixed z , integrate over the finite range of y values, followed by (ii) integrate over the infinite range of z values.

As shown in the figure, switching the order of integration results in

$$\begin{aligned}
 \bar{N}(x, k) &= 1 - \int_x^\infty dz \int_x^z dy e^{2ik(y-z)} u(z) \bar{N}(z, k) \\
 &= 1 - \int_x^\infty u(z) M(z, k) dz \int_x^z e^{2ik(y-z)} dy \\
 &= 1 - \int_x^\infty u(z) M(z, k) \frac{e^{2ik(y-z)}}{2ik} \Big|_{y=x}^{y=z} dz \\
 &= 1 - \int_x^\infty u(z) M(z, k) \frac{1 - e^{2ik(x-z)}}{2ik} dz \\
 \Rightarrow \quad \bar{N}(x, k) &= 1 + \int_x^\infty \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1}{2ik} u(z) M(z, k) dz.
 \end{aligned}$$

Using this new, much improved form of the second integral equation for $\bar{N}(x, k)$, we investigate the behavior of $\bar{N}(x, k)$ for large k . We have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \bar{N}(x, k) &= 1 + \int_x^\infty u(z) \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1}{2ik} \bar{N}(z, k) dz \\
 &= 1 + \frac{1}{2ik} \int_x^\infty u(z) (e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1) dz \left(1 + \frac{1}{2ik} \int_z^\infty u(y) (e^{2ik(z-y)} - 1) \bar{N}(y, k) dy \right) \\
 &= 1 + \frac{1}{2ik} \int_x^\infty u(z) (e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1) dz + \mathcal{O}(k^{-2}) \\
 &= 1 - \frac{1}{2ik} \int_x^\infty u(z) dz + \mathcal{O}(k^{-2}), \tag{13.4}
 \end{aligned}$$

and the contribution from the exponential vanishes for large k , due to the Riemann-Lebeque Lemma.

Equating the coefficients of the $1/k$ terms in the asymptotic expansions (13.3) and (13.4) gives

$$\begin{aligned}
 -\frac{1}{2i} \int_x^\infty u(z) dz &= -\frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{-\infty}^\infty \frac{b(k)}{a(k)} N(x, k) dk \\
 \Rightarrow \quad u(x) &= -\frac{1}{\pi} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \int_{-\infty}^\infty \frac{b(k)}{a(k)} N(x, k) dk,
 \end{aligned}$$

or, if we wish to make the t -dependence explicit,

$$u(x, t) = -\frac{1}{\pi} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \int_{-\infty}^\infty \frac{b(k, t)}{a(k)} N(x, k, t) dk. \tag{13.5}$$

Thus, once $a(k)$ and $b(k, t)$ are known, and $N(x, k, t)$ is known from solving its first integral equation, the solution of the KdV equation for all time t may be found from the above reconstruction formula.

13.5.6 The zeros of $a(k)$

It has been clear on a number of occasions that the zeros of $a(k)$ play an important role. Since the time dependence of $a(k, t) = a(k, 0)$ is trivial, these zeros are fixed in the complex k -plane. We will not do this here, but one can show that there is a finite number of zeros, all of which are simple. They are all contained on the positive imaginary axis. In this section we examine how the reconstruction formula for $u(x, t)$ and the integral equation for $N(x, k, t)$ need to be modified to take into account the zeros of $a(k)$.

- **New projection operators.** We modify the definition of the projection operators P^+ and P^- : for any integrable function $f(k) \rightarrow 0$ as $|k| \rightarrow \infty$, $k \in \mathbb{C}$, we define

$$\begin{aligned} (P^\pm f)(k) &= \lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_C \frac{f(\xi)}{\xi - (k_\pm \epsilon)} d\xi \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_C \frac{f(\xi)}{\xi - k_\pm} d\xi, \end{aligned}$$

with $\epsilon > 0$. As before, the last equality is notational, implying the presence of a limit. Here C is a path from $-\infty$ on the real line to $+\infty$ on the real line, going above all the zeros of $a(k)$, see Figure 13.6. As indicated, such a contour may be deformed to a contour C' , from which we can rewrite the integral over C as an integral over the real line minus a sum of residues of the integrand at the zeros of $a(k)$. Further, the quantity $k_{\pm\epsilon}$ is a function of ϵ which limits to k as $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$, while staying on the same side of C : “above” for P^+ , “below” for P^- .

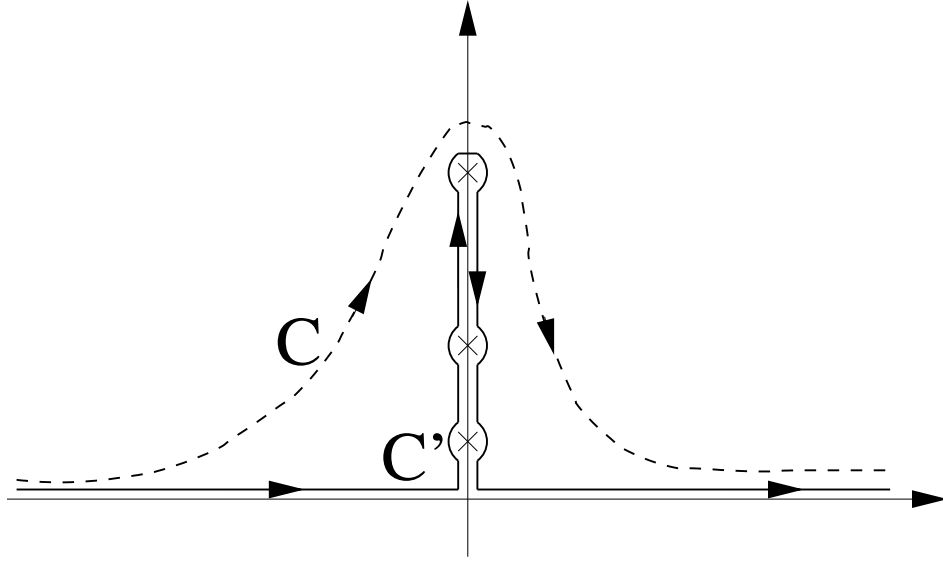


Figure 13.6: The contour of integration for the projection operators if a has any zeros.

Consider a function $f(z)$, analytic above C . Then

$$(P^+ f)(k) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_C \frac{f(\xi)}{\xi - k_+} d\xi,$$

for $k \in C$. We use the residue theorem to calculate this integral. To do so, we close the integral using a large semi-circle, whose radius $\rightarrow \infty$. Since $f(\xi)$ is defined above C ,

this semi-circle is chosen to lie there. The contribution from this semi-circle vanishes, as its radius approaches infinity, since $f(k) \rightarrow 0$ as $|k| \rightarrow \infty$ in the upper-half plane. Then

$$(P^+ f)(k) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{C_{UHP}} \frac{f(\xi)}{\xi - k_+} d\xi.$$

As before, C_{UHP} denotes the closed contour around the upper-half plane, in a counter-clockwise sense. Using the Residue Theorem,

$$(P^+ f)(k) = f(k_+) = f(k).$$

In other words, the action of the operator P^+ on a function analytic in the upper-half plane is the identity operation. Similarly, using f_+ and f_- to denote functions analytic above and below C , one finds

$$\begin{aligned} (P^\pm f_\pm)(k) &= \pm f_\pm(k), \\ (P^\pm f_\mp)(k) &= 0, \end{aligned}$$

very much like before. The generalized projection operators are referred to as Cauchy transforms.

• **A new integral equation for $N(x, k, t)$.**

The fundamental equation is rewritten as before:

$$\left(\frac{M(x, k)}{a(k)} - 1 \right) - (\bar{N}(x, k) - 1) = \frac{b(k)}{a(k)} e^{2ikx} \bar{N}(x, -k).$$

The term $M(x, k)/a(k) - 1$ is analytic above C . We apply the operator P^- to the equation to obtain

$$\bar{N}(x, k) - 1 = P^- \left(\frac{b(k)}{a(k)} e^{2ikx} \bar{N}(x, -k) \right).$$

We write out the right-hand side, as before, and obtain

$$N(x, k) = e^{2ikx} \left(1 + \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_C \frac{b(\xi)}{a(\xi)} \frac{N(x, \xi)}{(\xi + k_+)} d\xi \right).$$

Note that the substitution $k \rightarrow -k$ gives rise to the appearance of k_+ instead of the perhaps more expected k_- . Writing out the residue contributions from the zeros of $a(k)$ explicitly, we have

$$N(x, k) = e^{2ikx} \left(1 + \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{b(\xi)}{a(\xi)} \frac{N(x, \xi)}{(\xi + k + i0)} d\xi - \sum_{j=1}^n \frac{b(i\kappa_j)}{a'(i\kappa_j)} \frac{N(x, i\kappa_j)}{i\kappa_j + k} \right), \quad (13.6)$$

where n denotes the number of zeros of $a(k)$, and $\{i\kappa_j, j = 1, \dots, n\}$ are these zeros: $a(i\kappa_j) = 0$, with $\kappa_j > 0$, $j = 1, \dots, n$. Also, we have used the notation $a'(k)$ to denote the derivative of $a(k)$ with respect to k . Since $a(k)$ does not depend on t , no confusion is possible. This linear integral equation for $N(x, k)$ is the desired generalization of (13.2). The equation should be supplemented by the relations obtained by substituting $k = i\kappa_j$, $j = 1, \dots, n$, so as to obtain as many equations as there are unknowns. Explicitly, these relations are

$$N(x, i\kappa_j) = e^{-2\kappa_j x} \left(1 + \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{b(\xi)}{a(\xi)} \frac{N(x, \xi)}{(\xi + i\kappa_j)} d\xi - \sum_{l=1}^n \frac{b(i\kappa_l)}{a'(i\kappa_l)} \frac{N(x, i\kappa_l)}{i\kappa_l + i\kappa_j} \right), \quad (13.7)$$

for $j = 1, \dots, n$. These n equations and (13.6) are to be solved for the $n + 1$ unknowns $N(x, k)$ ($k \in \mathbb{R}$), $\{N(x, i\kappa_j)\}, j = 1, \dots, n$.

- **The norming constants.** From the integral equation (13.6) for $N(x, k)$, it is clear that the input of the scattering data $\{a(k), b(k), k \in \mathbb{R}\}$ is not sufficient to solve the inverse scattering problem. We also need to know the zeros $i\kappa_j$ of $a(k)$, and the value of $b(k)/a'(k)$ at these zeros. The values $B_j = b(i\kappa_j)/a'(i\kappa_j)$, $j = 1, \dots, n$ are known as the norming constants.

Thus, we may consider the forward scattering problem solved, once we have determined the functions $a(k)$ and $b(k)$ for real k , and the values $B_j = b(i\kappa_j)/a'(i\kappa_j)$, corresponding to the values of $b(k)/a'(k)$ at the n zeros of $a(k)$ in the upper-half plane. In this second part of the last sentence, the expressions $a(k)$, $b(k)$, and $a'(k)$ denote the analytic continuations in the upper-half plane of their counterparts on the real line.

- **The time dependence of the norming constants.**

The time dependence of the norming constants follows equally straightforward as that of the other scattering data. From

$$\psi \sim e^{4ik^3 t} (a(k)e^{-ikx} + b(k, t)e^{ikx}),$$

with $\psi = \exp(4ik^3t)\phi$, as before. This expression is valid for $x \rightarrow \infty$. Evaluating at $k = i\kappa_j$, where $a(i\kappa_j) = 0$, we have

$$\psi \sim e^{4\kappa_j^3 t - \kappa_j x} b(i\kappa_j).$$

Using that $\psi_t \sim 4\psi_{xxx}$, for $x \rightarrow \infty$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \psi_t &\sim 4\kappa_j^3 e^{4\kappa_j^3 t - \kappa_j x} b(i\kappa_j) + e^{4\kappa_j^3 t - \kappa_j x} b_t(i\kappa_j) \\ \text{and} \quad 4\psi_{xxx} &\sim -4\kappa_j^3 e^{4\kappa_j^3 t - \kappa_j x} b(i\kappa_j), \\ \Rightarrow \quad b_t(i\kappa_j) &= -8\kappa_j^3 b(i\kappa_j) \end{aligned}$$

so that

$$b(i\kappa_j, t) = b(i\kappa_j, 0) e^{-8\kappa_j^3 t}.$$

Since $a(i\kappa_j)$ does not depend on t , it follows that the time dependence of the norming constants is given by

$$B_j(t) = B_j(0) e^{-8\kappa_j^3 t}.$$

• **A new reconstruction formula for $u(x, t)$.**

It follows from the generalized integral equation for $N(x, k, t)$ that the reconstruction formula for $u(x, t)$ needs to be modified to read

$$\begin{aligned} u(x, t) &= -\frac{1}{\pi} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \int_C \frac{b(k, t)}{a(k, t)} N(x, k, t) dk \\ &= -\frac{1}{\pi} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{b(k, t)}{a(k, t)} N(x, k, t) dk + 2i \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \sum_{k=1}^n B_j(t) N(x, i\kappa_j, t). \end{aligned}$$

Remark. Note that the presence of the zeros of $a(k)$ forces us to use an analytic extension of $N(x, k, t)$ in the upper half of the complex k plane. It is not clear from the calculations done thus far, or from those in Section 13.7 that such an analytic continuation exists. In fact, more restrictive conditions on the function space of allowable initial conditions $u(x)$ need to be imposed in order for this to be possible.

13.5.7 The delta function potential

As an example, consider the delta-function potential problem again. Here we have

$$a(k, t) = \frac{\alpha + 2ik}{2ik}, \quad b(k, t) = -\frac{\alpha}{2ik} e^{-8ik^3 t}.$$

As stated, $a(k)$ has zeros only on the positive imaginary axis: $n = 1$ and $i\kappa_1 = i\alpha/2$. We have $B_1(t) = b(i\kappa_1, t)/a'(\kappa_1) = i\alpha \exp(-\alpha^3 t)/2$. This conclusion holds for $\alpha > 0$. If $\alpha < 0$, $a(k)$ has no zeros on the positive imaginary axis, and the summation term in the reconstruction formula vanishes. With $\alpha > 0$ the above reconstruction formula becomes

$$u(x, t) = \frac{\alpha}{\pi} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-8ik^3 t}}{\alpha + 2ik} N(x, k, t) dk - \alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial x} e^{-\alpha^3 t} N(x, i\alpha/2, t),$$

where $N(x, k, t)$ is determined by the integral equation

$$N(x, k, t) = e^{2ikx} \left(1 + \frac{\alpha}{2\pi i} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-8i\xi^3 t} N(x, \xi, t)}{(\alpha + 2i\xi)(\xi + k + i0)} d\xi - \frac{i\alpha}{2} \frac{N(x, i\alpha/2, t)}{i\alpha/2 + k} \right),$$

supplemented with

$$N(x, i\alpha/2, t) = e^{-\alpha x} \left(1 - \frac{\alpha}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-8i\xi^3 t} N(x, \xi, t)}{4\xi^2 + \alpha^2} d\xi - \frac{1}{2} N(x, i\alpha/2, t) \right).$$

It is not immediately clear that the second term in the reconstruction formula gives rise to a soliton, but it does appear that this term will contain exponential terms, whereas the integral has an oscillatory kernel, which gives rise to dispersive decay (as in the method of stationary phase) as $t \rightarrow \infty$.

Let us summarize our example again: suppose we wish to solve the KdV equation with delta-function initial condition

$$u(x, t = 0) = \alpha \delta(x).$$

As a first step, we solve the forward scattering problem and determine the scattering data $a(k)$, $b(k, 0)$, $\bar{a}(k)$ and $\bar{b}(k, 0)$. Assuming $\alpha > 0$, it is clear that the analytic extension of $a(k)$ has exactly one zero in the upper-half plane, $k = i\alpha/2$. We determine the value of the norming constant corresponding to this root to be $B_1 = i\alpha/2$. Next, the evolution of the scattering data and the norming constants is determined, in a rather trivial way, as shown before. These are the scattering data and the norming constant if one were to solve the forward scattering problem with the KdV solution $u(x, t)$ evolving from the given initial condition. Using these time-dependent scattering data, the integral equations for the Jost function $N(x, k, t)$ and the value of its analytic continuation at $i\alpha/2$ may be solved, allowing for the reconstruction of the solution of the KdV equation for all time t .

13.6 Soliton solutions

The inverse scattering method provides an efficient way to calculate and characterize soliton solutions of the KdV equation. This is demonstrated in this section.

13.6.1 The one-soliton solution

Suppose that the scattering data are so that

$$\frac{b(k)}{a(k)} = \frac{B(t)}{k - i\kappa} = \frac{B(0)}{k - i\kappa} e^{-8\kappa^3 t},$$

but $b(k)/a(k) = 0$ for $k \in \mathbb{R}$. Here $\kappa > 0$, and $B(0)$ is an arbitrary constant. Then, from (13.6) and (13.7) we have that

$$\begin{aligned} N(x, k, t) &= e^{2ikx} \left(1 - \frac{B(t)}{i\kappa + k} N(x, i\kappa, t) \right), \\ \text{and} \quad N(x, i\kappa, t) &= e^{-2\kappa x} \left(1 - \frac{B(t)}{2i\kappa} N(x, i\kappa, t) \right). \end{aligned}$$

It follows from the second equation that

$$N(x, i\kappa) = \frac{e^{-2\kappa x}}{1 + e^{-2\kappa(x-x_0)-8\kappa^3 t}},$$

where the constant x_0 is defined by

$$B(0) = 2i\kappa e^{2\kappa x_0}.$$

This allows us to write down an explicit expression for $N(x, k, t)$. More importantly, we may reconstruct $u(x, t)$:

$$\begin{aligned} u(x, t) &= 2i\partial_x (B(t)N(x, i\kappa, t)) \\ &= -4\kappa\partial_x \frac{e^{-2\kappa(x-x_0)-8\kappa^3 t}}{1 + e^{-2\kappa(x-x_0)-8\kappa^3 t}} \\ &= -4\kappa\partial_x \frac{1}{e^{2\kappa(x-x_0)+8\kappa^3 t} + 1} \\ &= 8\kappa^2 \frac{e^{2\kappa(x-x_0)+8\kappa^3 t}}{(e^{2\kappa(x-x_0)+8\kappa^3 t} + 1)^2} \\ &= 8\kappa^2 \frac{1}{(e^{\kappa(x-x_0)+4\kappa^3 t} + e^{-\kappa(x-x_0)-4\kappa^3 t})^2} \\ &= 2\kappa^2 \operatorname{sech}^2 (\kappa(x - x_0) + 4\kappa^3 t), \end{aligned}$$

which is the familiar form for a one-soliton solution of the KdV equation. From the point of view of inverse scattering, a soliton solution corresponds to a potential for the time-independent Schrödinger equation for which $a(k)$ has exactly one zero at $i\kappa$, and where $b(k) \equiv 0$, for $k \in \mathbb{R}$. Thus, the location of the zero of $a(k)$ on the positive imaginary axis determines the amplitude, the width and the speed of the soliton.

13.6.2 The n -soliton solution

Proceeding analogously to the one-soliton case, we start with scattering data $b(k)/a(k)$ determined by

$$\frac{b(k)}{a(k)} = \sum_{j=1}^n \frac{B_j(t)}{k - i\kappa_j} = \sum_{j=1}^n \frac{B_j(0)e^{-8\kappa_j^3 t}}{k - i\kappa_j},$$

but $b(k)/a(k) = 0$ on the real k axis. Then, from (13.6) we have that

$$N(x, k, t) = e^{2ikx} \left(1 - \sum_{l=1}^n \frac{B_l(t)}{k + i\kappa_l} N(x, i\kappa_l, t) \right),$$

where the functions $N(x, i\kappa_l, t)$, for $l = 1, \dots, n$, are obtained from (13.7):

$$N(x, i\kappa_j, t) = e^{-2\kappa_j x} \left(1 + \sum_{l=1}^n iB_l(t) \frac{N(x, i\kappa_l, t)}{\kappa_j + \kappa_l} \right),$$

for $j = 1, \dots, n$. We define

$$B_j(0) = 2i\kappa_j e^{2\kappa_j x_j},$$

so that

$$N(x, i\kappa_j, t) = e^{-2\kappa_j x} \left(1 - \sum_{l=1}^n \frac{2\kappa_l}{\kappa_l + \kappa_j} e^{2\kappa_l x_l - 8\kappa_l^3 t} N(x, i\kappa_l, t) \right), \quad \text{for } j = 1, \dots, n.$$

We may rewrite this as

$$N_j(x, t) + \sum_{l=1}^n \frac{2\kappa_l}{\kappa_l + \kappa_j} e^{-\theta_l(x, t)} N_l(x, t) = e^{-2\kappa_j x}, \quad \text{for } j = 1, \dots, n. \quad (13.8)$$

Here we have introduced the phases $\theta_l(x, t) = 2\kappa_l(x - x_l) - 8\kappa_l^3 t$, and the notation $N_j(x, t) = N(x, i\kappa_j, t)$. The equations (13.8) form a linear system of n equations for the n unknowns $N_j(x, t)$, $j = 1, \dots, n$. Once this linear system is solved, we may reconstruct $u(x, t)$, using

$$\begin{aligned}
u &= 2i\partial_x \sum_{j=1}^n B_j(t) N_j(x, t) \\
&= -4\partial_x \sum_{j=1}^n \kappa_j e^{2\kappa_j x_j - 8\kappa_j^3 t} N_j(x, t).
\end{aligned}$$

A few remarks are in order.

- The problem of constructing n -soliton solutions explicitly reduces to linear algebra. Specifically, we are required to solve an $n \times n$ linear system.
- Since the n solitons separate asymptotically, it is correct to say that each zero $i\kappa_j$ of $a(k)$ corresponds to a soliton, determining its amplitude, width and speed.

13.7 The analyticity properties of the scattering data

In order to use the fundamental equation as the starting point for the inverse scattering, we relied heavily on the analyticity properties of the scattering data and the Jost functions in different parts of the complex k -plane. We show how to establish these properties in this section.

13.7.1 The analyticity properties of $M(x, k)$

We have defined the first Jost function as

$$M(x, k) = e^{ikx} \phi(x),$$

so that

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} M(x, k) = 1.$$

We will assume that this limit is uniform, so that the derivatives with respect to x of $M(x, k)$ all approach 0 as $|x| \rightarrow \infty$. Also, we know that $M(x, k)$ satisfies the ordinary differential equation

$$M_{xx} - 2ikM_x + uM = 0.$$

The integral equation for $M(x, k)$

We start by rewriting the above differential equation for $M(x, k)$ as an integral equation. We will incorporate the boundary condition for $M(x, k)$ at the same time.

A lot of the philosophy of forward scattering is to regard the influence of $u(x)$ (again suppressing the t dependence, which is irrelevant for the forward and inverse scattering

steps) as a perturbation to the constant coefficient behavior as $|x| \rightarrow \infty$. We continue that here. For starters, we move the term with $u(x)$ to the right-hand side, allowing us to think of it as a forcing.

$$\begin{aligned}
& M_{xx} - 2ikM_x = -uM \\
\Rightarrow & e^{-2ikx} M_{xx} - 2ike^{-2ikx} M_x = -e^{-2ikx} uM \\
\Rightarrow & (e^{-2ikx} M_x)_x = -e^{-2ikx} uM \\
\Rightarrow & e^{-2ikx} M_x = - \int_{-\infty}^x e^{-2ikz} u(z) M(z, k) dz \\
\Rightarrow & M_x = - \int_{-\infty}^x e^{2ikx-2ikz} u(z) M(z, k) dz \\
\Rightarrow & M(x, k) = 1 - \int_{-\infty}^x dy \int_{-\infty}^y dz e^{2ik(y-z)} u(z) M(z, k).
\end{aligned}$$

Note that we have already incorporated the boundary conditions satisfied by $M(x, k)$ and its derivative at $-\infty$. This is an integral equation satisfied by $M(x, k)$. We can simplify it quite significantly by switching the order of the integrations: since $u(z)$ and $M(z, k)$ do not depend on y , they will move out of the inside integral once we switch the order. The remaining inside integral will only depend on known functions, and may be explicitly integrated, leaving us with only the outside integral. Switching the order of the integrations is easily done using Fig. 13.7. The order given above corresponds to (i) for a fixed y , integrate over the infinite range of z values, followed by (ii) integrate over the infinite range of y values. This results in the integral bounds given above. Switching the order corresponds to (i) for a fixed z , integrate over the finite range of y values, followed by (ii) integrate over the infinite range of z values.

As shown in the figure, switching the order of integration results in

$$\begin{aligned}
& M(x, k) = 1 - \int_{-\infty}^x dz \int_z^x dy e^{2ik(y-z)} u(z) M(z, k) \\
\Rightarrow & M(x, k) = 1 - \int_{-\infty}^x u(z) M(z, k) dz \int_z^x e^{2ik(y-z)} dy \\
\Rightarrow & M(x, k) = 1 - \int_{-\infty}^x u(z) M(z, k) \left. \frac{e^{2ik(y-z)}}{2ik} \right|_{y=z}^{y=x} dz \\
\Rightarrow & M(x, k) = 1 - \int_{-\infty}^x u(z) M(z, k) \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1}{2ik} dz \\
\Rightarrow & M(x, k) = 1 - \int_{-\infty}^x \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1}{2ik} u(z) M(z, k) dz.
\end{aligned}$$

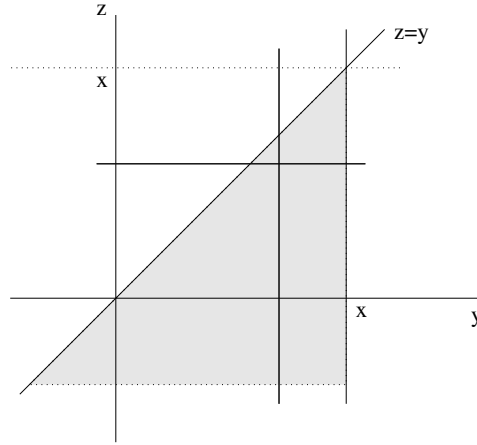


Figure 13.7: The domain of integration for the double integral in the integral equation for $M(x, k)$.

This is the second, much improved, form of the integral equation satisfied by $M(x, k)$. It will be the starting point for establishing any analyticity properties of $M(x, k)$. In order to establish where $M(x, k)$ is analytic, we find out where it is bounded, and where its derivative $\partial M/\partial k$ is bounded. Recall that if a function and its derivative are bounded in a region of the complex plane, then that function is analytic in that region. Since the kernel of the integral equation for $M(x, k)$ depends on $u(x)$, we expect that bounding $M(x, k)$ will result in conditions on $u(x)$. At long last, this will determine the function space of all functions $u(x)$ for which the inverse scattering procedure can be used to solve the initial-value problem for the KdV equation.

Bounding $M(x, k)$ using the integral equation

In order to establish bounds on $M(x, k)$, we first solve the integral equation by iteration, using

$$M(x, k) = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} M_j(x, k),$$

where $M_j(x, k)$ satisfies

$$M_j(x, k) = - \int_{-\infty}^x \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1}{2ik} u(z) M_{j-1}(z, k) dz,$$

for $j = 1, 2, \dots$. This is a recursion formula for $M_j(x, k)$, started by expressing $M_1(x, k)$ in terms of $M_0(x, k) \equiv 1$.

In what follows, we use the following two bounds:

Lemma. (i) If $\Im(k) > 0$ then

$$\left| \frac{e^{2ikx} - 1}{2ik} \right| \leq \frac{1}{|k|},$$

for all $x \geq 0$. Also, (ii) if $\Im(k) = 0$, then

$$\left| \frac{e^{2ikx} - 1}{2ik} \right| \leq |x|,$$

for $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

Proof. (i) The proof is straightforward: let $k = k_R + ik_I$, with $k_I > 0$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \frac{e^{2ikx} - 1}{2ik} \right| &= \left| \frac{e^{2ik_R x} e^{-2k_I x} - 1}{2ik} \right| \\ &\leq \frac{|e^{2ik_R x}| |e^{-2k_I x}| + 1}{2|k|} \\ &= \frac{|e^{-2k_I x}| + 1}{2|k|} \\ &\leq \frac{1 + 1}{2|k|} \\ &= \frac{1}{|k|}. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, for (ii) we have

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \frac{e^{2ikx} - 1}{2ik} \right| &= \left| \frac{e^{ikx} e^{ikx} - e^{-ikx}}{2ik} \right| \\ &= \left| \frac{e^{ikx} - e^{-ikx}}{2ik} \right| \\ &= \left| \frac{\sin kx}{k} \right| \\ &= |x| \left| \frac{\sin kx}{kx} \right| \\ &\leq |x|, \end{aligned}$$

since $|\sin \theta| \leq |\theta|$, for $\theta \in \mathbb{R}$. ■

With these bounds, we can establish bounds on the $M_j(x, k)$, for $j = 1, 2, \dots$. First we investigate what happens when $\Im(k) > 0$, so that we may use the first bound we established

above. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
 |M_1(x, k)| &= \left| - \int_{-\infty}^x \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1}{2ik} u(z) M_0(z, k) dz \right| \\
 &\leq \int_{-\infty}^x \left| \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1}{2ik} \right| |u(z)| dz \\
 &\leq \frac{1}{|k|} \int_{-\infty}^x |u(z)| dz = \frac{U(x)}{|k|},
 \end{aligned}$$

where we have defined

$$U(x) = \int_{-\infty}^x |u(z)| dz,$$

assuming that this integral is defined. Next,

$$\begin{aligned}
 |M_2(x, k)| &= \left| - \int_{-\infty}^x \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1}{2ik} u(z) M_1(z, k) dz \right| \\
 &\leq \int_{-\infty}^x \left| \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1}{2ik} \right| |u(z)| \frac{U(z)}{|k|} dz \\
 &\leq \frac{1}{|k|^2} \int_{-\infty}^x U'(z) U(z) dz = \frac{U^2(x)}{2|k|^2}.
 \end{aligned}$$

We have used that $U'(x) = |u(x)|$. Proceeding this way,

$$\begin{aligned}
 |M_3(x, k)| &= \left| - \int_{-\infty}^x \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1}{2ik} u(z) M_2(z, k) dz \right| \\
 &\leq \int_{-\infty}^x \left| \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1}{2ik} \right| |u(z)| \frac{U^2(z)}{2|k|^2} dz \\
 &\leq \frac{1}{2|k|^3} \int_{-\infty}^x U'(z) U^2(z) dz = \frac{U^3(x)}{3!|k|^3}.
 \end{aligned}$$

At this point, it is easy to see, and equally easy to establish using induction, that

$$|M_j(x, k)| \leq \frac{U^j(x)}{j!|k|^j},$$

for $j = 1, 2, \dots$. Putting all these bounds together, we obtain

$$|M(x, k)| \leq \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} |M_j(x, k)| \leq \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{U^j(x)}{j!|k|^j} = e^{U(x)/|k|}.$$

This allows us to immediately conclude that if

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |u(x)| dx = U(\infty) < \infty,$$

then

$$|M(x, k)| \leq e^{U(\infty)/|k|},$$

and $M(x, k)$ is uniformly bounded as a function of x . As a function of k , $M(x, k)$ is bounded in the upper-half plane, but the bound is not uniform. In fact, the bound blows up as the real line (in particular the origin) is approached. In the above, we have assumed from the start that we were operating in the upper-half plane. The reader should appreciate that the decision to consider the upper-half plane would have naturally come out of the exponential kernel and its dependence on k .

Bounding $\partial M(x, k)/\partial k$ using its integral equation

Since

$$M(x, k) = 1 - \int_{-\infty}^x \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1}{2ik} u(z) M(z, k) dz,$$

we find that

$$\frac{\partial M}{\partial k} = F(x, k) - \int_{-\infty}^x \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1}{2ik} u(z) \frac{\partial M}{\partial k}(z, k) dz,$$

where we have defined

$$F(x, k) = \int_{-\infty}^x \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1 - 2ik(x-z)e^{2ik(x-z)}}{2ik^2} u(z) M(z, k) dz.$$

Thus, $\partial M/\partial k$ satisfies an integral equation that is almost identical to the one $M(x, k)$ satisfies, except that the nonhomogeneous term is different. It should be clear that if we can provide a uniform-in- x bound for the nonhomogeneous term $F(x, k)$, then we have that

$$\left| \frac{\partial M}{\partial k} \right| \leq F_0(k) e^{U(\infty)/|k|},$$

where $F_0(k)$ is the uniform bound on $F(x, k)$: $|F(x, k)| < F_0(k)$. Let us proceed and find such a bound. We start by breaking $F(x, k)$ into two parts. It should be noted that the singularity $k = 0$ of the kernel of the integral defining $F(x, k)$ is removable. By writing the integral as the sum of two terms, each term has a kernel that is singular at $k = 0$. Although undesirable, this is not a major problem, as we are interested in a bound valid in the open upper half plane. Then, with $k = k_R + ik_I$ and $k_I > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned}
F(x, k) &= \int_{-\infty}^x \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1}{2ik^2} u(z) M(z, k) dz - \int_{-\infty}^x \frac{(x-z)e^{2ik(x-z)}}{k} u(z) M(z, k) dz \\
\Rightarrow |F(x, k)| &\leq \int_{-\infty}^x \frac{e^{-2k_I(x-z)} + 1}{2|k|^2} |u(z)| |M(z, k)| dz + \int_{-\infty}^x \frac{e^{-2k_I(x-z)}}{|k|} (x-z) |u(z)| |M(z, k)| dz \\
&\leq \frac{1}{|k|^2} \int_{-\infty}^x |u(z)| |M(z, k)| dz + \frac{1}{|k|} \int_{-\infty}^x (x-z) |u(z)| |M(z, k)| dz \\
&\leq \frac{1}{|k|^2} e^{U(\infty)/|k|} \int_{-\infty}^x |u(z)| dz + \frac{1}{|k|} e^{U(\infty)/|k|} \int_{-\infty}^x (x-z) |u(z)| dz \\
&= \frac{1}{|k|^2} e^{U(\infty)/|k|} U(x) + \frac{1}{|k|} e^{U(\infty)/|k|} V(x) \\
&\leq \frac{1}{|k|^2} e^{U(\infty)/|k|} U(\infty) + \frac{1}{|k|} e^{U(\infty)/|k|} V(\infty),
\end{aligned}$$

where we have defined

$$V(x) = \int_{-\infty}^x (x-z) |u(z)| dz,$$

which is a monotone increasing function of x . Thus, $\partial M / \partial k$ is bounded in the open upper-half plane provided that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |u(z)| dz < \infty \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-\infty}^x (x-z) |u(z)| dz < \infty.$$

The first of these conditions is not new: it was needed already to ensure the boundedness of $M(x, k)$ in the open upper-half plane. The second condition is new, and it provides an additional constraint on the allowable space of initial conditions for the KdV initial-value problem.

Bounding $M(x, k)$ for $k \in \mathbb{R}$

In order to apply the projection operators, as we did in using the fundamental equation, we need to ensure that $M(x, k)$ is bounded on the real axis. Thus, let $k \in \mathbb{R}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
|M_1(x, k)| &= \left| - \int_{-\infty}^x \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1}{2ik} u(z) M_0(z, k) dz \right| \\
&\leq \int_{-\infty}^x \left| \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1}{2ik} \right| |u(z)| dz \\
&\leq \int_{-\infty}^x (x-z) |u(z)| dz = V(x),
\end{aligned}$$

where we have used the bound $|(\exp(2ik(x-z)-1))/2ik| \leq |x-z|$, as previously established. Next,

$$\begin{aligned}
|M_2(x, k)| &= \left| - \int_{-\infty}^x \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1}{2ik} u(z) M_1(z, k) dz \right| \\
&\leq \int_{-\infty}^x \left| \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1}{2ik} \right| |u(z)| |M_1(z, k)| dz \\
&\leq \int_{-\infty}^x (x-z) |u(z)| dz \int_{-\infty}^z (z-y) |u(y)| dy \\
&\leq \int_{-\infty}^x (x-z) |u(z)| dz \int_{-\infty}^z (x-y) |u(y)| dy, \quad \text{since } x-y > z-y \\
&= \int_{-\infty}^x dz \frac{d}{dz} \left(\int_{-\infty}^z (x-y_1) |u(y_1)| dy_1 \right) \int_{-\infty}^z (x-y) |u(y)| dy \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \left(\int_{-\infty}^z (x-y) |u(y)| \right)^2 \Big|_{z=-\infty}^{z=x} \\
&= \frac{1}{2} V^2(x),
\end{aligned}$$

Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned}
|M_3(x, k)| &= \left| - \int_{-\infty}^x \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1}{2ik} u(z) M_2(z, k) dz \right| \\
&\leq \int_{-\infty}^x \left| \frac{e^{2ik(x-z)} - 1}{2ik} \right| |u(z)| |M_2(z, k)| dz \\
&\leq \int_{-\infty}^x (x-z) |u(z)| dz \frac{1}{2} \left(\int_{-\infty}^z (z-y) |u(y)| dy \right)^2 \\
&\leq \frac{1}{2} \int_{-\infty}^x (x-z) |u(z)| dz \left(\int_{-\infty}^z (x-y) |u(y)| dy \right)^2 \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \int_{-\infty}^x dz \frac{d}{dz} \left(\int_{-\infty}^z (x-y_1) |u(y_1)| dy_1 \right) \left(\int_{-\infty}^z (x-y) |u(y)| dy \right)^2 \\
&= \frac{1}{3!} \left(\int_{-\infty}^z (x-y) |u(y)| \right)^3 \Big|_{z=-\infty}^{z=x} \\
&= \frac{1}{3!} V^3(x).
\end{aligned}$$

Once again, we observe a pattern, which is easily proven by induction. We have

$$|M_j(x, k)| \leq \frac{V(x)^j}{j!},$$

so that

$$|M(x, k)| \leq e^{V(x)} \leq e^{V(\infty)},$$

provided that $V(\infty)$ is finite, we have established that $M(x, k)$ is uniformly bounded on the real axis. This condition was already encountered, thus no additional assumptions on $u(x)$ are necessary.

13.7.2 The function space of initial conditions

We have encountered two assumptions that the initial conditions need to satisfy in order for the forward and inverse scattering steps to be able to proceed:

1. $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |u(x)| dx < \infty$, and
2. $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-\infty}^x (x - z) |u(z)| dz < \infty$.

We provide some indications that these two conditions are equivalent to requiring that $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (1 + |x|) |u(x)| dx < \infty$.

Theorem. The initial-value problem for the KdV equation on the whole line, with initial condition $u(x)$, can be solved by the inverse scattering method, provided that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (1 + |x|) |u(x)| dx < \infty.$$

As stated, we do not prove that any $u(x)$ satisfying our assumptions also satisfies the new condition. Nor do we prove the reverse. Rather, we point out that the decay required by both conditions is identical. Indeed, suppose that $u \sim x^s$ as $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$. Requiring that $|x||u(x)|$ is integrable as $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$, we obtain that $s < -2$. It is easily verified that in that case the second assumption is satisfied as well. Thus, provided that $u(x)$ is continuous, so that the only question about the integrability of $|u(x)|$ or $|x||u(x)|$ is an issue of its behavior at $\pm\infty$, the theorem holds. Note that this includes all physically relevant initial conditions.

13.8 Summary

The inverse scattering method to solve the initial-value problem on the whole line ($x \in (-\infty, \infty)$) is a powerful machine as you may have concluded from this chapter. On the other hand, you have also seen that using this machine is not easy. Let us summarize what we gain by using this machine:

- It is possible to solve the initial-value problem for any initial data in a suitable space, like the square integrable functions on the whole line. The other methods we have seen allow for the construction of (sometimes large) classes of special solutions.
- Although the forward and inverse scattering step of the inverse scattering method are quite complicated, they only require the solution of linear problems of one variable. This should be contrasted with the equation we are trying to solve, which is a nonlinear partial differential equation.

13.9 Exercises

1. For the KdV equation $u_t = 6uu_x + u_{xxx}$ with initial condition $u(x, 0) = \alpha\delta(x)$, consider the forward scattering problem. Show that the same function $a(k)$ is obtained by using the eigenfunctions for $x < 0$ and those for $x > 0$.
2. Using the second integral equation for the function $\bar{N}(x, k)$, show that it is bounded in the open lower-half complex k plane. Can you also show its derivative with respect to k is bounded there? What conditions on u do you need to impose?
3. The reconstruction formula (13.5) was obtained by equating the coefficients of $1/k$ in the asymptotic expansions (13.3) and (13.4). What do you obtain by equating the coefficients of $1/k^2$?
4. For the KdV equation $u_t + 6uu_x + u_{xxx} = 0$ with initial condition $u(x, 0) = 0$ for $x \in]-\infty, -L[\cup]L, \infty[$, and $u(x, 0) = d$ for $x \in]-L, L[$, with L and d both positive, consider the forward scattering problem.
 - Find $a(k)$, for all time t .
 - Knowing that the number of solitons emanating from the initial condition is the number of zeros of $a(k)$ on the positive imaginary axis (*i.e.*, $k = i\kappa$, with $\kappa > 0$), discuss how many solitons correspond to the given initial condition, depending on the value of $2L^2d$. You might want to use Maple or Matlab for this.
 - What happens for $d < 0$?
 - In the limit $L \rightarrow 0$, but $2dL = \alpha$, $u(x, 0) \rightarrow \alpha\delta(x)$. What happens to $a(k)$ when you take this limit? Discuss.

Chapter 14

Finite-genus solutions

Appendix A

Elliptic functions

This appendix collects the most useful facts on elliptic functions, using both the Weierstrass' elliptic function, and Jacobian elliptic functions. The few pages included here cannot accomplish more than provide a very brief introduction to this beautiful topic. A similar, even shorter introduction to elliptic functions is found in [SE05]. The online handbook [DLMF] provides a thorough compendium to both types of elliptic functions. The chapters in Whittaker & Watson's classic text [WW20] provides not only the main results and more, but also how to derive them.

As we see below, elliptic functions satisfy nonlinear ODEs. In fact, among the classical special functions, they are the only ones to satisfy nonlinear ODEs as opposed to linear ones. This is the reason these special functions are in the study of nonlinear wave problems as frequently as one encounters Bessel functions and their relatives in the study of, for instance, problems with cylindrical geometry. All the ODEs we encounter are of the form

$$y'^2 = P_4(y), \tag{A.1}$$

where $P_4(y)$ is a polynomial of degree 4 (or less). If we reduce the problem of finding solutions to an equation of this form, we may look for elliptic function solutions, although other equations may have elliptic function solutions too, see Section 5.3.2

Elliptic functions are generalizations of trigonometric or hyperbolic functions. Those functions are periodic in their argument $z \in \mathbb{C}$: $f(z + nL) = f(z)$, for some nonzero $L \in \mathbb{C}$ and $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. In other words, these functions divide the complex plane in parallel strips, in each of which the function's behavior is repeated identically, see Fig. A.1a. This includes the classical trigonometric (L real) and hyperbolic (L imaginary) functions. Elliptic functions generalize such functions by imposing that $f(z + n_1L_1 + n_2L_2) = f(z)$, for two complex nonzero constants L_1 and L_2 , where $L_1, L_2 \in \mathbb{C}$, $n_1, n_2 \in \mathbb{Z}$, and $L_1/L_2 \notin \mathbb{R}$. Geometrically, L_1 and L_2 span a parallelogram in \mathbb{C} (see Fig. A.1b), over which $f(z)$ is defined. The complex plane is tiled with copies of this parallelogram, so that $f(z)$ is biperiodic in \mathbb{C} . For our purposes it suffices to consider $L_1 \in \mathbb{R}$ and $L_2 \in i\mathbb{R}$.

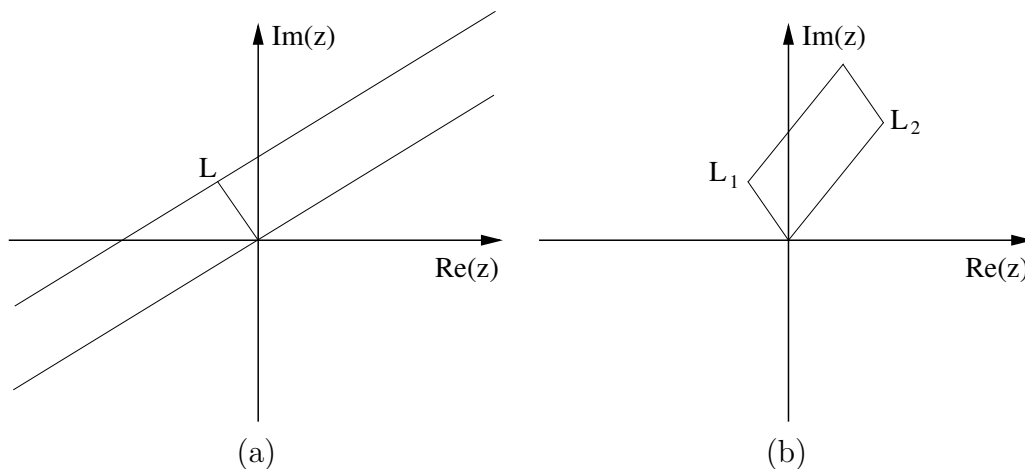


Figure A.1: (a) The period strip for a hyperbolic function with period $L \in \mathbb{C}$. (b) The period parallelogram for an elliptic function with periods L_1 and L_2 .

It is a direct consequence of Liouville's Theorem [AF03] that the only bi-periodic functions without any finite singularities in \mathbb{C} are constants. Thus, nontrivial elliptic functions have singular points in \mathbb{C} , the simplest of which are poles. In fact, this gives rise to the definition of an elliptic function.

Definition. *An elliptic function is a meromorphic, bi-periodic function.*

Let us try to construct an elliptic function $f(z)$ that has one pole per period parallelogram. By the Residue Theorem, the integral of $f(z)$ around the period parallelogram is equal to $2\pi i$ times the residue of $f(z)$ at its sole singularity, assumed to be non zero. Alternatively, we may compute the integral directly. Due to the periodicity of the function and the direction with which different parts of the period parallelogram are traversed, this integral is zero, as the contributions from opposing sides cancel pairwise. This is a contradiction.

It follows that, at the very least we need a function with either two simple poles or else a double pole. Jacobi followed the first path, resulting in the invention of the elliptic functions that are named after him. We discuss these functions in Section A.2. Weierstrass followed the second approach, which is discussed next.

A.1 Weierstrass elliptic functions

Weierstrass defined¹

¹all definitions and identities from the section are found in [DLMF, WW20]. We use the notation of [DLMF], with $2\omega_1$ and $2\omega_3$ as the base periods of the Weierstrass elliptic functions. The dependent period $\omega_2 = -\omega_1 - \omega_3$ is introduced later.

$$\wp(z; \omega_1, \omega_3) = \frac{1}{z^2} + \sum'_{m,n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{(z - 2m\omega_1 - 2n\omega_3)^2} - \frac{1}{(2m\omega_1 + 2n\omega_3)^2} \right).$$

The prime on the sum indicates that the term corresponding to $(n, m) = (0, 0)$ is omitted. If no confusion is possible, we do not write the arguments indicating the periods. The function $\wp(z)$ has a double pole at the origin and at its biperiodic counterparts. By construction the function is periodic with independent periods $2\omega_1$ and $2\omega_3$. The constant (i.e., independent of z) term in the sum is necessary to ensure convergence of the sum. In fact, as defined, this series representation for $\wp(z)$ is uniformly convergent on any compact set not containing any of the singularities. Some representative plots of $\wp(z)$ are given in Fig. A.2.

We denote the derivative of $\wp(z)$ with respect to z by $\wp'(z)$. Then

$$\wp'(z; \omega_1, \omega_3) = -2 \sum'_{m,n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(z - 2m\omega_1 - 2n\omega_3)^3}.$$

Thus $\wp'(z)$ is an elliptic function of order 3, *i.e.*, has a third-order pole in each period parallelogram.

Next, we list and occasionally discuss properties of $\wp(z)$ and $\wp'(z)$.

1. $\wp(-z) = \wp(z)$, *i.e.*, $\wp(z)$ is even, hence $\wp'(-z) = -\wp'(z)$, $\wp'(z)$ is odd.
2. Let $c > 0$, then $\wp(cz, c\omega_1, c\omega_3) = \wp(z, \omega_1, \omega_3)/c^2$, which follows directly from the definition of the Weierstrass elliptic function. This implies that the magnitude of one of the periods may be scaled to 1, without altering the characteristics of the function, other than scaling its values.
3. Let $f(z)$ be any rational combination of $\wp(z)$ and $\wp'(z)$. Then $f(z + 2M\omega_1 + 2N\omega_3) = f(z)$, $N, M \in \mathbb{Z}$.
4. The Weierstrass function $\wp(z)$ satisfies the ODE

$$\wp'^2 = 4\wp^3 - g_2\wp - g_3,$$

where the lattice invariants g_2 and g_3 are given by

$$g_2 = 60 \sum'_{m,n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2n\omega_1 + 2m\omega_3)^4}, \quad g_3 = 140 \sum'_{m,n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2n\omega_1 + 2m\omega_3)^6}.$$

The ODE is easily established by imposing that $\wp'^2 - 4\wp^3 + g_2\wp$ is analytic in a period parallelogram, *i.e.*, in \mathbb{C} , and thus constant. Conversely, the general solution of the above ODE is given by $\wp(z + z_0, \omega_1, \omega_3)$, where ω_1 and ω_3 are numbers such that g_2 and g_3 are as above, and z_0 is an arbitrary complex constant.

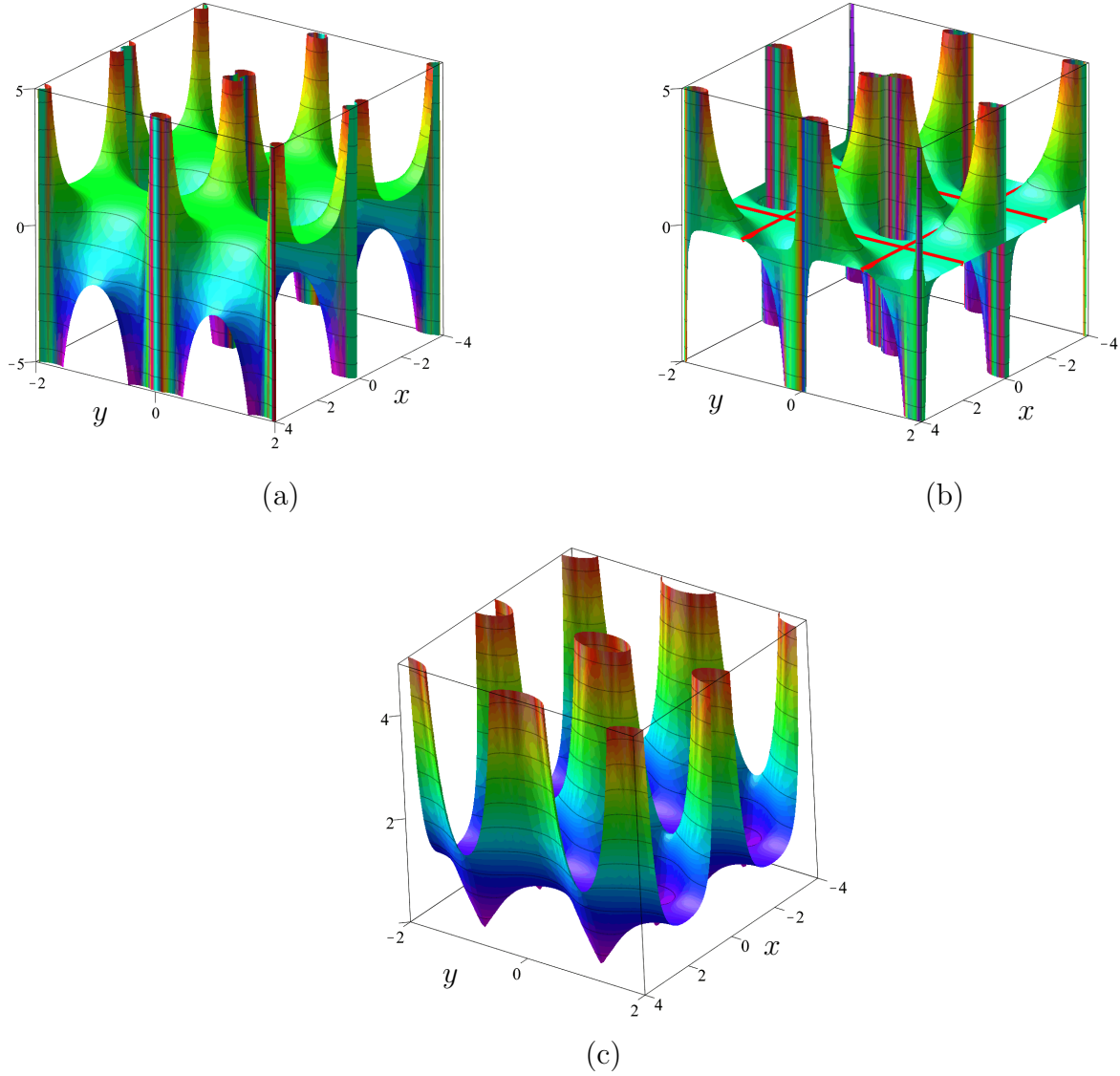


Figure A.2: Let $\omega_1 = 2$, $\omega_3 = i$. (a) $\operatorname{Re} \varphi(x + iy)$; (b) $\operatorname{Im} \varphi(x + iy)$. Also included are the lines at $x = \pm 2$ and $y = \pm 1$, where the imaginary part is 0, thus $\varphi(x + iy) \in \mathbb{R}$; (c) $|\varphi(x + iy)|$.

5. The Weierstrass elliptic function satisfies the addition theorem

$$\det \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \varphi(u) & \varphi'(u) \\ 1 & \varphi(v) & \varphi'(v) \\ 1 & \varphi(w) & \varphi'(w) \end{pmatrix} = 0, \quad u + v + w = 0,$$

which is established in much the same vein the ODE is found.

6. It is a direct consequence of the definition of an elliptic function that any elliptic

function $f(z)$ may be expressed as

$$f(z) = A(\wp(z)) + \wp'(z)B(\wp(z)),$$

where A and B are rational functions, and all elliptic functions in this expression share the same period lattice.

7. If $\omega_1 \in \mathbb{R}$ and $\omega_3 = i\alpha$, where $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$, then $\wp(z, \omega_1, \omega_3)$ is periodic in the rectangle with sides $2\omega_1, 2i\alpha$. Further, $\wp(z)$ is real-valued on the sides of the rectangle with corners $0, \omega_1$ and $i\alpha$. An illustration of this is given in Fig. A.2.

This is an important observation: when we use $\wp(z)$ to construct solutions of differential equations, usually we wish for these solutions to be nonsingular. The above statement means that if $\wp(x)$ is a real-valued (singular) solution for $x \in \mathbb{R}$ of an autonomous PDE, then $\wp(x + i\beta)$ is a real-valued solution too, but not singular.

Example. The KdV equation $u_t = 6uu_x + u_{xxx}$ has the stationary solution (Exercise A.1)

$$u(x, t) = -\frac{c}{6} - 2\wp(x - ct - z_0, \omega_1, \omega_2),$$

where ω_1 and ω_3 are determined from

$$g_2 = \frac{c^2}{12} - a, \quad g_3 = \frac{c^3}{108} - \frac{ac}{12} + \frac{b}{2},$$

where a and b are constants. For many choices of these constants, $i\alpha = \omega_3$ is imaginary, and

$$u(x, t) = -\frac{c}{6} - 2\wp(x - ct - x_0 + i\alpha, \omega_1, \omega_3),$$

gives a four-(real) parameter family of real-valued (for $x \in \mathbb{R}$) traveling-wave elliptic solutions of the KdV equation: a and b are related to the periods of the solution, while c and x_0 correspond to the velocity and the phase shift of the profile, respectively.

8. Let $L_1 = 2\omega_1$ and $L_2 = -2i\omega_3$, both assumed real. The Weierstrass elliptic function $\wp(z, \omega_1, \omega_3)$ can be written as [DS98]

$$\wp(z) = \left(\frac{\pi}{L_2}\right)^2 \left[\frac{1}{3} + \operatorname{cosech}^2 \frac{\pi z}{L_2} + \sum_{n=-\infty}' \left(\operatorname{cosech}^2 \frac{\pi}{L_2} (x + nL_1) - \operatorname{cosech}^2 \frac{n\pi L_1}{L_2} \right) \right], \quad (\text{A.2})$$

where, as before, the prime denotes that the term corresponding to $n = 0$ is omitted. This formula is established from the definition of $\wp(z)$ and the meromorphic function expansion of cosech [AF03] by a careful reordering and grouping of terms. This remarkable result allows us to, after a phase shift as above, rewrite the periodic traveling-wave

solution of the KdV equation in the example, as a linear superposition of KdV solitons, with centers one horizontal period apart:

$$\wp\left(z + \frac{iL_2}{2}\right) = \left(\frac{\pi}{L_2}\right)^2 \left[\frac{1}{3} - \operatorname{sech}^2 \frac{\pi z}{L_2} - \sum'_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left(\operatorname{sech}^2 \frac{\pi}{L_2}(x + nL_1) + \operatorname{cosech}^2 \frac{n\pi L_1}{L_2} \right) \right].$$

A.2 Jacobi elliptic functions

Jacobi constructed elliptic functions with two simple poles per period parallelogram. For the rest of this section, we assume this parallelogram is a rectangle. Since the Jacobi elliptic functions are real valued on the real line, for nonlinear wave applications, we need not concern ourselves much with the behavior of these functions off the real line.

There are 12 Jacobi elliptic functions. All have two arguments, x and k . Here $k \in [0, 1)$ is the elliptic modulus². It specifies the periods of the function. The two complete elliptic integrals of the first and second kind, respectively, appear frequently:

$$K(k) = \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - k^2 \sin^2 \theta}} d\theta,$$

$$E(k) = \int_0^{\pi/2} \sqrt{1 - k^2 \sin^2 \theta} d\theta.$$

Note that

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{k \rightarrow 0} K(k) &= \frac{\pi}{2}, & \lim_{k \rightarrow 1} K(k) &= +\infty, \\ \lim_{k \rightarrow 0} E(k) &= \frac{\pi}{2}, & \lim_{k \rightarrow 1} E(k) &= 1. \end{aligned}$$

We define $K'(k) = K(k')$, where k' is referred to as the complimentary elliptic modulus: $k' = \sqrt{1 - k^2}$.

We focus on three Jacobi elliptic functions that are non-singular on the real line. The other 9 are rational combinations of these.

- The Jacobi sine function $\operatorname{sn}(x, k)$ is a biperiodic generalization of the sine function: $\lim_{k \rightarrow 0} \operatorname{sn}(x, k) = \sin(x)$. Like sine, it is odd: $\operatorname{sn}(-x, k) = -\operatorname{sn}(x, k)$. It is biperiodic with periods $4K(k)$ and $2iK'(k)$. It has poles at $x = iK'(k)$ and $2K(k) + 2iK'(k)$. Its zeros are at $x = 0$ and $x = 2K(k)$. It reaches its maximal value of 1 at $x = 2K(k)$, and its minimal value of -1 at $x = 3K(k)$. The function $\operatorname{sn}(x, k)$ is illustrated in red in Fig. A.3. As k increases, the function develops two large plateaus. In fact, $\lim_{k \rightarrow 1} \operatorname{sn}(x, k) = \tanh x$.

²Some sources use $m = k^2$ as the elliptic modulus. Different software packages use these different conventions: Maple uses k , Mathematica and Matlab use m . Welcome to the nonstandardized notation in the world of special functions. Luckily, projects like [DLMF] aim to standardize this world.

- The Jacobi cosine function $\text{cn}(x, k)$ is a biperiodic generalization of the cosine function: $\lim_{k \rightarrow 0} \text{cn}(x, k) = \cos(x)$. Like cosine, it is even: $\text{cn}(-x, k) = \text{cn}(x, k)$. It is biperiodic with periods $4K(k)$ and $4iK'(k)$, but it also has the “smaller” period $2K(k) + 2iK'(k)$. It has poles at $x = iK'(k)$ and $2K(k) + 2iK'(k)$. Its zeros are at $x = K(k)$ and $x = 3K(k)$. It reaches its maximal value of 1 at $x = 0$, and its minimal value of -1 at $x = 2K(k)$. The function is illustrated in blue in Fig. A.3. As k increases, the function becomes more peaked at $x = 0$ and at $x = \pm 2K(k)$. We have $\lim_{k \rightarrow 1} \text{cn}(x, k) = \text{sech } x$.
- The Jacobi function $\text{dn}(x, k)$ is a new object. Its limit as $k \rightarrow 0$ is more trivial: $\lim_{k \rightarrow 0} \text{dn}(x, k) = 1$. It is an even function of x : $\text{dn}(-x, k) = \text{dn}(x, k)$. It is biperiodic with periods $2K(k)$ and $4iK'(k)$. It has poles at $x = iK'(k)$ and $2K(k) + 2iK'(k)$. Its zeros are at $x = K(k) + iK'(k)$ and $x = K(k) + 3iK'(k)$. It reaches its maximal value of 1 at $x = 0$, and its minimal value of k' at $x = K(k)$. It is illustrated in green in Fig. A.3. As k increases, the function becomes more peaked at $x = 0$. As for $\text{cn}(x, k)$, we have $\lim_{k \rightarrow 1} \text{dn}(x, k) = \text{sech } x$. Note that $\text{dn}(x, k) > 0$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

As for the Weierstrass elliptic function $\wp(z)$, we list a number of additional properties of the Jacobi elliptic functions. Some of these allow for an easy verification of the elementary properties listed above. However, as noted in [WW20], it is more convenient to first introduce the Jacobi theta functions [DLMF, WW20] in order to systematically build up the Jacobi elliptic functions. We will forego this here. It should be emphasized that Jacobi’s original works (notably [Jac29], in Latin) remain quite readable.

1. Like the trigonometric and hyperbolic functions they generalize, the Jacobi elliptic functions satisfy numerous identities. A few important ones are

$$\begin{aligned}\text{sn}^2(x, k) + \text{cn}^2(x, k) &= 1, \\ k^2 \text{sn}^2(x, k) + \text{dn}^2(x, k) &= 1.\end{aligned}$$

2. The derivatives of the Jacobi elliptic functions with respect to x are given by

$$\begin{aligned}\text{sn}'(x, k) &= \text{cn}(x, k)\text{dn}(x, k), \\ \text{cn}'(x, k) &= -\text{sn}(x, k)\text{dn}(x, k), \\ \text{dn}'(x, k) &= -k^2 \text{sn}(x, k)\text{cn}(x, k).\end{aligned}$$

3. One way to define the Jacobi elliptic functions is as solutions of differential equations. Or, given the above, we easily verify that

$$\begin{aligned}\text{sn}(x, k) \text{ solves } y'^2 &= (1 - y^2)(1 - k^2 y^2), \\ \text{cn}(x, k) \text{ solves } y'^2 &= (1 - y^2)(k'^2 + k^2 y^2), \\ \text{dn}(x, k) \text{ solves } y'^2 &= (1 - y^2)(y^2 - k^2).\end{aligned}$$

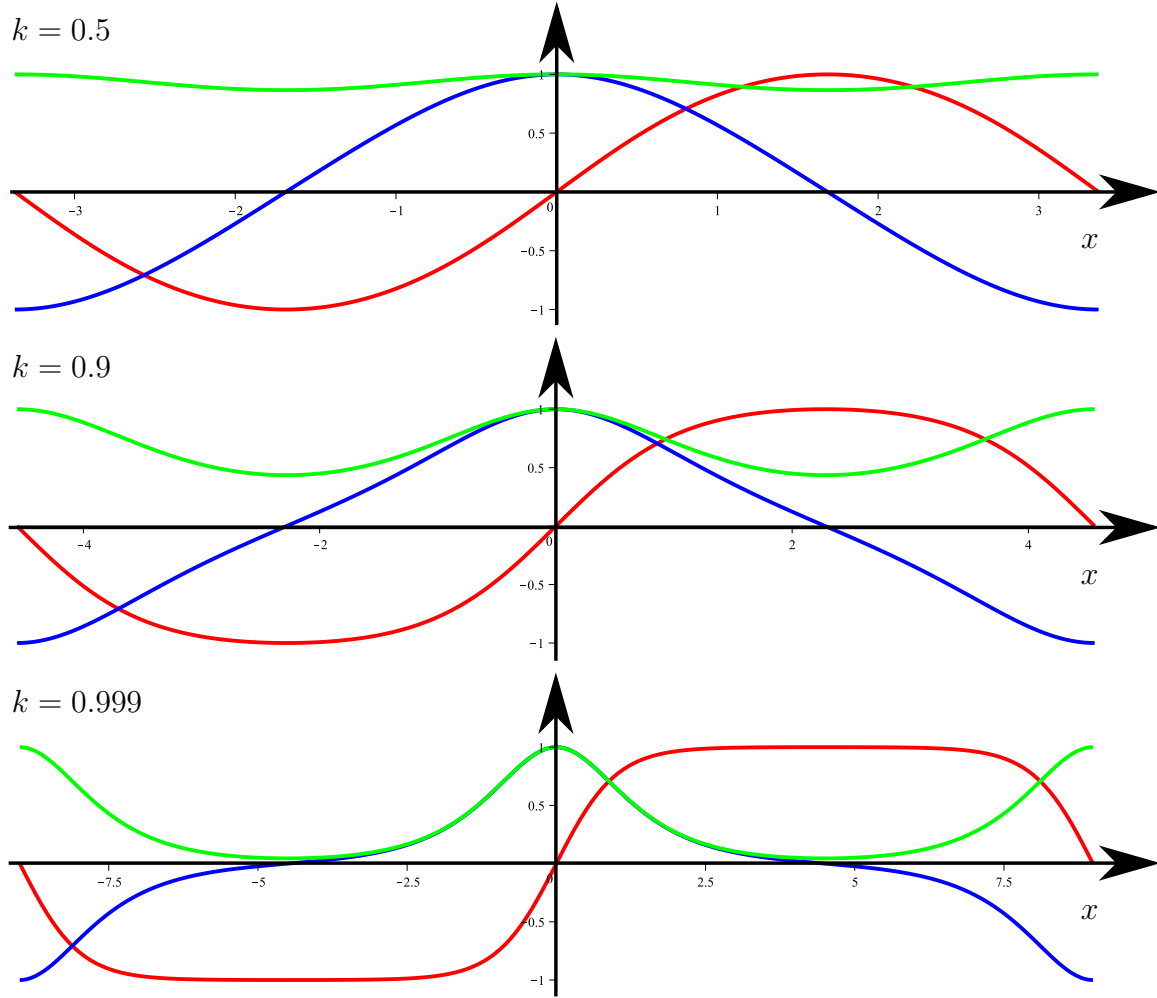


Figure A.3: The Jacobi elliptic functions $\text{sn}(x, k)$ (red), $\text{cn}(x, k)$ (blue) and $\text{dn}(x, k)$ (green) for different values of the elliptic modulus.

Further use of the derivative formulae gives rise to the second-order ODEs

$$\begin{aligned} \text{sn}(x, k) \text{ solves } y'' &= -(1 + k^2)y + 2k^2y^3, \\ \text{cn}(x, k) \text{ solves } y'' &= (2k^2 - 1)y - 2k^2y^3, \\ \text{dn}(x, k) \text{ solves } y'' &= (2 - k^2)y - 2y^3. \end{aligned}$$

4. Let $q = \exp(-\pi K'(k)/K(k))$, the elliptic nome. Then

$$\text{sn}(x, k) = \frac{2\pi}{kK(k)} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{q^{n+\frac{1}{2}}}{1 - q^{2n+1}} \sin((2n+1)x),$$

$$\begin{aligned}\operatorname{cn}(x, k) &= \frac{2\pi}{kK(k)} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{q^{n+\frac{1}{2}}}{1+q^{2n+1}} \cos((2n+1)x), \\ \operatorname{dn}(x, k) &= \frac{\pi}{2k'K(k)} + \frac{2\pi}{k'K(k)} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n q^n}{1+q^{2n}} \cos(2nx).\end{aligned}$$

We also include

$$\operatorname{sn}^2(x, k) = \frac{1}{k^2} \left(1 - \frac{E(k)}{K(k)} \right) - \frac{2\pi^2}{k^2 K^2(k)} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{nq^n}{1-q^{2n}} \cos(2nx). \quad (\text{A.3})$$

These Fourier series are useful, for instance, when using Hill's Method to examine the spectral stability of elliptic solutions, as in Chapter 8. It should be noted that the Fourier series of $\operatorname{sn}^2(x, k)$ given in [BF71] is obviously wrong: $\operatorname{sn}^2(x, k)$ is even, whereas [BF71] presents a sine series! The result given here is from [Jac29]. It is also included more recently in [DLMF].

5. The analogous result to (A.2) is

$$k^2 \operatorname{sn}^2(x, k) = \frac{E'(k)}{K'(k)} - \frac{\pi^2}{4K'^2(k)} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \operatorname{sech}^2 \left(\frac{\pi}{2K'(k)} (x - 2nK(k)) \right),$$

where $E'(k) = E(k')$.

A.3 Relating Weierstrass' and Jacobi's elliptic functions

It may appear from the exposition above that Jacobi elliptic functions are to be preferred in applications: they are real valued and nonsingular for real argument, and using them does not require a half-period vertical shift to be added to the argument, as is often the case when using the Weierstrass elliptic functions. However, their use (sometimes augmented with their “antiderivatives” $\zeta(z)$ and $\sigma(z)$, see [DLMF]) often has mathematical advantages. One is illustrated in Section 5.3.2. Another is that it is more straightforward to integrate rational expressions involving $\wp(z)$ and $\wp'(z)$, see [WW20]. With both sets of functions having advantages, it is no surprise that both are used, and it is essential that we know how to go back and forth between the two. The properties below are presented without proof, which can be found in [WW20].

Assume that ω_1 and ω_3 are given, and that the cubic $4y^3 - g_2y - g_3$ has distinct roots e_1 , e_2 and e_3 . Let $\omega_2 = -\omega_1 - \omega_3$. Then

$$e_j = \wp(\omega_j), \quad j = 1, 2, 3.$$

Define

$$k^2 = \frac{e_2 - e_3}{e_1 - e_3},$$

then

$$\frac{k^2 K^2(k)}{\omega_1^2} \operatorname{sn}^2 \left(\frac{K(k)z}{\omega_1}, k \right) = \wp(z + \omega_3) - e_3. \quad (\text{A.4})$$

The above formulae allow us to go from given Weierstrass data to Jacobi data.

Conversely, consider k given. We may choose ω_1 : this fixes the scaling of the period lattice of the Weierstrass, which depends on two free parameters ω_1 and ω_2 , as opposed to the period lattice for the Jacobi functions, which depends on only k . Then

$$\begin{aligned} e_1 &= \frac{K^2(k)}{3\omega_1^2}(2 - k^2), \\ e_2 &= \frac{K^2(k)}{3\omega_1^2}(2k^2 - 1), \\ e_3 &= -\frac{K^2(k)}{3\omega_1^2}(1 + k^2). \end{aligned}$$

Then

$$g_2 = -4(e_2 e_3 + e_3 e_1 + e_1 e_2), \quad g_3 = 4e_1 e_2 e_3,$$

which implicitly defines ω_3 . Equation (A.4) allows us to go from given Jacobi data to Weierstrass data.

The conversion from Weierstrass to Jacobi data and conversely is a complicated process. For instance, determining ω_3 from g_2 and g_3 involves solving a transcendental equation. For an example, see Problem (A.2b). In practice, it is often more straightforward to examine a given expression involving, say, Weierstrass elliptic functions, and substitute an equivalent ansatz with Jacobi elliptic functions inspired by (A.4), and have all remaining constants be determined by the PDE or ODE in which the ansatz is substituted.

A.4 Exercises

A.1. Check the KdV equation solution given in the example on Page 305.

A.2. Consider the KdV equation $u_t = 6uu_x + u_{xxx}$.

- (a) By looking for solutions with the ansatz $u = A \operatorname{cn}^2(x - ct, k) + B$, determine A and B . Of course, the cnoidal wave solutions you have found may be generalized using the translational and scaling symmetries of the equation. Determine c so that your solution has zero average. HINT: Use (A.3).
- (b) (**Hard**) Convert the solution given in the example on Page 305 to Jacobi elliptic function form and match it with the solution you just found.

- (c) Take the limit of your cnoidal wave solution as the elliptic modulus approaches 1 to recover the soliton solution of the KdV equation. This solution $\rightarrow 0$ as $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$ because you imposed zero average on your cnoidal wave solution.

A.3. Consider the focusing NLS equation

$$i\phi_t = -\phi_{xx} - |\phi|^2\phi.$$

In the problem, we will construct the full set of so-called trivial and nontrivial phase elliptic solutions.

- (a) Consider solutions of the form $\phi = \varphi(x)e^{i\omega t}$. Upon substitution, you get an ODE for $\varphi(x)$, depending on the parameter ω .
- (b) Let $\varphi(x) = R(x)e^{i\theta(x)}$, where both $R(x)$ and $\theta(x)$ are real-valued functions. After substitution, an exponential factor $\exp(i\theta(x))$ cancels. Separate the real part and the imaginary part of the remaining equation.
- (c) Using the equation obtained from the imaginary part, determine $\theta(x)$ in terms of $R(x)$. The result should depend on two integration constants since your equation involved on $\theta''(x)$. You may ignore the additive constant of integration which is a reflection of the phase invariance symmetry of NLS, see Exercise 5.16. Call the remaining integration constant c . Substitute this result in the remaining equation. Note that this equation depends on $R^2(x)$ and on $R'^2(x)$.
- (d) Define $S(x) = R^2(x)$. Determine an ODE satisfied by $S(x)$. This ODE should be of the form (A.1). Thus we may look for elliptic solutions!
- (e) Assume the ansatz $S(x) = A \operatorname{sn}^2(x, k) + B$. Determine A , c and ω as functions of k and B . Write out your solutions. Those solutions for which $c = 0$ are referred to as *trivial-phase* solutions, whereas those with $c \neq 0$ are *nontrivial phase* solutions. The equations determine only c^2 . You may restrict to the $+\sqrt{}$. The other sign corresponds to the complex conjugate solution, which also solves the ODE obtained in Step (a).
- (f) Determine the values of k and B for which you have physically relevant solutions, in other words, $S(x) = R^2(x) > 0$ and $c \in \mathbb{R}$. This determines the region of validity in the (k, B) plane for which you have physical solutions.
- (g) Examine the solutions at the boundaries of your region of validity and write down their simplified solution form.

A.4. Solve the ODE for $S(x)$ obtained in Step (d) in terms of Weierstrass elliptic functions.

A.5. Repeat Problem A.3 for the defocusing NLS equation. The solutions obtained in Problem A.3 and here are studied extensively in the literature, see [BDN11, DS17, GH07b, GH07a] for instance.

Appendix B

Fundamentals of Riemann surfaces and Riemann theta functions

Bibliography

- [AAD⁺94] W. F. Ames, R. L. Anderson, V. A. Dorodnitsyn, E. V. Ferapontov, R. K. Gazizov, N. H. Ibragimov, and S. R. Svirshchevskii. *CRC handbook of Lie group analysis of differential equations. Vol. 1*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1994. Symmetries, exact solutions and conservation laws.
- [Abl11] M. J. Ablowitz. *Nonlinear dispersive waves. Asymptotic analysis and solitons*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2011.
- [AC91] M. J. Ablowitz and P. A. Clarkson. *Solitons, nonlinear evolution equations and inverse scattering*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1991.
- [AF03] M. J. Ablowitz and A. S. Fokas. *Complex variables: introduction and applications*. Cambridge Texts in Applied Mathematics. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, second edition, 2003.
- [AG03] E. L. Allgower and K. Georg. *Introduction to numerical continuation methods*. Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics (SIAM), Philadelphia, PA, 2003.
- [Arn63] V. I. Arnol'd. Proof of a theorem of A. N. Kolmogorov on the preservation of conditionally periodic motions under a small perturbation of the Hamiltonian. *Uspehi Mat. Nauk*, 18:13–40, 1963.
- [AS81] M. J. Ablowitz and H. Segur. *Solitons and the inverse scattering transform*. Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics (SIAM), Philadelphia, PA, 1981.
- [Bak95] H. F. Baker. *Abelian functions*. Cambridge Mathematical Library. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1995.
- [BB75] C. Briot and J.-C. Bouquet. *Théorie des fonctions elliptiques*. Gauthier-Villars, Paris, France, second edition, 1875.
- [BBM72] T. B. Benjamin, J. L. Bona, and J. J. Mahony. Model equations for long waves in nonlinear dispersive systems. *Philos. Trans. Roy. Soc. London Ser. A*, 272(1220):47–78, 1972.

- [BC01] J. P. Boyd and G.-Y. Chen. Weakly nonlinear wavepackets in the Korteweg-de Vries equation: the KdV/NLS connection. *Math. Comput. Simulation*, 55(4-6):317–328, 2001.
- [BCA10] G. W. Bluman, A. F. Cheviakov, and S. C. Anco. *Applications of symmetry methods to partial differential equations*, volume 168 of *Applied Mathematical Sciences*. Springer, New York, 2010.
- [BD12] W. E. Boyce and Richard C. DiPrima. *Elementary differential equations and boundary value problems*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York-London-Sydney, 2012. 10th edition.
- [BDH11] B. Blanchard, R. L. Devaney, and G. Hall. *Differential equations*. Brooks Cole, Pacific Grove, CA, 2011. 4th edition.
- [BDN11] N. Bottman, B. Deconinck, and M. Nivala. Elliptic solutions of the defocusing NLS equation are stable. *J. Phys. A*, 44(28):285201, 24, 2011.
- [Ben67] T. B. Benjamin. Instability of periodic wavetrains in nonlinear dispersive systems. *Proc. Roy. Soc. (London) Ser. A*, 299:59–76, 1967.
- [BF67] T.B. Benjamin and J.E. Feir. The disintegration of wave trains on deep water. part i. theory. *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 27:417–430, 1967.
- [BF71] P. F. Byrd and M. D. Friedman. *Handbook of elliptic integrals for engineers and scientists*. Springer-Verlag, New York, NY, 1971.
- [BG97] J. Barrow-Green. *Poincaré and the three body problem*. American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 1997.
- [BGsH⁺04] D. Baldwin, Ü. Göktaş, W. Hereman, L. Hong, R. S. Martino, and J. C. Miller. Symbolic computation of exact solutions expressible in hyperbolic and elliptic functions for nonlinear PDEs. *J. Symbolic Comput.*, 37(6):669–705, 2004.
- [Bou71] J. Boussinesq. Théorie de l’intumescence liquide, appelée onde solitaire ou de translation, se propageant dans un canal rectangulaire. *Comptes Rendus de l’Académie des Sciences*, 72:755–759, 1871.
- [Bou77] J. Boussinesq. Essai sur la theorie des eaux courantes. *Mémoires présentés par divers savants à l’Acad. des Sci. Inst. Nat. France*, XXIII:1–680, 1877.
- [Bul88] R. K. Bullough. “The wave” “par excellence”, the solitary progressive great wave of equilibrium of the fluid: an early history of the solitary wave. In *Solitons (Tiruchirappalli, 1987)*, pages 7–42. Springer, Berlin, 1988.

- [CG09] M. C. Cross and H. Greenside. *Pattern Formation and Dynamics in Nonequilibrium Systems*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2009.
- [CH93] M. C. Cross and P. C. Hohenberg. Pattern formation outside of equilibrium. *Reviews of modern physics*, 65(3):851–1112, 1993.
- [Che83] F. F. Chen. *Introduction to plasma physics and controlled fusion*. Plenum Press, New York, 1983.
- [CM08] R. Conte and M. Musette. *The Painlevé handbook*. Springer, Dordrecht, 2008.
- [Con08] R. Conte. Doubly periodic, simply periodic and rational solitary waves of partially integrable nonlinear pdes, 6 2008. Talk presented at the first International Conference for Nonlinear Waves: Theory and Applications. Beijing, China.
- [Dau08] T. Dauxois. Fermi, pasta, ulam, and a mysterious lady. *Physics Today*, 6:55–57, 2008.
- [DJ89] P. G. Drazin and R. S. Johnson. *Solitons: an introduction*. Cambridge Texts in Applied Mathematics. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1989.
- [DLMF] NIST Digital Library of Mathematical Functions. <http://dlmf.nist.gov/>, Release 1.0.5 of 2012-10-01. Online companion to [OLBC10].
- [DMV93] B. Deconinck, P. Meuris, and F. Verheest. Oblique nonlinear Alfvén waves in strongly magnetized beam plasmas. Part 1. Nonlinear vector evolution equation. *J. Plasma Physics*, 50(3):445–455, 1993.
- [DN11] B. Deconinck and M. Nivala. The stability analysis of the periodic traveling wave solutions of the mKdV equation. *Stud. Appl. Math.*, 126(1):17–48, 2011.
- [DP10] T. Dauxois and M. Peyrard. *Physics of Solitons*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2010.
- [DR77] V. D. Djordjević and L. G. Redekopp. On two-dimensional packets of capillary-gravity waves. *J. Fluid Mech.*, 79(4):703–714, 1977.
- [DS98] B. Deconinck and H. Segur. The KP equation with quasiperiodic initial conditions. *Physica D*, 123:123–152, 1998.
- [DS00] B. Deconinck and H. Segur. Pole dynamics for elliptic solutions of the Korteweg-de Vries equation. *Math. Phys. Anal. Geom.*, 3(1):49–74, 2000.
- [DS17] B. Deconinck and B. L. Segal. The stability spectrum for elliptic solutions to the focusing NLS equation. *Phys. D*, 346:1–19, 2017.

- [EPF⁺87] P. Emplit, Hamaide J. P., Reynaud F., C. Froehly, and A. Barthelemy. Picosecond steps and dark pulses through nonlinear single mode fibers. *Optics Communications*, 62:374 – 379, 1987.
- [Eva10] L. C. Evans. *Partial differential equations*, volume 19 of *Graduate Studies in Mathematics*. American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, second edition, 2010.
- [Fla74] H. Flaschka. The Toda lattice. I. Existence of integrals. *Phys. Rev. B* (3), 9:1924–1925, 1974.
- [For90] A. P. Fordy, editor. *Soliton theory: a survey of results*. Nonlinear Science: Theory and Applications. Manchester University Press, Manchester, 1990.
- [FPU55] E. Fermi, J. Pasta, and S. Ulam. Studies of nonlinear problems. Technical Report LA-1940, Los Alamos National Laboratory, 1955.
- [Fri82] A. Friedman. *Foundations of modern analysis*. Dover Publications Inc., New York, 1982.
- [Gal08] G. Gallavotti, editor. *The Fermi-Pasta-Ulam problem: a status report*, volume 728 of *Lecture notes in physics*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin Heidelberg, 2008.
- [GH07a] T. Gallay and M. Hărăguș. Orbital stability of periodic waves for the nonlinear Schrödinger equation. *J. Dynam. Differential Equations*, 19:825–865, 2007.
- [GH07b] T. Gallay and M. Hărăguș. Stability of small periodic waves for the nonlinear Schrödinger equation. *J. Differential Equations*, 234:544–581, 2007.
- [GL96] R. B. Guenther and J. W. Lee. *Partial differential equations of mathematical physics and integral equations*. Dover Publications Inc., Mineola, NY, 1996.
- [Gol80] H. Goldstein. *Classical mechanics*. Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., Reading, Mass., second edition, 1980.
- [Gro61] E. P. Gross. Structure of a quantized vortex in boson systems. *Nuevo Cimento*, 20:454–477, 1961.
- [HA09] M. Hoefer and M. Ablowitz. Dispersive shock waves. *Scholarpedia*, 4(11):5562, 2009.
- [Hab87] R. Haberman. *Elementary applied partial differential equations*. Prentice Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1987.
- [Has90] A. Hasegawa. *Optical solitons in fibers*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1990.

- [HK90] L. Huibin and W. Kelin. Exact solutions for two nonlinear equations. i. *J. Phys. A: Mathematical and General*, 23(17):3923–3928, 1990.
- [HKB89] T Hada, CF Kennel, and B Buti. Stationary nonlinear alfvén waves and solitons. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Space Physics (1978–2012)*, 94:65–77, 1989.
- [HS74] J. L. Hammack and H. Segur. The Korteweg-de Vries equation and water waves. II. Comparison with experiments. *J. Fluid Mech.*, 65:289–313, 1974.
- [HS78a] J. L. Hammack and H. Segur. The Korteweg-de Vries equation and water waves. III. Oscillatory waves. *J. Fluid Mech.*, 84(2):337–358, 1978.
- [HS78b] J. L. Hammack and H. Segur. Modelling criteria for long water waves. *J. Fluid Mech.*, 84(2):359–373, 1978.
- [HT73] A. Hasegawa and F. Tappert. Transmission of stationary nonlinear optical pulses in dispersive dielectric fibers. II. normal dispersion. *Appl. Phys. Lett.*, 23:171–172, 1973.
- [Hua87] K. Huang. *Statistical mechanics*. John Wiley & Sons Inc., New York, NY, second edition, 1987.
- [IR00] E. Infeld and G. Rowlands. *Nonlinear waves, solitons and chaos*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, second edition, 2000.
- [Jac29] C. G. J Jacobi. *Fundamenta Nova Theoriae Functionum Ellipticarum*. Königsberg, 1829.
- [Joh76] R. S. Johnson. Nonlinear, strongly dispersive water waves in arbitrary shear,. *Proc. R. Soc. London, Ser. A*, 338:101–114, 1976.
- [Joh97] R. S. Johnson. *A modern introduction to the mathematical theory of water waves*. Cambridge Texts in Applied Mathematics. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1997.
- [KC96] J. Kevorkian and J. D. Cole. *Multiple scale and singular perturbation methods*, volume 114 of *Applied Mathematical Sciences*. Springer-Verlag, New York, 1996.
- [KC07] P. K. Kundu and I. M. Cohen. *Fluid Mechanics*. Academic Press, Burlington, MA, 2007.
- [KdV95] D. J. Korteweg and G. de Vries. On the change of form of long waves advancing in a rectangular channel, and on a new type of long stationary waves. *Philos. Mag. Ser. 5*, 39:422–443, 1895.

- [KMM03] S. Kamvissis, K. D. T.-R. McLaughlin, and P. D. Miller. *Semiclassical soliton ensembles for the focusing nonlinear Schrödinger equation*, volume 154 of *Annals of Mathematics Studies*. Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ, 2003.
- [Kno00] R. Knobel. *An introduction to the mathematical theory of waves*, volume 3 of *Student Mathematical Library*. American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 2000.
- [Kol79] A. N. Kolmogorov. Preservation of conditionally periodic movements with small change in the Hamilton function. In *Stochastic behavior in classical and quantum Hamiltonian systems (Volta Memorial Conf., Como, 1977)*, pages 51–56. Springer, Berlin, 1979.
- [Kru63] M. D. Kruskal. Asymptotology. In S. Drobot and Viebrock, editors, *Mathematical Models in Physical Sciences. Proceeding of the conference at Notre Dame, 1962*, pages 17–48. Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1963.
- [KT75] Y. Kuramoto and T. Tsuzuki. On the formation of dissipative structures in reaction-diffusion systems. *Progress of Theoretical Physics*, 54:687–699, 1975.
- [Lan70] J. H. Lane. on the theoretical temperature of the sun under the hypothesis of a gaseous mass maintaining its volume by its internal heat and depending on the laws of gases known to terrestrial experiment. *The American Journal of Science and Arts*, 50:57–74, 1870.
- [Lax68] P. D. Lax. Integrals of nonlinear equations of evolution and solitary waves. *Comm. Pure Appl. Math.*, 21:467–490, 1968.
- [LL82] P. D. Lax and C. D. Levermore. The zero dispersion limit for the Korteweg-de Vries (KdV) equation. In *Proceedings of the 1980 Beijing Symposium on Differential Geometry and Differential Equations, Vol. 1, 2, 3 (Beijing, 1980)*, pages 717–729, Beijing, 1982. Science Press.
- [Mal92] W. Malfliet. Solitary wave solutions of nonlinear wave equations. *Amer. J. Phys.*, 60(7):650–654, 1992.
- [Mar77] A. I. Markushevich. *Theory of functions of a complex variable. Vol. I, II, III*. Chelsea Publishing Co., New York, english edition, 1977. Translated and edited by Richard A. Silverman.
- [Mar92] A. I. Markushevich. *Introduction to the classical theory of abelian functions*, volume 96 of *Translations of Mathematical Monographs*. American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 1992. Translated from the 1979 Russian original by G. Blüher.

- [Mer97] E. Merzbacher. *Quantum Mechanics*. Wiley Interscience, New York, NY, 1997.
- [MH96] W. Malfliet and W. Hereman. The tanh method. I. Exact solutions of nonlinear evolution and wave equations. *Phys. Scripta*, 54(6):563–568, 1996.
- [MH97] E. Mjølhus and T. Hada. Soliton theory of quasi-parallel MHD waves. In Hada T. and Matsumoto H., editors, *Nonlinear waves and chaos in space plasmas*, pages 121–169. Terrapub, Tokyo, 1997.
- [MN04] Jerome Moloney and Alan Newell. *Nonlinear optics*. Westview Press. Advanced Book Program, Boulder, CO, 2004.
- [Mos62] J. Moser. On invariant curves of area-preserving mappings of an annulus. *Nachr. Akad. Wiss. Göttingen Math.-Phys. Kl. II*, 1962:1–20, 1962.
- [MS82] L. F. Mollenaur and R. H. Stolen. Solitons in optical fibers. *Fiberoptic Technology*, April:193–198, 1982.
- [New85] A. C. Newell. *Solitons in mathematics and physics*, volume 48 of *CBMS-NSF Regional Conference Series in Applied Mathematics*. Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics (SIAM), Philadelphia, PA, 1985.
- [NMPZ84] S. P. Novikov, S. V. Manakov, L. P. Pitaevskii, and V. E. Zakharov. *Theory of Solitons*, volume 1 of *Contemporary Soviet Mathematics*. Consultants Bureau, New York and London, 1984.
- [Nov81] S. P. Novikov, editor. *Integrable systems: selected papers*, volume 60 of *London Mathematical Society Lecture Note Series*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1981.
- [OLBC10] F. W. J. Olver, D. W. Lozier, R. F. Boisvert, and C. W. Clark, editors. *NIST Handbook of Mathematical Functions*. Cambridge University Press, New York, NY, 2010. Print companion to [\[DLMF\]](#).
- [Olv93] P. J. Olver. *Applications of Lie groups to differential equations*, volume 107 of *Graduate Texts in Mathematics*. Springer-Verlag, New York, second edition, 1993.
- [Olv14] P. J. Olver. *Introduction to partial differential equations*. Springer, Cham, 2014.
- [ÖT09] M. N. Özer and F. Taşcan. Derivation of Korteweg-de Vries flow equations from nonlinear Schrödinger equation. *Chaos Solitons Fractals*, 40(5):2265–2270, 2009.
- [Per66] D. H. Peregrine. Calculations of the development of an undular bore. 25:321–330, 1966.

- [Pit61] L. P. Pitaevskii. Vortex lines in an imperfect Bose gas. *Sov Phys JETP*, 13:451–454, 1961.
- [PS08] C. J. Pethick and H. Smith. *Bose-Einstein Condensation in Dilute Gases*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK, 2008.
- [Rog71] A. Rogister. Parallel propagation of nonlinear low-frequency waves in high- β plasma. *Phys. Fluids*, 14:2733–2739, 1971.
- [Rus45] J. S. Russell. Report on waves. In *Report of the fourteenth meeting of the British Association for the Advancement of Science, York, September 1844*, pages 311–390. London, 1845.
- [SE05] A. Scott (Editor). *Encyclopedia of Nonlinear Science*. Routhledge Publishing, New York, NY, 2005.
- [SH82] H. Segur and J. L. Hammack. Soliton models of long internal waves. *J. Fluid Mech.*, 118:285–304, 1982.
- [Siv77] G. I. Sivashinsky. Nonlinear analysis of hydrodynamic instability in laminar flames: I, derivation of basic equations. *Acta Astronautica*, 4:1177–1206, 1977.
- [SS99] C. Sulem and P.-L. Sulem. *The nonlinear Schrödinger equation*. Springer-Verlag, NY, 1999.
- [Ste89] H. Stephani. *Differential equations*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1989. Their solution using symmetries.
- [Sto92] J. J. Stoker. *Water waves*. Wiley Classics Library. John Wiley & Sons Inc., New York, NY, 1992.
- [Sud05] M. Suda. *Quantum Interferometry in Phase Space: Theory and Applications*. Springer, Berlin, 2005.
- [Tao06] T. Tao. *Nonlinear dispersive equations*, volume 106 of *CBMS Regional Conference Series in Mathematics*. Conference Board of the Mathematical Sciences, Washington, DC, 2006.
- [Thi76] W. R. Thickstun. A system of particles equivalent to solitons. *J. Math. Anal. Appl.*, 55(2):335–346, 1976.
- [TKDV00] K. Trulsen, I. Kliakhandler, K. B. Dysthe, and M. G. Velarde. On weakly nonlinear modulation of waves on deep water. *Physics of Fluids*, 12(10):2432–2437, 2000.

- [Tod67] M. Toda. Vibration of a chain with a non-linear interaction. *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, 22:431–436, 1967.
- [vH95] M. van Hoeij. An algorithm for computing the Weierstrass normal form. In *ISSAC '95 Proceedings*, pages 90–95, 1995.
- [Wan89] F. Wan. *Mathematical models and their analysis*. Harper & Row New York, 1989.
- [Whi67] G. B. Whitham. Non-linear dispersion of water waves. *J. Fluid Mech.*, 27:399–412, 1967.
- [Whi70] G. B. Whitham. Variational methods and applications to water waves. In *Hyperbolic equations and waves (Rencontres, Battelle Res. Inst., Seattle, Wash., 1968)*, pages 153–172. Springer, Berlin, 1970.
- [Whi74] G. B. Whitham. *Linear and nonlinear waves*. Wiley-Interscience, New York, NY, 1974.
- [Wig03] S. Wiggins. *Introduction to applied nonlinear dynamical systems and chaos*. Springer-Verlag, New York, NY, second edition, 2003.
- [WW20] E. T. Whittaker and G. N. Watson. *A course of modern analysis*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1920. Third edition.
- [Yan10] J. Yang. *Nonlinear waves in integrable and nonintegrable systems*. Society for industrial and applied mathematics (SIAM), Philadelphia, PA, 2010.
- [Zak68] V. E. Zakharov. Stability of periodic waves of finite amplitude on the surface of a deep fluid. *J. Appl. Mech. Tech. Phys.*, 9:190–194, 1968.
- [ZK65] N.J. Zabusky and M. D. Kruskal. Interaction of solitons in a collisionless plasma and the recurrence of initial states. *Phys. Rev. Lett*, 15:240–243, 1965.